

THIS VOLUME IS REPRODUCED  
BY CONSENT OF THE HENRY E.  
HUNTINGTON LIBRARY AND ART  
GALLERY AND MAY NOT BE  
REPRODUCED BY OTHERS WITH-  
OUT FORMAL WRITTEN CONSENT  
FROM THAT INSTITUTION.



The most Famous and  
*renowned Historie, of that*  
woorthie and illustrious Knight  
*Mervine*, sonne to that rare and ex-  
cellent *Mirror of Princely prowesse*, Oger  
*the Dane*, and one of that royall bond  
of *unmatchable Knighthoode*,  
the *twelve Peeres* of  
France.

Wherein is declared, his rare birth, and  
stranger bringing up, with his most ho-  
norable conquest of *Ierusalem, Babilon*,  
and diuers other Cities from the pagan  
Infidels : with many other memorable  
accidents of wonderful consequence.

By I. M. Gent.



Printed at London by R. Blower  
and Val. Sims. 1612.



To the Readers whosocuer  
they be.



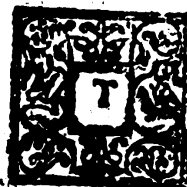
Entle Reader, I am to deale  
with thee in this Historie of  
Meruine, as those which bid  
men to a great feast, that is,  
to present them first, with  
that which may procure an  
appetite to meate, and worke  
a desire to eate: so giue I thee  
the first part, to cause thee to haue a more longing  
desire vnto the second part, that shall in the full  
conclusion of this Historie giue thy desire his ex-  
pected satisfaction, the which, the next Terme  
(and if I liue) I will not let to performe. Thus  
committing thee to thy delight in reading, and  
thy fauourable acceptance in allowing  
my Labour, I bid thee well to fare,  
till I fairely performe  
my promise.

(.:.)

*Thine ever ready to pleasure.*  
I. M.



# The Table of the first Part.



*He famous Historie of the noble and valiant Knight Meruine, and first of his birth, and the gifts given him by the fairies. Chap. 1*

*The Fairie Gratiana repented her selfe for the carrying away of Meruine: 2 how shee found a hermit keeping three goates: 3 how hee shewed her the way to find the port of the sea. chap. 2*

*The Fairie Gratiana accorded to the desire of Barbin: 2 Barbin caried her to Montment unto his house: 3 how hee made his wife beleue that Meruine was his sonne. chap. 3*

*Berea daughter of the king of Mermont fell in loue with Meruine, being at schoole: 2 of the loue-paine she indured, and other accidents. chap. 4*

*Mermont the king proclaimeth a great Iust for triall of his knights: 2 Meruine doth great wonders. chap. 5*

*The treason of Brohars against Basina sister to Minca the great daughter of Basina. chap. 6*

*Meruine promisetb Minca to fight the combate for her sister: 2 of his great daughters in Brandis: 3 how he be-bayed himselfe: 4 how Minca deliuered him from death to imprisonment. chap. 7*

*How Minca, Meruine, Iacob, Tyrus, and other mar-chants with the 200. pagans departed from Brandis to deliuer Basina to Montseure: 2 and of the battell fought, between Meruine and Brohars and the cuant. chap. 8*

*Of the honors done to Meruine for his victory: 2 how Minca*

## The table.

Minca brought him backe againe to Brandis : 3 his imprisonment, and other aduentures. chap. 9

Iacobs report to king Mermont of the acts of Meruine : 2 Bereas ioy : 3 the priuate conference betweene Berea and Iacob. chap. 10

Of the dispatch of Baucamonts two knights to Mermont : 2 Mermont in despite of Baucamont imprisoneth them : 3 of the assault, and death of Clarissa the coward. chap. 11

The arrivall of Iacob and Barbin at Brandis : 2 the presenting of the letter to the Court : 3 Meruine is deliuered to them : 4 Minea perswaded Croysant to accompany Meruine, which he did with 400. horsemen. chap. 12

The incounter betweene Galien Rotherus the sonne of Oliuer and Meruine : 2 of the good knight Drohes, who yeelded himselfe to Meruine. chap. 13

The great battell before Montmen : 2 Mermont taken prisoner : 3 Meruins arrivall and reuerie of Mermont : 4 Meruins exploits in the battell : 5 his second deliuerie of Mermont, and other accidents. chap. 14

The honours Mermont did to Meruine : 2 Meruine made chamberlaine of the Court : 3 Gratiana for his sake made lady of the chamber of Berea with other accidents. chap. 15

The priuate discourse betweene Marant and Berea, and of her answer : 2 how she came to the understanding of Marants enuie to Meruine : 3 the treason he intended, which he had procured Calix his cosin to execute. chap. 16

Berea hiding her selfe, came to understand the treason : 2 her revealing it to Drohes chalengeth Calix before the king, and pawneth his gage. chap. 17

King Mermont went to the forrest to find out Meruin : 2 the occasion and maner of his finding : 3 how he brought him to Montmen, &c. chap. 18

Of Pimons embassage from Esciamart to Baucamont, touching the foure sonnes of Gaultier of Denmarke : 2 and how

## The table.

how the peace was concluded betweene Mermont and Baucamont. chap. 19

Florion the youngest brother was taken prisoner by king Bandus : 2 how the pagans were ouerthrowne : 3 how Florion was giuen in exchange for king Goham Gaifiers brother. chap. 20

King Mermont, Baucamont, Meruine, and 200000. pagans arrived before Damascus : 2 the losse the Christians received by the valour of Meruine. chap. 21

The Christians were vanquished by Meruine : 2 how Guyon, Bertran, Thyerrie, Florion and Huon of Burdeaux were taken prisoners, & carried to Damascus. chap. 22

Charlemaine departing from France to see the holy sepulchre, arrived at Babylon, and was receiued of king Gaultier : 2 of the embassage two Pagans brought from Meruine and Gaudisse : 3 a counsell holden by the Christians, who demanded day of king Karaheu, of Florion, &c. chap. 23

Charlemaine and all the Christian army sallied out of Babylon : 2 of the great battell : 3 and how Meruine slew Guyon of Denmarke his unknowne uncle : 4 how Charlemaine, Gaultier, and the twelue peeres were taken prisoners, and their army discomfited. chap. 24

Meruine and the pagan hoste came before Ierusalem : 2 how the Citizens rendred up the towne, &c. chap. 25

Meruine would not consent to the death of the Christians : 2 the great battell which fell out in the pallace : 3 how the Christians aided Meruine, and how the pagans came and cried him mercie. chap. 26

Meruine departing from Babylon brought Charlemaine and the other Christians to the castle of Turgon : 2 of the apparit in of the Angell unto Charles : 3 how Meruine knew himselfe to be the sonne of Oger, and the Fairie Morgue. chap. 27

Meruine deliuered Charlemaine and the twelue peeres : 1 how Drohes instructed him in the points of religion : 3 how



# The table.

Bereaw was baptized with the rest of the city, and was named Mathaburna.

Chap. 28

That by meanes of Guyda the daughter of Bancamont, Bertran and his brothers escaped imprisonment: how king Bandus dangerously assailed them, and how they wonderfully defended themselves.

chap. 29

How Meruine after the conquest of many cities went to Damascus to deliuer the foure brethren, &c.

chap. 30

The Pagans were overthrowne, and the Christians went and conuerted Damascus, &c.

chap. 31

Mermont by treason brought Meruin to Minor: how Gaultier after the departure of Meruine went with all his army to Montment, where he found Mathaburna, to whom he told how her father was become a Christian, &c.

chap. 32

How Meruin was traitersonly imprisoned, and the description thereof: how by the perswasion of Mermont Butor went with an hundred thousand pagans to Montment: how Minca aduertised Gaultier and thother christians.

cha. 33



The



## The most ancient famous mother of Histories, the exquisite Historic of

Prince MERVINE, the sonne of OGER the Dane, who conquered Ierusalem, Babylon, and diuers other Cities from the Pagans, with many memorable accidents of wondrous consequence.

### CHAP. I.

The famous History of the noble and valiant knight Mervine, 1 and first of his birth, 2 and the giftes given him by the Fairies.



As may reader in the historie making mention of Oger Duke of Denmarke (a country neare adioyning unto France) how that after by his prowess he had conquered from the Turks, Pagans, and Infidels, Babylon, Ierusalem, and many other cities: (countries impugning our holy Christian faith) hee the same Oger grew burdened with desire to returne to the countie of France, which that he might with more facility performe he betooke himselfe to the Sea, where the winds proved so contrary to his intent: that by violent rage thereof he was caried (as saith the historie) into the flat land, where he was deliuered to the heathen. To recorde in like sort what was done by the heathen, would make any discourse.

## The first part of

discourse much too long. and finish by my booke onely with descriptions. But many tedious nights nor daies had not runne out the labouring circuit of their minutes, befoze the beautiful Morgue, sister to king Artus, became all inuironed with his loue, and by the excellencie of her subtil skill intangled him as much or moze with her affection, in so vehement sort, that the Lady who was passing wise, prophet like knowing what in after time should befall them two, purchased so much her own blessednes, that she was carnally accompanied of the good duke Oger, & that in so good an houre, that by the prouidence of the Highest, she became with child, the very sight wherof added an unspeakable ioy to the heart of Oger: and all the fairies of princely estimation, holding a counsell amongst themselves, said one to another: Now, and not too soone, is it sufficiently apparant that the fairie Morgue hath not euer in vnprofitable slumber consumed her time with Oger, because by her waking deed she hath given testimony to vs all, that now she hath conceived, and is great with child. If it proue a sonne, it is reason that for his singularitie hee be moze esteemed than any liuing in his time, because his birth is moze honozable than any of former age hath bin. Thus argued the fairies about Morgue their companion, who naturally bare her fruit nine moneths, and in the extreme end of the last, with great travell she was deliuered of a beautifull sonne, such, and so faire, as untill then had not any eye beheld. To his birth came many haughty and excelling faire dames, who beholding the eie-inchanting beauty of the Babe, blessed it, and gaue it to the mother, who with an overflowing heart tide-full of most deare affection, seeing his incomparable features, wherein true beautie had onely sinned to hold his habitation, kissed and rekindled it, as if numberlesse salutes should make his happy fortunes numberlesse in account, and then lifting her eyes to heauen, thus or in this manner

## the history of Meruine.

maner prayed: True God of glory quoth she, I humbly imploze and require thee, that of thy holy bountie thou wilt bestow such or so much moze diuine spirite, puissance, and true magnanimitie on this Babe, happily begotten on me, as thou didst inspire in my deare loue Oger, his princely lord and father, and that he may alonely resemble or exceed him in the glorious actions of euermoring knightshood. So sweetly spake Morgue these sweet orisons that the God of heauen exhaled her prayers, and registered in the register of the skie, that he should become the most redoubted in the world. After came king Artus into the chamber of the Lady, with him Oger and many other barons, to see the new child: at whose approach came to Oger a fairie Lady, who being of a glorious and renowned spirite, was famous for her vertues thozow the fairieland: her name was Meruina, and she said vnto him, Good duke of Denmarke honour me in giuing my name vnto thy sonne, and make me eternally happy, by being his happy godmother. Easy quod Oger, I consent. After these speeches was the infant carried to be baptised, and was named Meruin; Artus and Orient, two mighty kings being his godfathers: who after the Sacrament performed, gaue him rich gifts.

2 Which so soone as Meruina perceived, she said vnto them: My Lords, you haue enriched this infant with the treasure of this world, but I will make him wealthy with the treasures of Heauen. Your gifts handmaids to Fortune, by mischance may be from him: my gift the controller of Fortune, shall for no decree forsake him. I will therefore, and my will is my gift, for I giue my will, that he be euermore lord of the eyes of all creatures, and especially amongst Ladies, who during his life, shall hold him dearer than their owne liues. At these speeches the fairie Grariana, (who all the while leaned on the fountaine) grew wroth, as

## 4 The first part of

as well for enuy of the giftes giuen to the little Meruine,  
as for a priuate indignation that she bare vnto Morgue, in  
that she had not enioyed some of those silent night-plea-  
sing delights, which she enioyed with her excellent Oger,  
and therefore answering an untuned thought with an high  
sarring voyce, saide: And I from that great God which  
created the vniuerse, and man to his owne image, giue him  
this gift, that Meruine shall faile in the assault of one bat-  
tell, and be taken prisoner with such endamagement, that  
nosortitude shall euer release him, till a man whose mother  
died in her childbirth be his deliverer. Such words as these  
uttered the false fairy Gratiana, which effected according to  
her wish, because he was deliuered (as saierth the *Widdow*)  
from Minor, with whom he was nine yeeres prisoner, by  
Robastus, as shal hereafter appeare in proesse of the story.  
Meruina hearing Gratiannaes hate-dominating words, she  
grew exceeding sorrowfull, till sorrow comming to rage,  
made her with her fist giue Gratiana such a blowe on her  
face, that the blood which should haue made hir cheeks blush  
for her immobility, now sought to drowne the earth for suffe-  
ring her. This tumult bred tumults among the Fairies,  
nurtured with a world of euills on the noble Christians. Dis-  
pitefully sad was Gratiana for the blowe receiued, but in re-  
gard at that instant she coulo not do what she would (tute-  
red by patience) she would not what she wished, yet in her  
soule made a solemn protestation solemnely to reuenge her  
inurie, as indeed she did. After a faim named Galiana, de-  
uous to mollifie the angry Meruina, came to her, saying,  
Sweet sister, why shouldst thou haue such furious superio-  
rity in thy faire selfe, as to bathe thy hand in a bloody ocean?  
Wellcome me, deare creature, thou oughtest rather to haue  
waht with patience in white lillies: but be milde, appease  
thyne anger, and I will giue to thy little sonne a gift shall  
ouerloy all thy toies; and this it is: what priuilege, lady, of  
woman

## 5 the history of Meruine.

woman in the world he shall daue to kisse, that and the selfe  
same toy shal she possesse by that outward imbracement, as  
if he had consumed whole nights in those pleasures, which  
to nature is only priuate: and with I am ascertained he shal  
be furnisht with incomparable valure, I giue him this gift,  
that he shal neuer be slaine or banquisht in priuate or pub-  
like battell: and when he hath liued till marriage hath made  
him father of a sonne of twelue yeeres old, then my will is  
that he returne into Fairia, and hauing kissed me befoze all  
the Ladies of our land, make me his especiall loue, who ne-  
uer had nor will haue any till his returne. When Meru-  
naes eares had receiued the musicke of Galianaes speech,  
she gaue her infinite thanks, and caused king Arcus, king  
Orient, and all the lady Fairies to doe the like, only Grati-  
ana excepted, who stood sorrowfully dumbe for her blow re-  
ceiued. The childe (as you haue heard) was baptized, and  
rebrought into the Chamber of his mother, who notwithstanding  
the torment of her trauell, yet thozow the loue of  
her faire infant, she forgate the exceeding passion of her more  
than great sorrow: and when the Ladies came in, they  
found her fast asleepe, whom they bring loth to awake from  
out her slumber, they gently laie the childe in her bosome,  
and so departed without any noise making, onely the false  
Fairie Gratiana staid behind, who had a longing desire to  
imbrell the infant Meruin, of whom the other Fairies had  
no regard, neither that she staid vnder any false intent: but  
when al the Ladies were gone, unkind Gratiana took little  
Meruine from his mothers breasts, and holding him in  
her armes, said, Now doe I wish, and I would I were in  
the selfe same maner that at this present I am, at the pozt  
of Luterne, which standeth vpon the Sea: and so soone as  
euer she had spoken, instantly she and the infant were in  
the same place, whence issued the neuer to be abated sorrow  
of Morgue: when she awakd and found not by her the best  
of

## The first part of

of her deare selfe, I mooue her deare Meruine. Whereupon the demandes of her attendants whether he had bin brought backe vnto her, or no: Des Pavadam, said one of them, Pavadam Meruina his godmother, laid him close by your selfe. Alas said Morgue, and where is he then become? Then began the good Lady greatly to lament, and to poure such vncontrolled oceans of teares from the heavenly windows of her eyes, that the roaring tempests of her languor was easily heard of Artus her brother, Orient, Oger and all the Fairie Ladies, who incontinently rush into her chamber, the renowned Oger asking her what she ailed, auowing that the greatest monarch in the world should not dare to do hir that wrong, which his sword should not rebelinor and reuenge. When her attendants (for dumbe sorrow kept her silent) tolde him how Gratiana whom Meruina had stricken, in reuenge of her disgrace had stolen the childe, and bozne him to some inhabitable climate. Oger hearing this, gaue displeasure leaue to tyrannize vpon his hart, and by the greedynesse of his passion robbed his loue the fairie Morgue of some of her lamentations: for after consideration had recalled her reason, and hope assured her that no power would vnworthily be against her, she gaue a comma (though no period) to her mourning, and recomforted her only lord Oger with this or like oratorie: Oger my loue said she, that diuine power which hath sent vs Meruine, will (if it please him) preserve our Meruine, and when the winter daies of our extreme fortunes hath fully bound vp our hopes in frozen ribs of ice, we shall againe regret the cheerefull Aprill of our Summer ioyes, and gather new blossoms from our withered plants. Thus spake Morgue to the good Oger, whom we will leaue, and speake of the Fairie Gratiana, who (as you haue heard) carried away Meruine.

CHAP.

## the history of Meruine.



### CHAP. II.

- 1 How the Fairie Gratiana repented her selfe for the carrying away of Meruine, 2 how she found a hermit keeping three goats, 3 how he shewed her the way to find the port of the sea.



Gratiana (by her wish) sodainely arrived in a wood neighbouring the port of Luterne, but being in a place so desolately solitary, tainted with remorse in her owne conscience, heartily she repented herselfe, as well for hauing stolen the only hope of that age, prince Meruine, as also for hauing exiled her selfe from Fairia her native Countrey: wherefore desirous to returne, and holding the infant in his armes, she said, How do I wish (and be my wish available for my tows sake) would I were in Fairia in mine owne pallace, so, and in such maner, that I neither doe nor shall need aske pardon for my misdoe. Thus spake reuengefull Gratiana: but the storie replieth that because she had reuanged her selfe by her vnlawfull stealth, the God of the Christians grew offended with her, and took from her both her power of wishes and wishing: which when the Fairie perceiued, she fell on her knees and said, alas, only merciful God, I know I haue grauouly offended against thee, yet notwithstanding thy pity greater than thy power, may pardon my misdoe, which both repents and displeaseth me, and then turned she her speech to Meruine, saying; Ay me, sweet childe,

## 8 The first part of

childe, that mine offence to thine infancie hath lost me the delight of my life, and yet shall the burden of more then my sorrow (unless for is gracious power prevent) bee borne on thy tender shoulders: woe is me, what had I in my head when I conceived this wickedness against thee, nothing but euill: yet despite these euils ought some good thing befall me, in that I will nourish the childe so long as I shall be able with such acates as God or fortune shall send me.

2 Gratiana in this manner repenting her selfe, rose vp, and beganne to go to a halcy beneath the wood, with the infant in her armes, and in her passage a long, she perceiued a holy hermit, who reposed himselfe in the same wood, keeping three goates in that forest. When the fairie came nere him she saluted him, and sayd, Graue wise man (for so thy white haire, heralds of experience, tell me) where, I pray thee, standeth the next town or villager so where may I find any woman to giue sucke to this faire childe, which is almost pined to death with extreme hunger, whilst, alas, I haue nothing to giue it but my teares, too vnauozie a sirrep for so princely a taste. Hardly had she ended this last word, but by the will of some almighty willer, one of the three goates left the hermit, and came to the Lady, making not bestiall, but rather diuine signes, that she would suckle this infant: which the fairie ouerjoyd to behold, thanked God, and kissing the babe, laid it on the ground, and the goat placed himselfe nere to the child, that it might quietly suck, for such was the will of the Greatest. When the hermit saw this miracle, and saw diuine charitie much greater than Nature, haue ruling in a simple goat, grew much abashed, asking the fairie if she were a Christian. Father (quod she) I am a true Christian: and then she began to discourse vnto him all the story of her euill, how she had stolne Meruine, and for that cause, byieing to speake, she told him from point to point all before written.

## the historic of Meruine.

written. Whilst the hermit sate amazed, and many times signed himselfe with the crosse, in token of wonder, then sayd he vnto her: Faire long, know that I am a baptised Christian, living in this forest: yet are all the inhabitants of this climate none other but pagans and Infidels, which neither loue nor adore the name of Christ Iesus: and therfore to thend you may be circumspect in your affaires, know that if you confesse your selfe a Christian, you and this faire childe shall die the death.

3 Therfore be wisely warie, and I will shew thee the way which leadeth to the port Luterne, where arine many marchants of forren lands: and to the end that this faire creature, which you name Meruine, shall sustaine no want, I will giue you the goat which hath offered it selfe vnto him: for such is the will of him that willet all goodnesse. After this speech the hermit, named Crespin, which all his time had bene holy, and holy Crespin intituled, hauing shewed her the port, toke leave, and Gratiana adressed her selfe to her way, commending to God her and her intention. So parted they, the fairie carrying the childe, and the goat attending both: at length she came vnto the port where she perceiued a small barke, that with hoised sailes was euen then in departing: whereupon she cried, Lordes, for Mahomer and his temple Mecas sake stay, and let me passe with you. When the master vnderstood her, and that the spake of Mahomer: (for they were Mainims) he replied, Hasten thee then long, and if thou haste, we will stay a little for thee. At these words the fairie added such wings to her feet, that immediately she entred into the ship, and with her entrance the ship departed, plowing so speedily through the furrows of the salt waues, that in short space Gratiana perceiued a verie faire citie. Gentlemen (sayd she to the Pagans) I perceiue you, for beloe a very strong citie, I pray you tell me what towne it

10  
The first part of

it is, whether it be Christian or Pagan? When the tealous Pagans heard the demand of the fairie ladie, they mistrusted in themselves that she was a Christian: wherefore one of them fiercely answered her: Ladie, art thou a Christian, or one of our law? Reverend sir (sayd she) I was neuer Christian, but am a Pagan. When one who was of Montment, by calling a marchant, amazedly viewed, and often reuelied Meruine, whom the oftener he beheld, the oftener he saw his beauties redouble. Whereupon inamored of the infants perfection, he came to the ladie, and asked her if she would sell her child? In good faith (quoth the fairie) no: for it is the sonne of my sister: for whose love (so farre as I am able, if Mahomet giue me leaue) I will carefully nourish it. Adam (sayd this marchant, whose name was Barbin) from what countrey is your iourney deriued? Sir (sayd she) from Antioch, where infinite misfortune hath chanced to my kindred, who haue bene traiterously slaine by a false Christian, on whom I beseech Mahomet raine an eternall curse: for he hath despoiled mee of all my goods, and left me no comfort, but this sillie infant, my nephew, whom by the diuine ayd of Mahound I nourish, that hee may be my glorie in my decaying and ruined age.

CHAP.

11  
the historic of Meruine.



CHAP. III.

1. The fairie Gratiana accorded to the desire of Barbin
2. Barbin carried her to Montment vnto his house.
3. How he made his wife beleue that Meruine was his sonne.



Barbin the Pagan finding the fairie would by no meanes sell the princely Meruine, yet inly beholding the necessitie wherein she stood, sayd vnto her, What age (deare lady) hath this childe aspired vnto? By Mahomet (answered she) it hath not fully accomplished three dayes. Trust me (sayd the Pagan) if you will goe with me vnto Montment, you shall be so well intreated as your degree requireth, and your childe nourished according to the excellencies of his beauty: onely to one thing you must accord which though it carrie falshood in the forehead, yet shall it keepe danger from your heart: and that is, to affirme this childe is mine: for which report I will raine showers of golde and siluer into your bosome, & guard your person and fortunes safer then the waking dragons the Hesperian Cytrons. To these wordes Gratiana inclined her eares, whilest her thoughts to her thoughts thus whispred: Since it pleaseth the God of heauen, and that destinie is my director, euen as I haue sinned this most excellent infant (for which I know I haue grievously sinned, lost my freedom, and am utterly banisht from those dignities I intoyed



12

## The first part of

as being a fairie) so will I now doe my greatest endenout  
for this princely orphane. And for I know nothing in me to  
reobtaine my losses, I will what he will, moze bequeathing  
our fortunes into the hands of God then according to the de-  
sire of this Pagan: and then exalting her words which be-  
fore were silent, she said: faire sir, from whom I behold a  
diuine affection, issuing vnto my forsaken nephew: tell me,  
are you married, or no? Pagan, I am (sayd he) and haue  
bene this fourtie yeeres, and moze: so haue I also one faire  
sonne, not far from hence, whose name is Tirus Sir (quoth  
she) since it pleaseth you to offer vs the good wee can desire,  
we will euer obey you, and go where you shall please to dis-  
pose vs. In such discourse as this they consumed the night  
till the next morning, who had no sooner saluted the Sun, but  
they arrived on the shoare, impouerishing the shippe to make  
the land moze wealthie.

2 Barbin and Gratiana bearing the little Meruine in  
her armes, marched together, and the goate followed them,  
the which whensoever the childe cried, was readie with her  
dugge to appease his weeping. And as they went Barbin  
sayd vnto her: Exceedingly am I delighted with the beau-  
tie of this infant, therefore deare ladie forget not to affirme  
as you haue promised. Of that she bade him take no care, for  
her care should be, that no fault should issue from her but  
carefulnesse. He highly commended her answer, and then  
further sayd: Ladie, diuers discourses haue I had with you,  
and yet haue I not demanded the name of this childe: let it  
not then be offensive that I now importune it. Sir (quoth  
she) he is called Meruin, and so shall you name him in your  
owne house, when you come to your wife: but woe is mee, a  
mightie suspicion throbbereth in mine heart, lest your wife  
should imagine you haue begot this childe of mee, and so by  
that meanes turne an undeserued wrong vpon my life. Lady  
(said

13

## the historie of Meruine

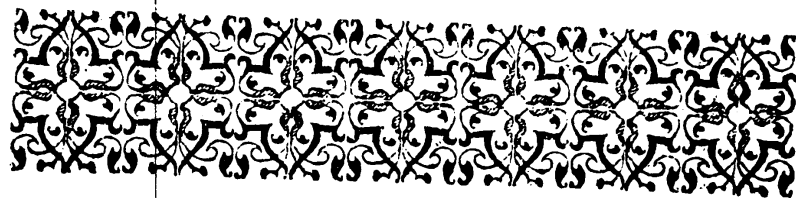
(said he) abandon that suspicion, and be dreable of such e-  
uill: for my wife by nature is so simple, that in an hundred  
yeeres, she would not be mistresse of such an imagination:  
trust me, she is none of those diuellish creatures, who ouer-  
looke the fortunes of their husbands, but only wise, in that  
she wants the depth of such in-searching wisdom. In this  
sort, clipping Times wings with the tediousnesse of talke,  
they entered into the faire City of Montment, in whose  
streets Barbin stayed not, till he came to his owne house,  
where he found his wife, who ouer-toyed with the toy of his  
sight, ranne and threw her armes about his necke, saying:  
Sweet loue, deare life, all my comforter, welcome all wel-  
come: that I see thee I am satisfied: and thy life sufficeth  
me. Loue (said he) thanks to Mahomet, I liue, and haue  
happily well made exchange of my merchandise: for I haue  
brought home spices, drugges, and oiles and with them ri-  
cher much than all them, this faire child, and this yong la-  
die, whose birth is renowned, yet her vertues much moze  
magnificent: therefore for my loues sake, do to her and her  
vertues seruire. Sir (said his wife) haue you indeed brought  
home this infant:

3 By Mahomet (said he) I haue, neither wil I differ-  
ble with thee, he is mine owne, begot by me of a yong lady  
of Milan in Lumbardy, who was triumphant faire, for faire  
in her only triumphed, but in this childes birth she died: and  
here behold her sister, who hath promised to liue with me.  
Wherefore sweet loue and onely companion of my bed, be  
kinde to it, which is the glory of my kinde, neither let them  
want what is becomfull for their extremities. Also let my  
sonne Tirus know as much, because he is his brother, and  
command him to come vnto me. Loue (said she) for a trueth,  
thy sonne is at the schole, but so soone shall the morning  
prepare way for the sunnes beames, but I will send for him

14

## The first part of

unto thee : meane space I hold it conuenient we sake for some space for this faire infant. But he tolde her it was needlesse, because that gentle goat supplied the place of such a louing foster-mother. All that hee tolde her she beliened. So the fairie and Meruine remained in the house of that marchant, and was nursed with the milke of the goat: for such was the prouidence of the Greatest, who had predestinated him to conquer a monster with three heads, named Logrus, which was begot by a diuell on the satyr Gratiana: which diuell made earnest petition, that this Logrus should neuer die, but by a mortall man, that neuer was nourished with the milke of a woman: for he thought it impossible to bring by a childe without womans milke. But the gentle Meruine, whose fame is renowned in the marble Arma-ment, slew him, and cut off his three heads: as ye shall read in the end of this present history: till when we will returne to our former matter.



### CHAP. IIII.

1. Berea daughter of the King of Meurmout, fell in loue with Meruine, being at schoole. 2. Of the loue-paine she indured. 3. and other accidents.



Our present history, which anciently hath been extracted out of the Librarie in the helie monastery of Saint Dennis in France, demonstrateth, that Meruine the sonne of the wise excellling Duke Oger, was so rarely nursed by

15

## the historie of Meruine.

by the goat, and so carefully maintained by Barbin and his wife, that among all the breathing starres of beauty within the city of Montment, nor amongst all the excellent faces of that countrey, was there found any worthy to be compared to his, much lesse equall. Being five yeares olde, Barbin prouided him a graue scholemaster, exactly furnished with all the liberall Sciences: vnder whom the gentle Meruine (to whom Nature was neuer found a stepmother) learned more than all the rest (and there were many) that were in the Schole. All which made Barbin, his wife, and the fairie Gratiana exceeding ioyfull. The storie saith, that the house of the scholemaster, vnder whom Meruine learned the studies of Oratorie and Logike stood next to the house of the mother of her, who had nursed the Kings daughter, who at that time gouerned Montment, Tarrarie, and Lutterne, who called himselfe, Mermont, and his wife Marina. This king Mermont, had sent his daughter to a castle called Turgon, standing within the citie, where a graue lady instructed her in all the accomplishments of vertue: the name of the princess was Berea, excellling all the maiden race of that country in beauty, yet her wisdom equalling her fairenesse, but her vertues excellling both. This virgine Berea often times went vnto Meruines Scholemaster, to learne the hidden secrets of Art (for she was wholly dedicated to philosophy) & one day (safall about the rest) as Meruine was before his master recorning his lesson, the virgine with an affectionate desire (for Loue at that instant had armed himselfe to surprize Perfection, cast her eyes vpon him, whose beauty in her eyes like the Sunne reflecting on a rocke of cristall, redoubled each feature, and of vntons made so many infinites, that her desire grew more innumerable, and lones wounds in her hart altogether numberles.

2. At that instant the princely maid was not about ten yeares



16

## The first part of

yeares old, and Meruine was fully as much: yet was her constancie, discretion and wisdome so agedly graue, and of so excellent a temper, that albeit continually she suffered the extreamest extreame of loues martyrdome, as a troubled thought, a tormented heart, a distempred braine, and a dying spirit, yet did she neuer in any sort, either to her father, mother, or most priuate companion, by the smallest shadow giue testimony of her hugest torment: notwithstanding, when loneliness drew her selfe from her selfe, only to be alone, then would she summon her conceits, and muster up whole armies of cogitations, to think, confirme, and maintaine the beauties of her Meruine, and to euery conclusive argument, sworne by Mahomet, he only should be her loue: yet had she no sooner decreed that excellent iudgement, but when she remembered him to be the son of Barbin the merchant, then found she contrary motions, and wounding faultines in her election. But loue, who is as reasonlesse as he is infinite, drew her from those doubts, and only taught her thus, I wil, because I must. When was her loue such & so great, that for the space of tenne dayes she left the vse of meate or drinke, and found no ease but in the sight of Meruine, so intolerable was her frensie, and so impatient her desire, desiring Meruine, who all the while had not one thought of either her, or of her passion: only when he perceiued her earnest regard of him, he being full of princely curtesie, would humbly salute her. All which salutations were torments to increase her paine and woes that held her wounds more open: for why, she durst not discouer that, which all her wits could hardly couer, no though in it she had beene assured of a safe recouerie.

3 Thus remained she the space of foure yeres: in the end whereof came an ambassadour to Montmont, who ascending the pallace, and entering the hall, where he found the

17

## the historie of Meruine.

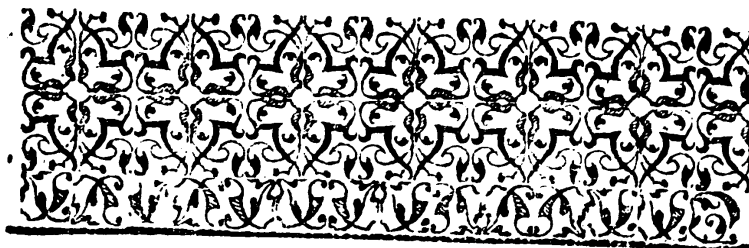
mightie King Mermont accompanied with his Queene, his princely daughter Berea, and many of his priuate Barons, before whom prostrate on his knees he fell and said: Mahomet the Great, all-holder of our estate, saue and defend the mightie Baucamont King of Damas, who by mee wisheth thee health, and thine owne wishes, regreting thy puissance with this letter, which I humbly intreat thy maiestie to accept. When the redoubted King Mermont heard the speech of the embassadour, hee stood amazed to thinke what businesse Baucamont should haue with him: but taking the letter, and breaking open the seale, he read the tenure thereof, which instantly sent a displeasing sorrow to his heart, because the King of Damas in those wordes commaunded his daughter the faire Berea in marriage. But Mermont calling the messenger saide: By Mahomet, thy maister is much too saucy and arrogant to commaund me to giue him my daughter: the which, notwithstanding her young yeares I had done, but that in despite he hath sent so meane an embassade for hir. Wherefore be wel ascertained, he shall neuer possesse her, though it cost me a hundred thousand of my choicest subjects. Is there any colourable shewe in thy maister, to marry my daughter, when he sendeth no greater a peere of his countrey then thy selfe to demaund her? But what he hath done is but an index of the pride with which his heart is furnished; say so to him, for if thou so saist it not, & what besides else I haue said, by Mahomet in despite of thy King, I will make thy head poyze, in taking away thine ears. Two deuil auditors mightie King, answered the messenger (whose feare-shaken heart made all his body tremble) be well assured I will deliuer all that you haue spoken, or what else your maiestie shall please to commaund me. Be gone then (quoth the King) and bid thy maister seeke him a wife in some other climate: for Berea soareth higher then the sunne hath power to carry his

## The first part of

his sight. Thus parted the messenger, on whom no rest  
either by night or day dared to adventure till he came before  
Baucamont his Lord and Soueraigne, to whom he saide:  
By Apollo, great King of Damas and my liege Lord, in  
vaine is thy care to entertaine loue, when thou hast lost  
Berea, whose eyes onely create loue: in brieft, her must  
thou neuer enjoy, for so her father hath swozne, nor I in de-  
spight of thine eares, vnlesse I tell thee that so he hath  
swozne. More would not Baucamont endure to heare, but  
all enraged with fury, swozne by Mahomet, Alcheron, and the  
shrine of Meca, hee would enjoy Berea, yea though she  
were the sole paramour to Iupiter, or garded with an Hercu-  
lean army: all which to performe, hee instantly sent forth  
summons to muster all his people, and to commaund all  
his tributaries to serue him, protesting with force of armes  
to finde that ioy which by force of words he could not enjoy.  
But only to deffeny are the decrees of heauen knowen, for  
he erred in his conceits, sth into the world was borne a crea-  
ture excellent enough to defend Berea, I meane rarely ac-  
complished Meruine the sonne of Oger, supposed the sonne  
of Barbin, who at that instant was growne mighty in bo-  
dy, more in minde, most in beauty. Barbin who tende-  
red him exceedingly, shewed him the trade of marchandise,  
and how to exchange for the greatest profite: but the bent of  
his mind was contrary to that course, for his minde wholly  
was addicted to ride horses, tosse pikes, plant battels, and  
other feates of famous chualrie, to which a while  
we will leaue him, and will speake of  
the king Mermont.

## CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



## CHAP. V.

- 1 Mermont the king proclaimeth a great Iust for triall  
of his Knights. 2 *Meruine* doth great wonders.



When the King of Damas Embassadour was  
departed, & mighty King Mermont (not with-  
out cause) fearing that Baucamont would  
make warre vpon him, proclaimed a solemne  
tourneament to be held within the citie of  
Montment, for triall of all his knights, whither assembled  
an innumerable company of kings, princes, barons, and  
knights, all subiects vnto him; amongst the rest came a  
wealthy Prince named Clarissa much more beholden to for-  
tune for his riches, then to Nature for his valure: for though  
he was not reputed a coward, yet those which knew him  
knew he durst not fight. This Clarissa lodged in the house  
of Barbin. And when the first day of triumphes came, which  
by decree were to continue three dayes, and a masse cuppe  
of golde proposed for a prize to the victor, every one armed  
himselfe, and Clarissa also armed himselfe outwardly more  
rich then any, though inwardly his heart was tattered with  
a troubleless resolution. When Meruine beheld him armed,  
he humbly intreated the Wagon that he might attend his  
person to the tilt-yard. Clarissa when he beheld through  
the reflexion of the yong mans beauty an vnmatchable splen-  
dor of concealed valure, he exchanged his feare to hopefull  
auda-

## The first part of

Audacitie and condescended to his intreaty, desiring the youth that if he saue (as doubtlesse he should) any colde streames of fountaines engirdle his temple, that he would seeke with the fire of his infant vertue to dye by those burning ouerslowes. Meruine courageously bade him take courage, for there was no doubt of hard measure, onely (saide he) it is conuenient that I haue a horse to runne after you, by which I may sustaine you in the greatest danger: sweete are thy wordes and reasonable (answered Clarissa) and forthwith commaunded, and a horse was deliuered to Meruine, on which hee mounted and attended Clarissa, of whose spurres were not spared till he came to the tilt-yard. When the Lady virgin Berea, who was enuironed with her mother and the other Ladies beheld the gallant yong Meruine enter into the listes, her heart daunced in her cristall bosome, as if not there, but in him was her onely paradise. Alas she loued him dearly, who neglected her wholly, and often whispered to her soule, so Mahomet would, I would Meruine, to whom onely I am a prisoner, whose beautie onely hath surpris'd mine affection, were the sonne of some pagan potentate, then would I follow him, then would I be his handmaide then would I serue him, then would I go with him; but if hee would espouse me, O my soule! how happy were my loue in such a happy requitall, other then himselfe no goodesse would with for: for poverty with him is richer then the pallace of the greatest Emperour in Turkie. Thus would the excellent Berea often dispute with her selfe, imagining Meruine still the sonne of Barbin the marchant. Anone the tourney beganne, where flauies flew in the aire like dust, and dust like smoake flaries thjeatned the element; at length a pagan fierce and strong ranne with his launce in his rest against Clarissa, to whom he gaue such an vnkind blow, that had not yong Meruine bin, he had tumbled to the ground: but the princely yonges vertue

## the historic of Meruine.

vertue sustained him, yet so heauy was the incounter, that Clarissa as much or moze scared than wounded, returned to his looging, where being disarmed, hee laied that heauie complaint on Fortune which iustly should haue bin intituled to his owne weaknes. Meruine seeing him disarmed, his heart tickled, and his blood fured with an emulation of honour, which set an insatiate longing on his thoughts to giue some blowes and to proue his bodie: wherefore hee fell vpon his knees to Clarissa and saide, I beseech you faire prince, for the honoz of Mahomet, bestow your armes vpon me, to the end I may goe to the triumph, and approue my strength. And here do I solemnely protest, that if I can incounter him whose proud arme hath dained you this indignitie, to do mine uttermost indeuour, to humble him as low or lower then the earth. After Clarissa with astonishment had heard the yong princes desire, he willingly accorded to his wisly: yet so, that Meruine should not accuse him: but when the Iusts were ended, if Fortune made him conquerour, he should leaue the honour, not to himselfe, but to Clarissa. Meruine to all most willingly agreed, saying further: Belatue mae prince, I will do my best to gaine the wealthy cup of the King, which also you shall haue. for my desire is knowledge, no honour. At this Clarissa commaunded his chamberlaine to arme Meruine with his owne atmes, which hee so secretly did, that the squiers of Clarissa knew it not. When he was armed, they brought him a most puissant and fierce courser, on which he mounted, and so departed, attended on by many squiers, who fully imagined him to be their Lord Clarissa, who slept in his chamber like a dromedary with his cowardise. Meruine, whose spurres were Honour, and Desire, rode so speedily that in the end hee enrired the listes, where ballantly hee meant to winne or conquere his fortune.

22

## The first part of

2 In the end charging his lance, he ran like a whirle-wind against him who had hurt Clarissa: to whom he gaue a requitall blow, with such puissance, that he cast horse and man to the ground, so furiously, as for fiftene dayes after he lay without motion. Then another Pagan of his consort, turned towarde Meruine, on whom he brake his lance: but Meruine, who toke pleasure in that martiall exercise, behaued himselfe with such vertue, that with the trunchion which remained in his hand, he gaue him such a counterblow, that breaking his heart in his bosome, the Pagan died instantly in the place. What shall I neede to make a tedious discourse of a hastie conflict? In briebe, Meruine so couragiously behaued himselfe, that ere his thoughts could be capable of rest, with his broken lance he threw him to the ground, of which not one euer rose againe, to the wondrous amazement of all the beholders. Then began the crie of the multitude, to exalt him, thinking it had bin Clarissa, euery one exclaiming aloud, Clarissa of Affrike is he who ought onely to be esteemed. At this exclamation, a Pagan on whose helme all the day before, Honour late twining her golden tresses, now enuious that Clarissa had courted his mistresse, swoze by Mahomet, he should neuer enjoy her fauour: and forthwith picked towarde Meruine, who had newly recovered a lance from one of his squires, and turning his horse, either incountred other with such a violent encounter, that their stanes flying into small pieces, strake which piece should first lie into heauen to report neuer like sene vigour. But for all the Pagans force, it was impossible to moue Meruine in his saddle, who late like a tower against a tempest, or a rocke against the rage of the seas furie. But Meruins assault of a cleane contrary nature, list the Pagan vpe into the aire with his lance, and thence let him fall with such violence, that he brake his right arme: and yet Meruine brake not his staffe, but

23

## the historie of Meruine.

but with the same overthrew foure more dead to the ground. At this began a greater crie amongst the knights, then before, saying: Clarissa of Affrike is onely inuincible, and Conquest herselfe is to him a handmaid. When the king caused a retreat, and the triumphes to cease, for so a king intreated: and euery one departed to his pavilion, and Meruine to his fathers house, with the squires of Clarissa: in whom ioy shewed the exceedingnesse of ioy, because their lord had gained the honour of the day. But Meruine made great haste to come to the chamber, which he ascended in all secret maner, for he had an exceeding great care that Barbin should not know any thing. When he was come there Clarissa lay solely accompanied with the chamberlaine, who before had deliuered to Clarissa all what Meruine had done, he toke him kindly about the necke, and kissing him, sayde: Mine honours crowne, and my liues garland, liue cuer in this circle of mine armes, as thou shalt euer be in the compass of my heart: for by thee am I renowned in the court of king Mermont, and exalted for most valiant thoro the Pagan prouinces. If any other speeches he vsed of kindness, all which Meruine either excused or requited. No stand longer on accomplishments, were tedious, and tediousnesse wearinesse: therefore in a word, all the honour of the thre dayes triumphes, and the cup of golde, the reward of the victors, were by the valour of Meruine, giuen to Clarissa, as most wise, & most valiant. And he was receined by the king Mermont, to beare in battell, if any assailed him, the masters banner of Mahomet. So had unknown resolution exalted well known cowardise: and though Meruine, in nothing was more carefull then in secret keeping this secret, yet the most excellent virgin Berea afterwards attained the knowledge thereof by Clarissas chamberlaine, which after serued Meruine, who as you haue heard, knightly beganne, and against Baucmont continued with greater marueilles: for

24

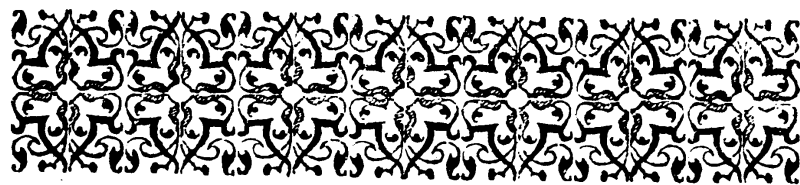
## The first part of

for he recovered king Mermont from his enemies. But let vs leaue those high actions, till they fall moze fitly for our historie, and let vs a little speake of Barbin, who sent Meruine to traffique with another marchant, named Iacob, and with Tyrus his sonne, to whom he gaue great meanes for trade, and foure thousand poundes, which he ought another marchant in exchange of wares he had befoze bought. When Iacob and the other marchant knewe Meruine should goe with them, they were vnwontedly reioyced (for he was dearely beloued of all men) and sayd, if Mahomet would but grant them safe conduct, they doubted not, but now to attaine the full perfection of wealth. When they departed, Meruine, his brother Tyrus, and the good marchant Iacob, to whom Barbin committed his children: for he had a uowed to them his best endeouours: and at length came to the port, where being imbarke, they found the wintes so agreeable to their course, that in short space, they all arrived at the port of Brandis, and went to lodge at the signe of the Harps home, where Iacob was accustomed to inne: and found the hostesse sitting sadde and alone at the doze, whom Iacob saluted, and inquired if he might there be lodged. The hostesse, whose name was Minea, answered: you may, and then sighed: for great was the inward trouble of her heart. When the tables being couered they sat downe: and the hostesse with regardfull eyes beheld Meruine, rarely surprised with the incomparable beautie, and wondrous furnisht lineaments of his body, which she beheld in him. But leaue we them with their accates, and let vs speake of another matter.

### CHAP:

25

## the historie of Meruine.



### CHAP. VI.

I The great treason of Brohars against *Basina* sister to *Minea*. the great danger of *Basina*.



**M**inea the Ladie of the house where Iacob, Meruine, his brother Tirus, and the other marchants lay, had a sister named Basina, whose comely features, & well graced fauor, had not without desert purchased hir the title of a faire creature: besides, to those beauties was wed so much wisdom, discretion and modest gouernement, that one without error might well commend her for most perfect. This Basina had to husband a pagan, passing wise in their Lawe, and very expert in the Art of Hoisanship: who altogether frequented the warres, tournaments, and scholes of chivalry: his name was Croisant, and he embraced as the onely iewel of his life, one onely friend Brohars, whom he loued exceedingly, because he imagined the other loued him as vehemently, which in troth was but falshood and dissimulation. For Brohars became most ally inamored with Basina, the wife of Croisant, insomuch as he made a vow to his owne soule, that vlesse Destiny it selfe prevented him, he would that forbidden fruit, which Nature, and the custome of diuine Lawes most vehemently prohibiteth. No further which irreligious Dath, a day happened wherein Croisant went from his house in the citie



## The first part of

citie Montesteur, to a certaine tower himselfe had newly erected, and the traiterous Brohars taking aduantage of his absence, entred his house, where he found the Lady Basina, who receiued him kindly, because she shewed her husband loued him dearly, and setting his lust-inflamed selfe close by her, as then accompanied with vertuous imaginations, he with witty (if witty may be imputed to an act so vnwitty) and violent arguments, laied open the monstrous desire of his vncontrolled will: which when the Lady vnderstood a sorth in the meaning of so bad a meaning, she answered him, it was against the lawes of hospitalitie to offer so hard amends for so great a merit, his speeches being as vnfit, and his desires frantike: and for her owne part, rather would she be diuembred piece-meale, then think that her thoughts should thinke of any but her husband. Wherefore, in conclusion she told him, if euer againe his lips gaue leaue to his tongue to tell her the like villanie, she would giue notice vnto her husband, who thenceforth should note him for most inhumane. Whilest they were thus discoursing, stood by them one of the gentlewomen of the Lady called Ysea, who not seeming to regard their parlee, wel vnderstood and heard all they had uttered, as well his monstrous assault, as her modest defiance, all which was to her a notable safegard, as hereafter shall appeare. When Brohars had receiued this cold comfort to his accursed desire, hee left the Lady mightily perplexed in heart, and sware by Mahomet, to bring to ruine both her renowne and vertue. As the traitor went, he summoned all the damned parliament of his senses together, to bethinke some notable treason against her, whilest the good Lady innocent of all euill, wept to thinke that men should be so wicked.

The stozie reports that this Brohars had a seruant named Brison, whom one day when Croisant was at Montesteur,

## the historie of Meruine.

steur, hee called vnto him, and sayde: Brison, come hither, long haue I nourisht thee, better then a seruant, and doe lone thee as deare as my sonne: tell mee, to worke reuenge of my greatest enemy, wouldest thou not aduenture one fortune? say yea: Brison sayd yea. and I will heape so much treasure to thy store, that Turkie shall not boast of ouer more wealthie. Sir (quoth Brison) I will performe all your will, let your will, will what it will: therefore speake, for there resteth nothing but that you commaund me. Well doeth thine answer please me (replied Brohars:) then this it is, Basina the wife of my companion Croisant hath done mee that iniurie, which posseth mine heart downe to death with sorrow: neither shall my soule take rest, till reuenge rocke me asleepe. The meane I haue thus deuised: thou in the euening shalt goe to Montesteur, and in the chamber of Croisant, if possible, with all secrecie hide thy selfe till midnight: at what time I will vndoubtedly call vpon him, who not for a worlds will faile my will: then so soone as hee is issued out, thou like stealing Salmacis shalt lay thee downe in his place, with all the silent secrecie thou canst deuise, to the end that the false Basina, whose hate to mee is now infinite, may without suspect suffer thee. Long shalt thou not there remaine, but Croisant and I will returne to whom I will tell, that of a long time his wife hath liued disloyall with thee, with many other arguments of her inchaſtitie.

Thus did he set abroach his treasons to Brison, who accorded in euery point to his masters villanie. and for execution thereof, they parted and went to Montesteur, where Brohars found Croisant, who did entertaine him as kindly as hee loued him dearly: and in discourse they wasted the day till night with yron scepter arrested all creatures to rest: at what time Brohars tooke leaue of Croisant, and tolde him, that very earely in the morning he was to vse his presence

# The first part of

sence in an urgent affaire: to which Croisant said, he was ever ready to performe the office of a friend and his will. Thus the false thinking traitour departed and left Erison. Croisant and his wife, who when the houre of bed-time came, betooke them to their rest, thinking of nothing lesse than that which they neuer knew, to wit, euill. Basina at that instant was great with child of a sonne, who in after-time highly exalted the Christian faith. Brison, in whom treason had taken root, and now beganne to blossom, according to his masters directions, was so close hid in the innocents chamber, that the cunningest searching eie could neuer perceiue him: every minute protesting to himselfe to accomplish the treason, for which he aduentured. Anon, the night, as halfe ashamed to beholde such intollerable shame, whippit her misty waggon with such haste thorow the heauens, that in the eies of all creatures she had lost hir preeminence, and yet had day in the skie no prerogative: so as of waking eies it was then called twy-light. In this fatall houre arose Brohars, and comming to the pallace of Croisant, sent a squire to tell him he stayed for him: at which first summons, by the help of the same squire, Croisant attended himselfe, and so departed without disturbing Basina, who as then slept soundly, for her innocency kept hir from care-taking. Scarcely was the good Croisant without the limits of the Chamber, but Brison the varlet of Brohars, profaning so holy a receptacle, entred into the bed, and lay by Basina. By this was Croisant and his false faire-seeming friend mounted vpon their horses, and gotten without the walls of the city, when Brohars thus began to discourse: Long time is it since (my dearest second selfe) I made the disloyalty of thy wife apparant to thy weake vncertaine eares, yet armed with flinty dulnesse. thou hast denied thy heart leaue to beleue me: and now therefore, if thou wilt proue, by that proue a more auailing Dzatour. And for the inseparable

# the historie of Meruine.

inseparable loue and holie marriage rites of our long conioyned friendship, I will aduise thee, like him that is the purest part of my being. Yesterday when the declining of the Sunne made the day deny to be day, as if glozy were gained in being adopted the euening, Brison my seruant reported to me, that he had enioyed the excellencies of thy excellent wife, this two yeres and better: which shamefull report of a villaine, so galled me, that drawing my rapier the traitour hardly with life escaped: yet seeing him by sight repriued, I thought it in some measure my duetie, to let thee know so high a scandall, both that thou mightest reuenge and regard it. And by Mahomet he reported further, that the false woman concealed him many nights in a presse, in thy withdrawing chamber, where the strength of my imagination makes mee beleue he is at this present. Which if thou wilt approue, and we finde true, by Iupiter he dies, had he the liues of ten thousand. Hard it is to say, whether at this discourse Ielousie or Sorow took first holde on the heart of Croisant, yet both so exceedingly tormented him, that ledde by the furie of his passion, hee and Brohars leaving their squires behinde them, returned backe to his house, where entring secretly at a posterne gate, they lighted a torch, and mounting into his bed chamber found Brison layd by Basina whome enuious sleepe charmed against this miserable aduenture. Brohars at the first sight drew his rapier, and slew Brison in the bedde, ere almost any eie would haue iudged hee had seene him in the bedde (a iust reward for so vniust treacherie.) Then sayd Brohars, (deare selfe) how sozie am I for thy shame? by Mahomet, the iudgement of burning beareth in it too much lenitie: and by Iupiter, were she my sister, I would holde it treason against the gods, if I excused her from being an instant sacrifice. O Croisant, Croisant, Let her be burned, let her be burned.

30  
The first part of

2 At these wordes, the no ill-thinking Basina awaked, and with an amazed shamefastnesse, sweetly blushed to see her husband and Brohars so nere her bed: but when she saw the shates not full so white as her cheekes exceede them in blushing and perceined them all stained with a warme goarrie hue, then shee scricked out aloud, and asked, what meant that prodigious token of tragedies? Ah strumpet, false breaker of wedlocke, and worse then both, (answered Croisant) burnt shalt thou bee for the sinne wherein this night I haue found thee: and then drawing his rapier, hee drew the innocent ladie by the haire, who dead-blaine with amazement, lay at his feete. Whilste, Brohars (euer damned for this action) thus proudly insulted ouer her: Basina (quoth he) many times haue I tolde thee I would manifest thy sinne, yet wouldest thou not desist to sinne, but euer more increase thy sinne with Brisson my seruant, whom this night I haue slaine in thy bed, amidst the paradise of his embraces. Traitor, sayd the lady (awakened with these wordes, as with a cracke of thunder) falsly thou liest. Deare loue and lord, all dearer then my soule, my Croisant, boughsafe to heare me. O for pittie couer thy shining weapon, and let my wordes haue thorow thine eares a gentle passage. Neuer haue I in my thought bene guiltie of that execrable treason which he vnjustly vrgeth, no, would I be, were I tormented with worse then fiere torture. All this my false imagined shame, vild traitour, thou hast bene author of, because I haue neglected thine owne monstrous desires, which (by heauen) deare husband, he hath more then this whole yeere persecuted. Faller then falshood (sayd Croisant) too apparant is thine euill: and then shaking his sword ouer her, like the wing of a haggard faulcon ouer a surpris'd dove, he drew her from her bed, and had there scured her guiltlesse head from her as guiltlesse bodie, had not Isea her gentlewoman come forth, who seeing her lord tyrannising ouer her poore inno-

cent

31  
the historie of Meruine.

cent Lady cried so loud, that many barons which belonged to Croisant, came forth, and reprimed the Lady from the hands of their then too cruell lord, saying: Alas my lord, what will you doe against your excellent wife, whose vertuous wisdom, and wise virtue, is to women an example, and to men a iust admiration? Lords, said he, her ill is beyond the bounds of ill, and more then the degree of illnesse. It is proued, it is proued: and then he repeated all that Brohars had reported, and himselfe saene. Lords, said the Lady, by Mahomet, or what other god soeuer takes true patronage of our soule, my inward thoughts are innocent of this accusation. With that Isea, who (as ye haue read) heard all what had before passed betwene Brohars and the lady, both his bestiall assault, and her diuine repulse, said: By Iupiter, the god and patron of our country, my lady in thought and deed is altogether guiltlesse: and this treason, false Brohars, is the inuention of thy baine, because shee hath euer lothed thee and thy detestable desires. When the lords heard Iseas constant affirmation, they chid their lord for too rashly following his owne will: and bade him listen to Isea, who protested the ladies most pure pure innocencie, auerring withall, the appeale she made against Brohars. Whereupon they told him, it was conuenient to vse advised meanes in so great an action: which was, that if Brohars would accuse the ladie of such detestable ilnes and approue it against some knight in equall combat, that then the lady should haue respite to finde out a champion to defend her honour. By Alcheron (said Brohars) which containeth the law of the holy Mahomet, I consent. And I (cried out the lady) for purenesse is my sanctuarie. When was Croisant appeard, who caused his wife to be imprisoned in a strong tower, giuing hir one whole yeere for quest of her defender: but in all that time shee could not find anie knight, who dared incounter Brohars: for he was valiant,

4

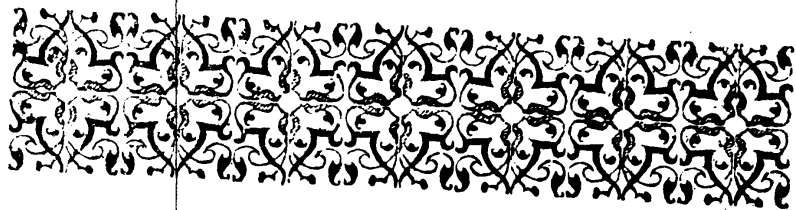
fierce,



32

## The first part of

fiere, and couragious, and so excellent a man at armes, that the world knew not a better, had not the shamefulness of his treason poisoned the vertue of his promise. When Meruine, Iacob, and thother marchants came to lodge with Minea, there wanted but three dayes of making the yeare accomplished: so that poze Minea became her owne tormentor, because her sister Basina in all that space had not found one that durst undertake her quarrell: yet it hapned in supper time, that Iacob troubled to see her sorrow, desired one to moue hir to come to him, thinking that meats mirth would expell mindes melancholie: and the moze to satisfie him, than to please her selfe, came, and set herselfe next to Meruine. Then they demanded the cause of her griefe: to whom she reported all the treason of Brohars, and how hir innocent sister within the space of three dayes should be burned, if some diuine power vouchsafed her not a knight to defend her. And when Minea had reported this, she sighed with such extreame ardencie, that all the company were moued with an extraordinary pitie.



### CHAP. VII.

1 Meruine promisseth Minea to fight the combate for her sister. 2 of his great dangers in Brandis. 3 how he behaued himselfe. 4 how Minea deliuered him from death or imprisonment.



hen Meruine the renowned issue of Oger had heard the Ladies discourse, who had in feling termes deliuered the danger wherein her sister stood, Honour that in his first creation was

33

## the historie of Meruine.

was married to his soule, could no longer be held within the limits of Oblivion, but as twere chidden by vertue for his former silence, brake from his hony-breathing tongue, and swore to the Lady by Mahomet whom he adored, he would be the defender of her sister, and make treason in the death of Brohars moze than most ugly: and then rowling himselfe like a princely lion at the Suns approaching, he exalted his voice that all the company might understand him: Lady (said Meruine) for Mahomets loue, who is our countrys protectour, cleare thy heavenly eyes, that they may no moze distaine thy diuine countenance, for thou hast found out a champion which delighteth to subdue treason, and will be proued to publish to the world thy sisters not offending: the feare of his fame, which in others ingendreth feare with cowardise, on me begetteth an invincible courage, so that I will either cleare hir reputation, or end the kalends of my life in enterprising her deliuey. When Minea heard him, she embraced him in hir armes, and said. diuine blossom of some excellent stocke, thou from whom youth hath onely a glorious title, since first I beheld thee, I did adiudge thee of an incomparable courage: blessed be therefore that blessed one which begot thee, and blessed be the wombe which bore thee, go on faire youth, Justice shall be thy warrant and Innocency thy protector. When Tirus considered the promise of Meruine, he grew sad and said: Alas faire brother, what wilt thou enterprise? what wilt thou take in hand nothing but your stone ouerthrow, and the losse of our fathers busines which against the houre cannot by you be performed? Brother (said Meruine) doubt not but our fathers busines shall be effected, and by Mahomet (which astonisheth the world with thunder) I will not for all the wealth in Montment, I will not forebeare to succor a distressed Lady, the rather for the loue of this Lady to whom we are all becloen. At this they all beholding in him a constancie, halfe angry to be contradicted,

34  
The first part of

trabicted, left off further arguing till the next morning. Minea, though exceeding joy that she had found a champion for her sister, would not suffer her eyes to close with sleep all that night, but rising early in the morning, gathered together 200 Turks to conduct Mernin to Montesteur: who some by day had awaked Iacob, & the rest, saying, my deare friends and consozts, be not wearisome to your selues in attending my back-returue, neither be displeased with what I undertake, but scolie and triumph: for why I will discharge the charges of you all: if by my want you be a little hinderd, let patience mitigate your anger, and whatsoeuer I gaine, I will willingly giue amongst you. With that came Minea into the chamber to bid them good morrow, to whom Meruine said, Lady, provide me of good armes, and an excellent horse, and let want of coin be no decay to my fortune, hold, there is store, disburle & spare not. When Tirus perceived him, his colour changed, & he grew pale saying, what meane you brother, so vnnecessarily to spend & imploy our fathers money which he hath giuen vs to pay to the marchant, to whom he oweth it. Brother (said Meruine) regard not siluer and gold more then earth, the loue wherof maketh the minds of men worse then the worst of earthinesse: better loue I to be well armed and brauely mounted, then here and there to consume vertue by exchanging marchandise. Thus spake the honorable minded Meruine, whom from his infancie nature taught to resemble the famous Duke his father. Excellently excellent young man (said Minca) keepe thy treasure, for in mine olde coffers do I harboz such store, as shall maintaine thee an hundred knights to be thine attendants: as for armes and horse, be carelesse, they long since haue bene readily provided: for the princely Earle of Brandis to whō my husband (whom he exceedingly loued) during his life was chamberlaine, hath giuen me the couragious horse Morbon, on him shalt thou mount, a feat worthy the worthiest knight the world

35  
the historie of Meruine.

world containeth: Then would Iacob, Tyrus and the other marchants needs mount on horsebacke to conduct Meruine on his way: but he desiring a litle respite, said, before I depart I will approue my armes, my horse, & my body against some other knight, because on my life relies not my selfe but anothers fortune. Friend (said a Pagan that had followed those which had brought his horse and armour) arme your selfe, for I will arme my selfe and charge you: you honour me (said he) & then Meruine buckled his gorget, cast on his curats lockt his pouldrons, put on his caske, and armed him selfe at all points, then demanded he a sword, which was deliuered him, but he refused it for being much too light: whereupon Minea went into her chamber, from which she brought a sword, bigge, strong, and massie: this sword sometimes had bene the sword of King Brandifer a Pagan, whom the renowned knight Valentine, nephew to King Pepin slew before Angoria, Minea presented this sword to Meruine, who drew it, and beholding the beautilous brightnesse said, An excellent engine, worthy an inuincible spirit, adde to me as much fortune as I will lend thee force, and both of vs will in the tongues of men be immortal. How false traytoz Brohars, be as wise in defending thy selfe, as thou art wilful in offending others, else shall thy life wast with thy slander: for Meruine is armed as himselfe desireth. At that, without the aide of his stirrope he mounted on the backe of Morbon, and demanded a lance, which so soone as he had receiued, he put him with a princely maiestie forward, passing a swift, strong, and round carriere, with such dexteritie and nimblenesse as bred wonder, and commendation in al the beholders, chiefly in the Earle of Brandis, that beholding him from his pallace, said to his Barons, behold a noble and victorious warriour, worthy to be adozned with a kings diademe, his hand is an ornament for a lance, and his person a receptacle for all vertues: with that came the Pagan, who went

36  
The first part of

went to arme himselfe, and cried to Meruine, friend, will you leaue those measures and proportioned iumps which your horse in his comming seems proud of, and try the goodnes of your arme by a sturdy incounter: It is my desire and nothing else replied Meruine, so they retired backe the one from the other, to take their course with more violence. The Story saith this incounter was on a goodly greene plaine before the Charles pallace, who as before I said, stood to behold them, with him his wife, and a gallant young Prince his sonne and heire apparant. When Meruine and the other were leuerd more than the length of a good carriere, they put spurs to their coursers, and colching their lances, ranne with such ferour, that the ground trembled at the chidings of their horses hooves: and when they toynd in the hocke, the Pagan shiuered his lance close to his gantlet, yet no more stirred the princely Meruine then the gentlest breath of aire, the strongest pyramide in Egypt. But Meruines incounter bore death in his lances point, for he stroke his staffe more than a foot and a halfe thorow the Pagens body, and pursued it with such vigoz, that he bore him headlong doونه dead vnto the ground: then stopping his horse triumphantly, he said in himselfe: euen as he thus is ouerthrowne, ouerthrow I all the knights which ranne for the golden cup which Clariffaes imagined valour enjoyeth. What reason now can deny me knighthood? None but will, and that will is vniust. Marchandise farewell, henceforth will I traffike nothing but honour.

2 Thus said young Meruine, growne proud of this late ouerthrow: but when the Pagens, and the friends of the Pagan which was slaine, saw him pay Patures last debt vnto neuer satisfied death, they all at once with one mad furie assailed Meruine, which though it nothing appalled, yet at last it bred amaze in his senses (till then vnacquainted

37  
the historie of Meruine.

quainted with tumultuous outrage: ) but when his vertue was awaked, he saide: With I am assaulted, the defence I make, offorce must be lawfull: and when he drew his sword, with which hee gaue such a blowe to the brother of the slaine Pagan, that he claus his skull to his teeth. God of our fathers, great Mahomet (said Meruine) beholde an excellent sword, if I can but maintaine strength to his edge, the world shall cronicle me for a famous marchant. But the extremite of the assault put Meruine from further speech, for the whole company assailed him: but being as wise as hee was valiant, he defended himselfe with unspeakable vertue, and that in such sort, that hee slew more then a third part of them. Yet his foes bydra-like increasing, by killing, had mightily indangered him, if the other marchaunts and the two hundred Pagens which Minea had assembled to conduct him to Montesteur, beholding his instant perill, had not taken an othe to die in his succoz. But the Count Brandis, knowing this might arise to some grieuous accident, descended from his pallace with five hundred horsemen, and comming to the place where the fight was, cried out to Meruine and the rest: By Mahomet my god, he that surceaseth not, but striketh another blowe, shall see the death. At these wordes they all retired, but Meruine in the instant of the speech layed sixe dead at his foot.

3 Therefore the Counte tooke a solemne vow, he should dearely make haunt of that dayes chualric. But Minea ranne and caught Meruine by the arme, crying, alas deare sonne, this enuious day in blood hath drowned all the hope of our good fortune: forbear, forbear, for Gods sake doe forbear, for either must wee die or die for our misdoing. Then went Minea towarde the Counte, and falling on her knees before him, sayd: For Mahomets sake, for Meccas honour, and thine owne reputation (most excellent prince)

38  
The first part of

Prince) take pittie vpon me, and my poore innocent sister, who through treason shall faultlesse consume in fire, if within this three daies she be not deliuered by this happy nowe made vnhappie young man. When the Earle saw the constancie of her teares which issued from the true fountaine of griefe, he accorded to her desire, with this condition, that wheresoeuer Meruine should goe, he should yet be his prisoner, and that she should deliuer him sufficient hostage for his returne: whereupon Minea deliuered to the Earle all the euidences, bondes and titles whatsoeuer belonged to her or her inheritance: all which he detained till her backe returne to Brandis. And thus was Meruine's peace agreed, who mightily grieved that he should be troubled or fought with, for but onely making proue of his bodie.



CHAP. VIII.

1. How Minea, Meruine, Iacob, Tyrus, and the other Marchants with the two hundred Pagans departed from Brandis, to deliuer Basina at Montesteur: 2 and of the batell fought betweene Meruine and Brohars, and the enent.



When Minea had appeased the tumult, shee departed from Brandis, and with her Meruine and the other marchants, with them the band of two hundred Pagans: and the second day after, they arriued at Montesteur, where they

39  
the historie of Meruine.

they found Croisant madde-manlike tormented with griefe in his soule, for the supposed monstrous indignitie which the treason of Brohars had rooted in his head against his constant and loyall wife Basina. When Minea saw him, shee went to meet him: and he encountering her first, gaue her this salutation. Faire sister Minea (quoth hee) thy sister hath falsely betrayed the honour of my bedde, and giuen an immezall scandall to my name: the deed is euident and apparantly true, the rather in this, that none can finde a knight, who will undertake battaile against Brohars, to defend the iustnesse of her cause. Wherefore, if I liue till to morrow, and beholde the Sunne blesse the earth with his countenance, I will see her burned, according to the execution of our law. Brother Croisant (replied she) fortune, I hope, hath allotted her starres of much better influence: and for her innocencie I haue brought one, who shall defend it against Brohars and his treason: whome I hope to see at his hanging as publike a conuertite, as he is now a monstrous false accuser. At these wordes Meruine, whose countenance did both apprehend, and discharge a princely king of maiestie, stood forth, and sayd vnto Croisant: By the faith I owe vnto Mahomet, and mine homage to distressed ladies, I will voluntarily, and with an assurance of vndoubted guiltinesse, enter battaile against that false traitour, who vnder my sword shall either publicly confesse his villanie, or die for priuate concealing so worthe to be known an indignitie. Scarce had hee finished these wordes, but Brohars came thronging into the presse, exclaiming against all men, that none durst encounter him: and withall sayde: Brother Croisant, euen the world, and babes not yet bozne into the world, will condemne thee for a wittolde, and a wilfull cuckold, sith thus long thou deferrest the burning of that odious strumpet thy wife, whose implacable sinne none dare to make seeme vnsaultie. When Meruine heard Brohars

40

## The first part of

hars, he scratcht his head, and with a grizlie looke, wherein vertue shewed her selfe moze then impatient, he sayd: False bassard, son of a most detestable whoze: whose hatefull speeches augment the abomination of thy treason: by Mahomet, this day I will see thee hanged, for thy wrongfull accuse, and vnjust slander of the vertuous Basina. Brohars moze then wounded with Meruines fierie pointed speeches, grew madde with wrath: and ozawing his sword, strike at Meruine. But vertue euer awake to defend honour, taught him how to ward the blowe, and with his fist well armed with a gauntlet, he returned Brohars such a buffet, that he made the blood gush from his eares and nostrils, saying: Traitor, beholde the champion for the iust ladie Basina, who this day will make thy heart as sadde, as thy thoughts are false, and neither by any to be matched. When Croisant saw the incomparable valour of Meruine, grew enamoured of his vertue, and sayd in himselfe: Beleene me, my soule, mine eyes haue not seene a frame of youth so faire, so bigge, and in all parts so excellently accomplisht with all perfections: by Mahomet, had nature but adozned his chin with downe, I should haue taken him to be (so much he resembled him) Oger, the renowned Christian, who slew Lucifer before Arius. After these cogitations Croisant came betweene Meruine & Brohars, desiring forbearance of their furie till the next morrow, & sayd: Lords, let prouesse slumber, till this next dayes Sunne awaken you to combat, and then Mahomet giue honour to him that hath the right. They both assented, and then Croisant demanded pledge of both sides for their appearance. And Minea pledged herselfe to Meruine, but Brohars could finde neither baron, knight, nor squire, who would be hostage for his faith. Wherefore Croisant caused him to be imprisoned for that night in a strong tower, whither was deliuered all things necessary for him or his happelasse undertaken action. Minea with all her

41

## the historie of Meruine

her traine went and lodged in a castle heard by, & sooke Meruine, Iacob, Tyrus and the other marchants with her, who though they spake not much, yet did their heauie countenances tell long tales of their tedious sorowes. But Meruine comforted them, saying, Feare not my deare companions, neither let your watry eies any longer wee an euil fortune: for by my faith (my soules debt to Mahomet if you wil pursue my steps, you shall no moze be marchants, but knights of regard & honour, & then wil we tread ouer the face of the earth, and by redoubted sight ennoble and extoll our lawe thzough all nations. But one, whose name was Brahā, compact of the coldest constitution a towards heart could be engendred of, replied: Sir Meruine, for mine owne part, I loue no honour with disturbance, nor fame with a bloody forehead: let them fight that are angrie, for my patience is eternall except it be against this pleasant cuppe of wine, and that conflict may boade my overthrow, but no wounds. At these wordes they al began to laugh but Minea whose head at that instant was a Parliament for grauer matters, went vnto Croisant, & with a graue discontentment in which was figured a modest suffrance, she desired leaue for her sister Basina to come and suppe with them, that the burden of her grieues, though they were not vnladen, yet they might by that recreation be a little eased. He willingly agreed, & so sent the iayler to fetch her, who instantly did as he was commanded. But when he came where the forsaken lady was set, & had vnlocked the two vnkind imbracing yrons that fettered her, he told her of Meruine, & how her sister Minea had brought him to fight against Brohars in defence of her honour. Alas, said she, how vnfortunate is my vnfortunatenes of my malicious fortune, and how endlesse the spring of my teares! Before I wept, because I wanted a champion: now must I weepe, that hauing a champion, I fear I want fortitude: for Brohars is inuincible, and who then can conquer the neuer to be conquered? Here she sighed as if she had neuer be-



42

## The first part of

fore sighs while the iailer said Lady, embrace comfort, & be strong with an innocent hope, for this day hath Meruine gine Brohars such an vnresistable blow, as the blood sprang out of his veines, and ranne through his ears and nostrils, A notable prologue to a wished tragedy. The poore lady hearing this she gaue hope (which before was banished) leaue once againe to possesse her, and so rose & went with her keeper till she entered into the Castle hall: but when Minea saw her first appearance, she ranne to embrace her, and she (albeit not with so much fury, for sorrow had weakened hir indeuours) did the like. And being both lockt in each others insoulings, Basina asked hir sister which was the champion whose vnspcakable vertue had vsolved once againe to make her happy. Faire sister, qud she, looke ouer all this assembly, and he is thy new creatoꝝ who is most high, strongest, and most excellently furnished in all his lineaments, and yet so yong that he hath not attained to fiftene yeres. And as she was thus speaking, Meruine rose from the place where he sat, to go comfort Iacob, whose looks were sad and discomfortable, and Basina seeing him rise, knew by his proportion, he onely of that company was likeliest to redeme her; wherefore she ranne vnto him, and falling on her knees she embraced his legs, making offer to kisse his feet. Meruine repulsed so much too diuine homage, and demanded of her what she was. Excellent creature (said she) I am the woful subject of vnspcakable misery, euen that unhappy Basina, in protection of whose innocencie, as I vnderstand, you are come to make hazard of your celestially honour: and as it is pure, so be the puritie of my redemption wonderfull in the eyes of the beholders: for by him that gaue my soule motion, there was neuer moving of vnchaste thought within mee. What is querred against me, the traitoꝝ falsly suggesteth, because I truly withstood his lasciuious affection, which he hath not left for the space of a yere hourely to sollicite, mine honoꝝ

43

## the historie of Meruine.

honoꝝ guarding what dishonour would violate, but rather shall a thousand flames dissolue me into cinders, then breach of my wedlock faith congeale frosty damnation within me. How the base slaue, slaue to his slauiſh appetite, came to be lodged by me, neither know I, nor can imagine. And more to make my ignorance perpetuall, he slue him, that by him might nothing be discovered: blameles are my thoughts, albeit my fortune faulty. If guiltlesnes be any defence be then assured thou art inuincibly armed. When Meruine heard her words graced with a gracefull delight of modest speaking, he recomforted her, promising to die or behold her deliverance. By this supper was serued vp, and they set down, but yet Iacob, Tirus, and the other marchants whispering one against another, mightily repined at the forwardnes of Meruine: for why, their hearts were created in a cold climate, where the true sunshine of honoꝝ neuer shined. By Mahomet, said Iacob, if we pursue the humoꝝs of Meruine, we but run poste after our deaths: for say he win the honour of the field and release the Lady, yet if he escape with life and retorne to Brandis, there shall he be imprisoned, and for his late outrage aduenture as great a hazard. So that as his desires are boundles, so shall his quarrels be endles, and we for being his consoꝝts be disgraced: he is much too couragious to win wealth by traffike, and too mad to be praised vnder the title of a marchant. Thus they grinded their tongues against their teeth, with repinings against Meruine, who all the while ate and drank without respect or heed taking. After supper they went to rest till the flight of birds gaue assurance of the sunnes presence, and told them it was morning: then arose Croisant, causing the liſts to be prepared, and 200. horsemen to guard it, in the midst whereof a stake was set vp, at which his wife should be burned, if Meruine failed in the conflict. Then arose Meruine, and armed himselfe with all the royall accomplements his soule desired,

44

## The first part of

and being at al pieces furnisht, he caused Morbon to be saddled, and couerd al ouer with a costly barb, on whom he leapt: and though Morbon for strength among horses was onely excelleng, yet his chine bent with the weight of the yongling. Then demaunded Meruine his helmet, which Croisant deliuerd him, and withall a mighty launce strong, and till then vntaught to skirmish. Meruine thus sate like a second Mars, or an excelleng Perseus, he made a solemne and religious vow to Mahomet, euer after that to be so, and in such maner, and neuer more to vse or inherite the trade or name of a Marchant: for (quod he) that trade abaseth an honorable disposition, and brings slander to the sword and lance which euer should be adored. Now was Brohars (who before ye heard to be imprisoned) enfranchised and set at liberty, immediatly causing his attendants to arme him, whilst his thoughts expostulated with feare, his soule holding argument with doubtfulness, yet was he an vnmatchable knight for valure; onely treason the imprisoner of vertue hauing got habitation, began to staine resolution. Yet the story saith that this Brohars was brother to Geffray, whom Karahew slue in the battel before the wals of Babylon, as is written in the history of Oger the father of Meruine. But in no pagan court durst Karahew euer after meet with Brohars, as well for feare of his fortitude, as for a generall hate conceived agens him, for offering to haue forced Rabions wife the son of Antifer. But that which giues Brohars the greatest title of dignity, and maketh all men feare to encounter him in combat, is for that he hath fought ruy. fields, all with the sword, and p. euaild, which euer after made him so fierce and proud of his fortune, that he held himselfe altogether invincible, as if by a parliament of the gods, he alone were deified. Now was brought to him to mount vpon, a mare of his owne, which was damme to the good speed Marcheual, which Oger lost vpon the sea: her colour was not black, but

blackish

45

## the historie of Meruine

blackish bay, he got her of Baucamont king of Damas, and she was trained and made ready for the warres to go assaile Mermont in his city of Montiment, thence to win the faire princely virgin Berea, whom Mermont had denied in marriage. This mare which was brought Brohars, was called Mordant, fiery and couragious: one qualitie of crueltie she had, which was, that no horse, how strong or violent soener, but she would instantly strangle, if there were not a more than v. uall regard had to hir manner of fighting. Brohars won her in an honorable combat and being mounted thereon, he took his target and hanged it before his breast, fastened a battle ax to his saddle pommel, & griped in his strong arme a mighty lance: thus accoutred, he paced towards the field, where Meruine attended his comming. Croisant still inuironed with ielousie and reuenge, had now fastened Basina to the stake, her executioners garding her, with fire ready to assaile the wood so soone as Meruine should be ouerthrowne. By this time was Brohars entred into the lists, on whom when Meruine had fired his eyes, and saw the portly maiesty of the princely beast that bore him (I meane Mordant that gallant mare) he fell mightily in loue with her, and took a blow in his owne soule, neuer againe to esteeme himselfe, if that dayes conquest made him not true possessor of so highly to be esteemed treasure. Now the time summoning an end to these great deuoures, a herald entred the lists, & after a solemne warning giuen by the sound of trumpets, he pronounced this charge: Lords and knights belonging to the noble lord Croisant, I straitly charge and command you vpon paine of death, not to speak any word til the combat be fully ended: and further, vpon the foresaid paine, I charge, that none, of what estate or condition soener, do either assist, resist, impugne or deliuer either by signe or actiō, any of the combatants, but refer the triall of their truths, to fortune, valure, and their swords. At these words the whole assembly

D 3

sembly

46

## The first part of

semblie of infinites silent, and then the Herauld departed. When entered Croisant to the Champions, and first spake in this manner to Brohars: by all the allegiance thou owest to thy earths soueraine, by thy faith to Mahomet, thy hope of conquest, & thy spirits redemption, I charge thee tel me whether all thine assertion and accusation auowed against this lady Basina my wife, be true. For no. Noble Croisant (answered Brohars) all is true by Iupiter I sweare, and this day shalt thou see that trueth glorious by my conquest. Meruine hearing him so obstinat, desired Croisant to desist from further speech: for (said he) it is more then time the traitour had made his new recantation. Knights sayd Croisant, begin at your pleasures, and this day let trueth preuaile.

2 So departed he the lists, and the two combatants putting downe their beaues, departed either from other a good distance, to adde more violences to their courses: and Basina with a more then speaking heart (for feare had bound her lips to silence) cried vpon Mahomet to guard her champion, and confound the false confounder of her honour. Now were they farre enough asunder, when turning their hedges and couching their launces, they ranne against ech other with such swiftnesse, that they ouerran the windes, which ouerrun all other mouing creatures: but in the shock, when their launces felt honours scales vpon their curats, Meruin stroke Brohars so hard (woorthy a better name then that by which force is intituled) that he tumbled him from the back of his good mare to the ground: & on the other part he likewise assailed Meruine so courageously, that both horse & man equally kist the earth together: but Meruine being quick & nimble (and neuer more quicke then in the quicknesse of extremity) quickly gate vpon amazed. But Brohars astonished w<sup>th</sup> falling from a beast so hie and loftie, arose (though not so well) yet as well as he could, and drawing his sword came to assault Meruin, who

47

## the historie of Meruine.

who cried vnto him, Traitor, this deede this day shall make thee acte a sozr tragedie. Brohars entiously angry at these words of Meruin strake at him with almost a more then diuine courage: but he perceiuing the blowe, retired a little, and toke it vpon his target: yet it came from so violent an arme, that it claue it downe to the ground, cutting withal the spur from his right foot: and the sword unsatisfied entred into the ground more then asote and a halie, whose greedines to conquer, hindred his conquering: for hee could not recouer it againe but with much paines taking. Meruine dying to die in debt of so good payment, lift vp his sword and stroke the target on the helmet, from whence the sword sliding, descended on his thigh, and there cut away a collop sufficient inough to gorge a faulcon two dayes together and better. Now was more then time for Brohars to change his footing, for the weight of this blowe gaue his hinder legge preheminance to be better and stronger, to his intollerable grieve & furie, making him raile on Maho. for suffering him thus of a boy to be mated. Meruine in whō valoz held her residence, & of whom vertue was onely inamoured, bearing sword point blanke with the Pagans eye, ranne furiously against him, and in his course said: Brohars, the execreable treasons that damnedly thou hast suggested, shall end thy life befoze the day shall end his light, else shall my reputation die in his infancie, & truth hereafter neuer be accounted the Innocents protectresse: and with that he stroke a blowe (which the Pagan receiued on his target) with such violence, that it entering in an vnamined way, Meruin by no means could pluck it out againe, though with sundrie twiches he gaue, he almost pulled it from the Pagans necke. Brohars not vnerperienced in any aduantage occasion could offer, in the extreamest of those conflicts, watching (with a greedy deliuerance of mischief in his head) and when he perceiued Meruine pull with all his sw<sup>ay</sup> he let the target slip out of his hand, so that Meruine with his owne



48

## The first part of

force fell backward to the ground, on whom immediately the traitor leaped, thinking then to finish the end of all his wishes. All the Barons that beheld this unfortunate misadventure, murmured amongst themselves and said, What pitié is this, that fortune, not valour should be the overthrow of virtue; & that this youth unconquered should not be conquered: Minea whose heart danc'd lively on the sword of Meruine, when she saw this stoure boding euill grew madde with griefe, that griefes power helo her from being madde and whispered to her selfe. O Ma Mahomet, thou which art adored in our pãtheous, if thou thus giuest ouer virtue, and leauest this exrelling creature to be slaine by a miscreant, for euer will I abiure thy deitie, rase thy Temples, and ere the sunne go downe, be baptized a Christian. Whilest thus her waue- ring thoughts amongst themselves helde a ciuill dissention, poze Basina her torments exceeded the boundes of tormentings being runne a degré beyond the coast of illnes: so that what others in their priuate selues lamented, she with loud shrikes, cries, & clamors publikely noted, insomuch that the echo of her lamentations pearcing into the eares of Meruine as he lay, conduced an honourable shame with theirs to his heart, so that gathering a better strength then that which is strength, named, by vigour of his spirite, he turned Brohars topsie turue vnder him. By this time Meruines horse, who through the cruelty of his fall, could no sooner get vp, arose, which Mordant the mare perceiuing, came and assailed him: so that betwene the beastes beganne a cruell and fierce battell, but in the end Mordant strangled the good Morbon, to the small delight of Meruine, who at that instant was buied from intending any remedy, so long did Meruin remaine vpon the traytor, that the whole company were in admiration at his indurance. But when he perceiued all meanes of release banished, and that no power he had, had power to ouerturne Meruine, he said vnto him, Meruine this arrest of burde is an

vntoun-

49

## the historie of Meruine.

vntwounding combat, by whose meanes we can neither win honour, nor bring our battell to a desired ending. I will offer thee therefore what in honourable censures shalbe honestly valiant, arise from this vaine suppressing seruitude, vnburden me and goe fetch thy sword and I will goe to my mare and fetch my battell are which hangeth at my saddle, & with them let vs either finish our liues, or amend our fortunes. Meruine in whom the ragefull fire of youth kindled a diuine balance, presently accorded & arose from Brohars, who found in himselfe a painefull weakenesse to get vp, through the great losse of blood which issuing from his wound, had already cald the earth where he lay in a scarlet mantell, as if he already had made it Judge of his life or destruction. Now had eche of them taken their weapons according to their agreement: but Brohars as if his heart wholly dwelt on the edge of his weapon, hauing the axe in his hand rayse it into the aire, & cried to Meruine. This day (boy, shalbe thy liues last day, vnlesse thou sweare and maintaine that all the articles are true which I haue imposed against Basina the wife of Croisant. which if thou doest, we will no more be foes but companions, and like men inuincible measure the earth, and conquer great Charles of France, who onely persecuteth our law and religion. Quitt tongued traitor, said Meruine little should I please Mahomet to be treacherously minded, lesse to be the companion of so base a miscreant, wherefore I esteeme both odious. After this speech they assailed ech other on euery side, where their advantages lay most aparant and that in such vehement sort and so tediously, that they both became so exceeding weary as they were faine for a time to repose themselves. After they had a while rested themselves, Meruine called to Brohars and said, Traitor, this rest is the last Sabbath of thy life: for thou hast wrongfully accused yonder innocent Lady: and therefore ere the euening eie shut in the day thou shalt dy most miserably. So row at this reprove so stoppt by the speeches of Brohars,

that

50  
The first part of

that he only gnashed his teeth, and mounting his keen edged  
axe, he stricke such a blow, and with so great might on the  
helmet of Meruin, that if the greatest of diuine powers had  
not preserved him, and that the temper and the living were  
both more than extraordinary, that day had bin the last of  
his life and fortunes. notwithstanding al the fauors of his  
knaues, so strong a poise issued from the blowes falling, that  
Meruine was forced to fall vpon his knee, yet was he soon  
remounted: and as wise in danger as valiant in his fight,  
raising his good sword, strake the traitour with such puis-  
sance on his helmet, that if Brohars had not turned backe  
he had clouen him to the shoulder, the sword in his stum-  
bling fell on the thigh of the Pagan, so as he quite disseuered  
it from his body, and with that threw the traitor vnto the  
ground, who with the grief of the blow cried, that the echo  
of his clamors were heard afar off. At this Basinas heart  
daunced in her body for ioy, so did Mineas, in whom was  
an equall sympathie: and all the barons that held either of  
the Ladies in regard, triumphed saying among themselves,  
no eie hath seen fortitude accompanied with such true fierce-  
nesse in any knight, as in this young youth unconquerable  
Meruin. Such speech spake every one of him. But the traitor  
Brohars, who had then lost a leg, took his axe into both  
his hands saying, Boy, braggard, and worse than a boyish  
braggard, stand but before me, and thou shalt see this losse  
the gaine of my better courage: for I shall neuer aspire my  
end or overthrow, till I haue cut thee peece-meale into a thou-  
sand pieces. Meruine smiling at this want, stooped to take  
him by the other foot, thinking to traile him into the midst  
of the field, but improuidence guided his action, for the traitor  
clasping him about his helmet, drew him to him with  
such maine strength, as he fell ouer and ouer. Great God  
of heauen haue mercy vpon him, for if thy pittie be not his  
saviour, death must be his redeemer.) Brohars was mighty  
and

51  
the historie of Meruine.

and strong, and so was Meruine, insomuch, that betwene  
them was shewed al the triumph and perfection of strength  
and agilitie. But in the end, Brohars, through the ruer-  
like effusion of his blood, was so exceedingly weakened, that  
in a happy time, and in despite of fortunes worst, Meruin  
arose, taking from him his battle axe: then hauering ouer  
him like an vngorged eagle, he said, Traitor, now behold the  
last date of thine affliction, confesse therefore the treason thou  
hast done against the good lady Basina, or by Mahomet thy  
own weapon immediately shall diuorce thine accursed head  
from thy shoulders. But he whom villanie had taught no-  
thing but villainous replies, answered: Thou son of a disfa-  
med rufeslan, coward, recreant, I was neuer traitor, nor did  
treason euer lodge in my affinity. As he was about to say  
more, Meruine impatient to see such audacious impietie,  
with the axe gaue him such a blow on the other thigh, that he  
cut it quite from his body, leauing him as leglesse as he was  
gracelesse: the paine whereof, together with the laboring of  
his lifes departure, made him below out such lamentations,  
that all the mountains, and plaines were prync to his mis-  
erab'le fortunes. Then called he to Meruine and said, Turn  
now I find my soule contending for her deliuey: wherefore  
if thou hast as much pittie in thy heart, as force in thy hand,  
deferre alittle my iudgement, and call Croisant and Basina  
to behold my departure. Meruine forthwith called them,  
who willingly came thither. And being come, Meruine said  
Brohars, behold, Croisant and the Lady are present, say  
what thou hast to say vnto them. Ah Croisant, Croisant,  
saide he, euen for Mahomets sake that pardons all, pardon  
me, and haue mercy on my miserie, thy wife the vertuous  
Basina is most loyal, most true, and most vndeiled not a-  
ny betwene the Poles more honozable. 'Tis true, 'tis true,  
I haue importuned her long, more than a yeare, but ne-  
uer could obtaine it. 'Tis true, 'tis true, I only for that haue  
hated

52  
The first part of

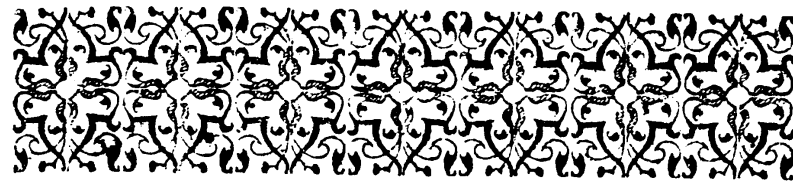
hated her. It is true that this treason was mine owne invention: I brought Brison to her bed, I suggested her disloyaltie, and I alone deserue this miserable infortune. Then he called the lady to him, and said, Diuine Basina, and excellent Lady, for loues sake, who created all things, create me anew with thy pardon, and from the white veile of thine innocency, let my misdoe find a shadowing forgiveness: for I confesse with a wringing soule my monstrous imparted treasons against thee, and will maintaine (whilest vanishing breath maintaine power to maintaine any thing) my selfe the most falsest traife that euer was recorded amongest the Pagans. Neuer spakest thou more true than now, answered Meruine, therefore shalt thou indure the Law, and I onely will be thine executioner, and with that lifting vp the axe, he stricke the Pagan betwene the helmet and the collar with such forcible vigour, that he compelled his head to flie from his shoulders. So died the traitour by the hands of Meruine the sonne

of Oger, in whom the excellencie  
of prouesse was onely  
excellent.

CHAP.



53  
the historie of Meruine.



CHAP. IX.

- 1 Of the honours done to *Meruine* for his victorie.
- 2 How *Minea* brought him backe againe to *Brands*.
- 3 His imprisonment, and other aduentures.



After the death of Brohars, (whose death was as a festival to the beholders, chiefly to *Minea* and *Basina*, who comming to *Meruine*, did him great adozation and worship) *Croissant* caused the body of the traitor to be drawne to a paire of gallowes, where it was hanged for a spectacle of monstrous villanie. But *Meruine*, whose minde was still making loue to honoz, regardlesse of other accomplishments, went to the goodly mare *Mordant*, and hauing caught her as his prize and honors right, he mounted vpon her backe, spurred her, ranne her, leapt her, and so thundzed about the fields, finding in her all the rarest perfections could possibly be wisht for in such an incomparable creature, that his ioy reached beyond the bounds of extreamest pleasure. & in this sort made him giue praise to *Mahomet*. Ah *Mahomet*, quod he, behold here a beast of inuincible puissance, I honoz thee for the gift, and by her valure will exalt thy name in forren nations: she is my harts with, & I prize her more, then her weight of the finest gold. Thus spake *Meruine*, & then rode on with the pagans, who honozed him as a demy-god, euen to the gates of *Môtesteur*, where he was receiued with triumphant ioy & solemnity. After he was ascended the castle,  
and

54  
The first part of

And had disarmed himselfe, his wounds were found sleight, and of small importance, yet not withstanding there was an excellent Surgion appointed him, whose skill in thre dayes could haue cured much greater woundings. After hee was dressed, & had given his mind a little recreation with ease hunger (in that he had fasted all the day) began to seize vpon his stomack so, that he desired the Barons to make hast with his supper, assuring them he had not felt so good an appetite before in his life time. One of y<sup>e</sup> barons told him all things were prepared for his repast, & there wanted nothing but his presence. The same Meruine and the other marchants down, who were serued with all pompous magnificence, nothing wanting that wit, wealth, or with could accomplish. When they had supped, they fell to discourse of diuers occurrents according to the time or humour of their opinions: but Minea taking Croisant vnto her, said: Brother, this princely yong man hath done thee great honour, and to my sister an eternall neuer to be requited fauour, euen as much as her soules redemption. True Dame (replied he) I acknowledge as much or more from his valure: wherefore if he please to imploy me, I am all onely at his seruice, and from this day do I reckon my new natiuitie, binding my life to his dispose, and glorying in nothing more, then in that I am his subiect. Brother (sayd Minea) thy speeches are worthy of thy vertues, therefore now prepare thy people and goe with vs to Brandis, for there haue we actions of his importance with the Earle thereof, where you must be aidant and agent, to performe vnto him the weight of our businesse. Ladie (quoth he) as willingly is mine agrément, as your wish is redy, and I am proud of so happy an occasion.

2 Thus after their intercourse of speech, they remayned at Montescour, vntil the next morning & so from thence they rode to Brandis to the house of Minea, wher she feasted them so royally, as either treasure or friendship could any way purchase

55  
the historie of Meruine.

chase: but after they were all disarmed, and had pleasantly recreated themselves one with anothers excellencies, on the sudden they heard one knocking at the gate: wherupon Minea commaunded the Porter to goe see who knocked, and to giue them entrance. Away went the Porter, and demanding the occasion of the noise, they bade him open the gates, which he had no sooner done, but there rushed in 14. knights, all well armed, of whom the nephew of Brandis named Merquier was one, & thence ascending into the hall, they beheld where Meruine was playing at the cardes with Croisant, on whom instantly they setted whilst he by force thinking to purchase his deliuerie, found that force by their preuention surprised. When Minea beheld this more then cruell occurrent, she cried to Merquier, and sayd, yong lord, for Mahomets sake, and the loue of vertue, forbear and suffer this excellent creature till to morrow, at what time, by thallegiance my soule sweeth to heauen, I will deliuer him to the Counte thy renowned vnkle. Lady (replied Merquier) pardon me, for I wil not, bicause if he passe this houre, it is impossible to appease the kindred of them whom he hath slaine. Sire hath he sent to communicate with the dead, therefore he may not liue, but lesse hee can, as none can, find any means to recouer the dead. To make a short tale of a tedious astonishment, this answer brought the lady to her wits end, & sorrow desisting to counsel her in her disputation, and notwithstanding all the force Meruine applied for his owne deliuerie, he was taken by them, bound, carried to a strong castle, settred in an iron chaine, and safely imprisoned, all as vnpleasant to him, as vnprofitable of his enemies, both without bound.

3 Being thus all alone, having no companions but anger, & his hartnes grieved, began thus to chide himselfe against reason, improuident man (said he) how much better had it bin had I trusted Tirus my brother, then mine own thoughts: for then

56  
The first part of

then refusing the battel. I had diuorced my selfe from this mischance, which too vnluckily laies hold on me: but he that impugns vertuous counsel with wilfulnes, shall be beaten with repentance, and haue no pity but his own tears. Thus spake imprisoned Meruine, while Tirus, Iacob and thother merchants, desperat to with him any other good, than goodnes in his death, prepared them to depart about the effecting of their sozen busines. They calling Minea said: Ladie, we are soze for this disastrous misfortune which is chanced to imprisoned Meruine: yet the importance of our businesse commands our departure for the mart at Boniuant approaching so neare, if we should thence be absent, would highly rebound to our losses: she answered them againe: Gentlemen depart at your best pleasures, and for all your care of Meruine, bestow it on my thoughts, which shall so busie themselves in that action, that before your returne I doubt not but purchase his liberty, so that he shall accompany you home to your country. To be brieue, her speeches so much satisfied them, that the next morning they took their iourney towards Boniuant: in which trauel we wil for a while leaue them, and speake alittle of the great king Baucamont, who calling Pimon a noble gentleman of his Court to him gaue him letters to carry to his two nephews, that is to say, to Brandis in Ciclardia, and to Antifer in Tartaria, which contained his matter of intreaty in the, to thend they shold aid him against the mighty king Meurmout of Montmēt, who in despite had refused to bestow on him the beautifull Berea his daughter in marriage. The seruiceable gallant sone effected the will of the king his master, and the two kings instantly vpon thintreaty, mustred so many of their men as were able to beare armes, and came to Damascus, where they were royally entertained, and among their discourses Baucamont discovered all the indignities continued against Meurmout, first the deniall of his daughter, then

57  
the historie of Meruine

then the disdaine of his embassade, and lastly, his threats of death to Pimon, whom he esteemed anery way worthie of so great an employment: the very encountering whereof so imprisoned his thoughts with such furie, that he swore by all the his titles a king adozeth, not to leaue him a soote of earth in the world to be ruler of, if with penance he askt not mercie for his misdoing, (they two ayding him whom hee knew and euer esteemed inuincible) with others. They quickly bound their consents to his impatience, and so forthwith caused all their nauies to be rigged and thight in most royall manner, which in short space they committed to the mercie of the mercifull God, hoysing by their sailes, and sailing with a prosperous gale for many nights and dayes, til in the end fortune (who euer will shew the nature of her condition, cross them with a mighty storme, which was moze then grienously trouble some vnto them. And to the fauour of that same we wil leaue them for a while, and returne to poze imprisoned Meruine, whom Minea & Croysant with their neuer ceasing petitions, brybes, bowes, and protestations, had by this time deliuered: at the instant of whose enlargement, Tirus, Iacob, & thother marchants made their returne from Boniuant, and came directly to the house of Minea, who entertained the most kindly: yet told them with a seeming countenance of sorrow, that by no meanes they could haue Meruine backe with them, because he was adiudged fire yeres imprisonment, and till the end thereof no releasement: and from thence forth an eternal banishment for euer from that countrey. This (said she is the agreement we haue made with the parties which pursue him and proud we are, we haue agreed vnder the price of his most precious life. Wilherfoze perswade reuerent Barbin his father to expell griefe for his absence assuring him, my care shall exceede, if possible, the care of a naturall mother, and my purse shalbe laui shly open to defray all the costs, charges, and hindrances of Meruine from his armies and the famous Mor-

C      dant



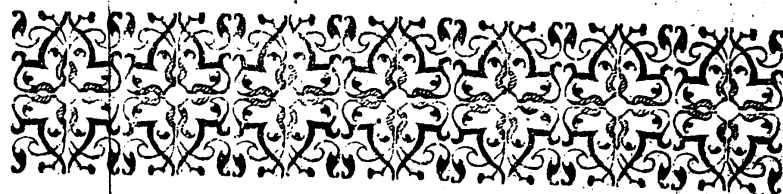
58  
The first part of

dant his excellent beast : I will preserve them for him as trophies wonne by diuine honour. Adam, said Iacob, the musicke of your wordes become well the vertues of your mind : wherefore, as reason bindeth vs, we are satisfied. No morow before the sunne shall blesse the bosome of the earth, we will begin our iorney, onely with this request, that we may for and salute Meruine before our departure. The hea- uens forbid, said Tyrus, Fie Iacob, thy speeches are too neare a kinne to thy old follies, for it will proue no saluta- tion, but a prouocation to our owne deaths : for hence there- by suspect may make vs parties to his actions. This speech of Tirus made Iacob condemne himselfe of a little improui- dence : so they rested with Minea for that night, and dearely the next morning went aboard their ships, and sallied with so fauorable a gulf, that in short space they arrived at the port of Luternia, where they anchored their vessels, and from thence marched to Montment. The Historie saith, that this Iacob the marchant altogether frequented the court of king Meurmont, who for sundry vertues he sawe shine in his honest simplicitie, loued him exceedingly, and tooke an intimate delight in his company. Now is Iacob entred into his owne gates, where his wife with all obser- uances of true duety, kindly entertained him, and Tyrus the house of Barbin his father, who seeing him unaccompa- nied of any but his owne presence, blusht, as highly ama- zed, and asked him, Faire sonne, where is Meruine thy brother that he is vnreturned with thee, to make happy my desires. Deare father, replied Tyrus, he is taken prisoner at Bzandis, which is a strong citie seated vpon the sea: Pri- soner, said his father, tell me quickly for what cause? Sir, said he, with a fearefull trembling, Meruine whom you call my brother, is too fierce, proude, and of an ambitious aspiring spirite, me hath he altogether neglected, and bent his thoughts onely on impossible indeuours. The cause of his

59  
the historie of Meruine.

his imprisonment is, for that he hath slaine seven renowned knights at one instant with his sword. And from thence Tirus discoursed to his father all the deeds of Meruine, his promise to Minea to rescue her sister, his danger in Bzan- dis, her deliuering him by meane of hostage, his going to Montestur, his combat with Brohars, his backe returne to Bzandis, his deliuering Basina, his being there surprized, and lastly, his deliuey after six yeares imprisonment with perpetuall banishment, till when there was no expecting his returne. When Barbin with a grieuing toy had heard him recount all these famous exploits of Meruine, he askt Tyrus in all these dangers, what aid or help he had done for Meruine : and Tyrus tolde him, not any at all. Then the blood of anger started into the face of Barbin, and he said to Tyrus, Faine Pagan boy, recreant to trus nobilitie, while dost thou saile him who would haue failed life for thy loues cause? Where was thy sleepe sword, that vntheathing it, thou dost not hazard to die in his rescue? By Mahomet, deare father, said he, I dare not fight, my weapons are only the wordes of an honest marchant : let Meruine, on whom the goddesse of warre is inamoured, fight for vs both, while I in a peacefull climate winne hono2 by my traffike. Thus disputed Tyrus with his father, to whom Chinalry was nothing beholding : but Barbin most sadly sorrowfull for the troubles of Meruine, flung away with great furie, making a solemne vow to Mahomet, either speedily to purchase his deliuey, or in the pursuit to spend his life and treasure.

60  
The first part of



CHAP. X.

1 *Jacob's report to king Meurmont of the acts of Meruine.* 2 *Bereas ioy.* 3 *The priuate conference betweene Berea and Jacob.*



After Jacob was returned home, and had by a little rest given ease to his soze travelled limbs, he demanded of his wife, if not any from the court had made inquirie of his returne: and his wife told him yes, a squire, whom as she imagined, belonged to the beautifull pzincesse Berea: therfore she perswaded him as a thing not vnnecessary, forthwith to goe thither & to take with him from her to the pzincesse a most curiously wrought purse which of selfe purpose she had made for her. Small perswasion preuailed. So Jacob toke the purse and went to the Court, where being entred within the hall, he found the mighty king Meurmont, who was glad to see him, most grationly demanding of his welfare: to whom Jacob with humble reuerence answered as became a loial subiect. By Mahomet (qd the king) I feared greatly lest Baucamont the proud king of Damas had met with thee, who is now comming to besiege me with so innumerable an host of men as to our seeming they double the stars of heauen. Credite me (redoubted soueraigne said Jacob) if it pleased Mahomet, or your grations starres were so fortunate, that you had but to aide you xxx. such knights euery

61  
the historie of Meruine.

euery way as excellent as Meruine the sonne of Barbin the marchant, not Baucamonts power, nor the twozlos infinitis were able to wrong you by sword or violence: for why, Meruine is euen victor himselfe, as fortunate as couragious, and both admirable, that wonder it selfe alone sits wondering at his actions, his valure instructeth valure, & his equal in euery vertue hath not issued from y<sup>e</sup> wombe of a liuing mother, insomuch that my thoughts rather bind me to adoze him as a god, then esteeme him as the son of Barbin my friend a marchant Berea, from whose eyes lone borrowed a light to illuminate al the lampes of heauen, hearing Meruin thus highly exalted by the speech of Jacob, found a ioy exceeding al ioy, as much beyond compare, as her beauty aboue equalitie, triumphantly dominereth through her royal beines, enriching her heart with the treasure deliuered to hir parts. wherefore like babes, greedy of sweete meates till they even surfeit with delight, she further demanded of Jacob, where hee had beheld Meruin in that warlike sort, which made him esteeme so rare a partialist. Diuine Lady, qd Jacob, by that religious faith I owe our great god Mahomet, I haue seen him in so dangerous sight, and in such vnspokeable trouble, that neuer knight hath indured or perfozmed so mightie a warfare with such vnspokeable vertue. And there hee in selfe maner discoursed al the exploits done by Meruin, as Tyrus before had reported to his father: which not onely byed an amazement in the King, but an inward intite loue, insomuch that from the boundlesse humoz of his affection, he heartily wished he were his sonne. And withal said, incomparable Meruine, might but thy valure ingirdle my fortunes, excellently wouldest thou reuenge me of these overdaring Kings, who come to assaile me: but tooe is me, base is the desert of thy linage, that should I hold thee as my supporter, withonour would attach me with indignitie: yet I am assured, should I send to the Count Brandis, he would not for a world deny his deliery.

## The first part of

Thus reasoned the King in himselfe, directly halpe with the diuers arguments of feare and desire.

2 But Berea in whome the extremitie of pleasure chal-  
lenged an intrest of inheritance, gaue to the possession of her  
heart, and surrendered al her spirits to the dispose of loue, and  
her happy fortune. Yet as a corrector of passion, when hee  
he grew too great a Libertine, she would sometimes sigh, and  
chide her forgetfull conceits, saying Care to purchase his re-  
turne, ought to busie them from their delight, & then would  
she create a thousand thoughts, how to bring him backe wch  
absence diuorced her from her happy longings. Whilist thus  
she and the king were both musing, she of his vertues, hee  
how he became so vertuous. Jacob, who perceiued in them  
both a dumbe wishing, saide to the king. Trust me (my soue-  
raigne) if either affaice may be had in my true intent, or trust  
in my counsel your Maestie shal vndoubtedly send for him,  
such his presence is an assured conquest, & the gods alone haue  
sworne he shall command & control victorie, whose like for  
mightinesse of shape, & couragious resolution hath not bene  
seene in all our former ages. The king to these wordes woulde  
returne no answer, but as one desirous to forget his own de-  
sires, talked of other matters, to expel the thoughts of these  
proceedings.

3 But Berea, who made precious every time with the pro-  
cisenesse of her regarde, now finding opportunitie (a kinde a-  
gent to her hopes) drew Iacob aside into a private corner (&  
greedy to know an end of that which in her could attaine to  
no end) said vnto him, Iacob, by that excellent creator which  
created me, thou hast married my delight to a delight beyond  
delight, in thy lones prayes of that delicate yong man, whom  
we call Meruin, because I haue known him, euen from the  
infancie of his infacie to these riper yeres of youth that haue  
infranchised

## the historie of Meruine.

infranchised him from the stiffnesse of schole rudiments: yet  
in all that time, nor in my time haue I seene a creature more  
admirably compact, or in whom valure, and aduenture haue  
held more preheminance. Belæue me, and by my soules god  
Mahomet I protest, it is a pitie deserving more the a pitiful  
regard, that he wanteth lands and reuenues worthy to enrich  
him with honour: but most of all grieuous, that he is no gen-  
tleman, in whom al the conditions of gentrie chalengeth such  
a wonderous prerogatiue. Ha, diuine lady (sayd Iacob) Mer-  
uine hath all whatsoever Nature or heauen can infuse into a  
mortal creature, or man or woman can bestow of a blessed in-  
fant. As for land, it is as fruitlesse as tasselie, if labour giue  
it not a sweet relish: valure is the mistress of his deuotion, and  
he is excellently valiant, the heauen climbing conceit, wher-  
of doubtlesse will mount him on the highest steppe of hono-  
r. If I may well say what in my conceit portendeth to a well  
meaning intent, were I king of Hungaria, Calabria, & Po-  
lonia, and for a blessing of those hie dignities, had but one sole  
daughter twice fairer then the fairest euer Mahomet crea-  
ted, I would giue her and it only to Meruin: yea, and imagin  
it a doctore much too little for the vertue, force, and true mag-  
nanimie with which he is so gloriously adorned. When the  
paragon of al perfections, the most beautiful Berea heard these  
wordes, first she blusht as ashy, lest his eyes had stept the  
sight in her inward desires, and then drew away the blusht  
with a pale mantle of shamefull reioycing, to heare him so  
admired, exchanging white & red so often in her counter-  
aunce that the beholders might well grow enchanted with those col-  
ours, and yet to them neuer more excellent, & yet the most  
excellent when equally in it, they bare like sonnet arguement in  
her angel speaking face. After this contending superiortie  
of looks, she turned asleepe, & whispered thus to her selfe, O  
Meruin, Meruine; the many praises of thy person, are the  
wonder wondrous thy lone in my heart, leaving



64  
The first part of

no restraint to my desires, but the palls of vertue : & yet thou knowest it not, it is now moze then fife yeeres since first I loue took flight from thine eyes to harbour in my heart, yet thou knowest it not : onely haue my bowes aspired to heauen, for thee, yet thou knewest it not, neither dare I (alas) for the baseness of thy linage take away this ignorant mischiefe of my blisse. Alas thou knowest it not. Yet shuld I liue an exile from my fathers countrey (so a diuine vniou, cald mariage, had made vs one soule) I had rather endure a tormenting euill with thy presence, then at the gorgeous aduancement, heauen or mine own wishes could giue or desire, with the greatest pagan emperor of the world. Thus spake Berea the glozy of Nature, who when Iacob perceiued so passionat, fearing lest the too great liberalitie of his wordes had offended, in this manner began to excuse them. Deare lady (sayd he) be not offended, that the height of my praises haue attained no higher a subiect then Meruine, who is higher in my thoughts, then heauen is in the eye of any man: neither impute error to my speeches, sith by heauen I haue not lied in any thing, neither spoken to flatter the priuate conceit of any peculiar, nor the publique ambition of so gracious an assembly: but what I haue said, euen the wings of euery wind will whistle. When gracious madam bowe not your countenance from me, neither be displeased with my rude reportings. Wa no, quickly answered Berea, who was willinger to increase volums, then abridge a letter, thy wordes moue me no amasement of dislike, therefore I beseech thee faile not, but come and speake with me in my chamber before thy departure from the court. At this the lady and Iacob discovered themselves, and Iacob went againe vnto the king, who euen then was roially set at dinner, and commanded Iacob to attend him & the Queene. Then began the king to discourse the hie malice of Baucamont & of his warlike expedition towards Montment, with all the occurrences of that intended warfare, as a troublesome theme whereof

65  
the historie of Meruine.

whereof only his mind noted. After dinner was ended, and the king risen Iacob humbly took his leaue to depart, yet ere he went, he inquired the way to the yong princeesse Bereas lodgings, and thither he went: but she, poze lone-tozme lady, was laid on a litle couch couerd with rich tissue, tormenting her heart with her thoughts, and her thoughts with loue, so exceedingly, that the abundance of her sorrow gaue liberty to her tongue to utter, and in uttering to double her languor: ay me, qd she, dearer then the dearest of my selfe to me. O only absolute Meruine, thy absence is my death, and thy remembrance the continuall obsequies for my decaid happiness: yet is my death blameles, sith I die for the most wise, most beautifull, most valiant, and most accomplisht creature in the world, whose renowne is spread through Galile, and all the corners of the earth. Wa Meruine, Meruine, when shall I behold the day of thy arrivall: when shall I bathe my eyes in thy eyes, whisper in thy eare, and hang on thy bosome? O excellent loue vnkowne to thee, thou hast my loue, my vertuous loue, governe me then as thy captiue, and dispose me as thy seruant. At these wordes beating the pallas of her breast, she turned and tossed, as if the motion of her bodie could remoue her passion, but it was impossible. Then calling an eunuch to her commanding him to marry his voice to his lute, she bade him sing some canzonet that might rather kill, than increase passion: the eunuch sung as followeth.

I doe not now complaine of my disgrace,  
Though neuer soule of greater griefes could boast:  
Nor of the houre, season, time nor place.  
Nor of my foile, for any freedome lost.  
Nor of my liues ioy by misfortune danted,  
Nor of my wit, with ouerweening strooke,  
Nor of my sence with any sound enchanted,  
Nor of the force of fierie pointed looke.

Nor

## The first part of

Nor of the Steele that strikes within my wound,  
 Nor of my thoughts, by worser thoughts defacde:  
 Nor of the life I labour to confound  
 But I complaine, that being thus disgracde: (flaine,  
 Fetterd, feard, frātike, charmd, fierd, shorthrogh,  
 My death is such, as I may not complaine.

On the last clause of this sonet, the noble merchant Iacob entred her chamber, whom so soon as Berea beheld, she gaue some respite to her mones, while a seeming ioy ouershadowed hir face, and an inward resolution (for many good parts she knew in him) tooke hold on her heart, giuing her assurance without feare, to make him priuie to her long hid affection. Wherefore after due reuerence done to her greatness, and a gracious welcome deliuerd from her silent looke, she bade him sit downe by her, and with a trembling voice the true herald of a vertuous meaning, thus said vnto him: Iacob, let it not seeme strange to thee, that hauing gone one step beyond wisdom, I seek by danger to ouerrun feare, and let me coniure thee by that power, to whom in thy deuotion thou hast given power ouer thy being, to keep secret in thine inward soule, what my ouerburdened hart shall unload vnto thee. Iacob in whom wonder had raised a bie colour of amazement answered: Lady, by that inviolate faith due to our great god Mahomet, I promise to keepe secret in the inclosure of my soule whatsoever you propound vnto me. Know then qd she (Chide me not whe thou knowest what I blush to know) at such time as I lay at Turgon with my mother nursed: not farre from thence the beautifull Meruine (on whom doating Nature had bestowed all her treasure) went to schole, whither I much frequented to learne the knowledge of diuine philosophy: but alas the knowledge I learned was the confounding of my understanding: for there, even there betame I surprisid with the beauties of Meruine,

## the historie of Meruine.

Meruine, and so intangled with the lone of his perfections, that his thought is my torment, and his absence my death: so as if his returne be long, my life will be short, so much my loues martirdome wounds me with intolerable sorow: yet I take Diana to my witnes, that al my lone hath bin honorably chaste, in such sort as became my vertue. or my fathers daughter, neither is he yet acquainted with my desire, nor haue I to any but thy self, benomed my unhappines, or discouered my loue. Wherefore I pray thee by the hehemēt passion of an entrained louer, make means for his return, sith many yeares are past in my remembrance since his departure. Lady said Iacob, it is but x. months the last weeke past since his departure. Ten months answered the Lady! Ay me, enery day is a worlds age in the computation of my mind, so slow is the passage of my sorowes: wherefore, by all the vertues of thy minde, & the loue thou bearest to Meruine, I coniure thee, to ygne with me in some happy strata-geme by which we may worke his returne to this country. By Mahomet, qd Iacob, Lady I can not possibly inuent hoim. When haue I deuised the way (replied Berea) & thus it is: Thou shalt to morrow morning come to my chamber to speak with me, at what time I will haue written a letter in my fathers name to the counte Brandis, & hauing this night priuily taken his scale, signe it therewith in such sort as you shall haue Meruine deliuered you. When shall you take Barbin with you, but by no means make him priuy to our complots, but stilly maintaine, it is the act of my father. When you haue Meruin, at such time as Baucamont who shortly will beleager vs, shall detaine his army, bzing him gathered at all points into the field, to ygne with my father, and doubt not of his intertaine whole succor will be so gracious. Iacob accorded to al she could inuent or desire, & so departed, leauing the lady to herselfe, to study on the inditing of a letter so weighty, which at length she persited to hir own content.

tment, and then sealed it with the kings stone seale. And in the morning Iacob came and receiued it, protesting a diligent regard in performance of such a royall affaire. The lady gaue him infinite thanks, with promise of an inspeakable reward, and then she deliuered him an C. ducats to defray his ordinarie charge, and a curious wrought chaine, of pearle and gold, which she charged him in his lones name, to present to Meruine. and withall to let him vnderstand the interest he held in her loue. All which with solemne othes he bowed honestly and zealously to performe. Then Iacob took leaue of the Lady, and came to the house of Barbin, to whom he said, My best friend Barbin make your selfe ready with all speed to go with me from the I. to Bzandis, to fetch your son Meruine home againe. Barbin, to whom no sound could bring sweeter melody, told him the newes was balme to his griefes. So dispatching his busines, and taking order for his home occasions they departed together in great hast, whom on the seas sailing towards Bzandis we will leaue, and a while speake of king Baucamont, and thother pagan princes, who after the late storme found so prosperous a gale, that he arrived at the port of Luternia, a moneth after the departure of Iacob and Barbin. Thence they marched with conquest to Spontment, which city they besieged with two hundred thousand Turks. After they were lodged and intrenched Baucamont caled a council of his chiefeest barons, and consulted among them what was to be done, and whether it were best to assault it at their first approach, or no. To which opinion of assaulting Eclamard dissented, saying, Rather would I hold the first decree agreed of amongst vs, which is, to send y. of your approued knights to Spontment, to shew wherefore we came hither, and what cause hath shewen this seed of warfare among vs, requesting his daughter the beautifull Berea, which if he will send to you to be iained in the holy bands of marriage, that then we wil return to our countries,

countries, otherwise indure the bittermost worst of warres afflictions: and this hold I the safest course in our proceedings, because if here we lengthen out time with a long and lingring warfare, Gualtier the Dane, now raigning in Babylon, and Guion of Denmarke both brothers to the euer renowned Oger, who at this instant beare such eternall hate to pagans, may in our absence exile our peace from our owne countries. Againe, which is of greatest auaille against vs, one of great knowledge reuealed to me, that the mighty emperour king Charles of France, meaneth this season to visite them, and to adore the holy sepulchre of their god. Wherefore the speedier we make our returne, the stronger our owne peace, and safetie of our countries; for the absence of kings are the deaths of nations



CHAP. XI.

1 Of the dispatch of Baucamonts two knights to Mermont. 2 Mermont in despite of Baucamont imprisoneth them. 3 Of the assault, 4 and death of Clarissa the coward.



The counsell of Eclamard, Baucamont and all his Barons applauded as most excellent, wherefore at that present was Morgan and Nigron royally dispatched for the embassade, who in solemne maner entered into the citie, and thence were conueied to the pallace, where ascending a paire of stately staires, they entered into the great chamber

## The first part of

ber, where they found the king Mermont accompanied with a number of worthy Barons, to whom Morgant first speaking, gave this salutation, That Mahomet the eternall regent and possessor of the whole world, who keepeth from euill eterneth vndering dayes to the mightie Baucamont king of Damascus, the same Mahomet confound his enemies, whose weapons maintaine warre against him. Then he proceeded thus in his ambassage: King Mermont, the king my master salutes thee by vs, and saith he wondereth whether thine ancient wisdom is fled, that thou refusest to giue him thy faire chaste daughter, whose euery excellence, the height of his royall dignities shall counterpoise: therefore these are his latest summons, either now send her by vs to make happy his desires, or hereafter it will be too late to repent thy lues end, ending thy glories: If then now thou wilt stoupe the ambition of thy will, sending her with a free consent, the marriage without delay shall be solemnized, and all his royall army shall depart without damage to thy countrey.

2 When Mermont with an often exchanging cheek had heard his deliuerie, cholerike anger roused by his lion spirits teaching his brow such frowns of displeasure, that Morgant quaked to behold the. When said Mermont, take those insolent orators of disgrace & cast them into some hideous giesse couering dungon, for that is both my reply and resolution, where in despite of Baucamont, their woes shall consume their breathes. At these wordes they were each one on euery side (having nothing to say for themselves, but prayers to Mahomet for their protection) taken & cast in most lothsome imprisonment, where their day was blacknesse, and the breath they drew, the aire of their sighes before breathed.

3 After this the king Mermont caused an alarme to be cried ouer all the city: then calling Clarissa, said vnto him, let  
it

## the historie of Meruine.

It not be troublesome to the honorable Clarissa, that this day I commit into thine inuincible protection, mine ensigne, the glorie and badge of my dignitie, with to thy worth the earth hath refused to beare an equall, as the glorie of thy carriage at our last triumph was a sufficient witnes, thy wisdom is the gouerner of my fame, & thy fortitude the hope of my redemption. By earthes god (answered Clarissa) banish all doubtfull feare, for I will support thy standard with such resolution as shall become the greatnesse of so royall a burden, (wo alas, had but Mermont knowe his extreme cowardise, not the world could haue made him hazard his honour in so weake handes) so his imagin'd reputation was but y<sup>e</sup> stolne shadow of Meruines perfection. Now Clarissa wounded to death with his own glorie, had no succour to flie vnto, but his chamberlaine that only was priue to what passed betwixt Meruine & him, who at that instant lay exceedingly sicke of a quartane feuer. Therefore comming to him, Clarissa sayd, either must thou now rise and sustaine my falling fortune, or all the hono<sup>r</sup> that I haue won by y<sup>e</sup> euery conquering handes of inuincible Meruine, will now utterly be lost, & I confounded: for the mightie standard of king Mermont this day is deliuered to my protection, and what a neuer dying shame it were thou knowe it, if it be not caried with redoubted valiancie, when innumerable blowes eternizeth the helmes of deaths tragedians. Sir, sayd the chamberlaine (who euene then was piteously ague shaken, were all the golden mines of the world proposed to me for recompense, it were impossible to raise me, because in my bobie wantes vital habilitie. When Clarissa heard him, he strooke him with so fierce a cowards blow, that two of his teeth flew out of his mouth & then departed out of the chamber in great choler, and came to king Mermont whom he intreated with all the speed he could to giue an alarme to the tentes of his enemies, who as yet secure dreamt of no danger, & by that surprise, doubted not but to attaine infinite renowne. And these  
wordes

92

## The first part of

wordes were vttered with such a trembling spirite, that king Mermont in that fnder, might haue read his cowardise, if former reuelie had not blinded suspect. But he feared him not so, that at his entreatie, he with all his Barons sallied from the towne, being 10000 well ordered souldiers. When as Baucamont beheld the comelinesse of their march, he called all his barons together, and sayd. Behold lordes in what warlike pompe king Mermont bringeth the paragon of beaultie, diuine Berea, to be espoused to our greatnesse. I charge therefore euery soule on alleageance and my loue, that they be ready to receiue them with all y<sup>e</sup> honour possible can be deuised. Thus spake he whose thoughts were flowne beyond y<sup>e</sup> Alpes farre from the purpose of Mermont for he came accompanied with the king of Calabria named Sallames, and of his brother Marandus, to whom he vsed contrary eloquence, saying Valiant and heroiike commanders, we are but a point to the great circle of our enemies, a handfull to a boundlesse masse, let vs keepe together, and making of our many but one true strength, fight like a not to be sundred mountain, that when the great hoste of our foes is conuicted, we may with final or no losse, make an honozable reitrait to Montment. To these wordes the whole armie gaue a shout of consent, and withall spurring their hozses, gaue a gallant charge on the face of their enemies: but Clarissa, whose heart was then benumbed with a colic palsy, durst not carie y<sup>e</sup> standard upright, least the viefwe of that marche of honour should encline the ambitious minded mighty ons to assaile his faint hardines which al the armie of Montment, to their grief perceiued, so y<sup>e</sup> Mermont with his fellows in vnspearable furie, thrust himselfe amongst his enemies, euen amongst their tents which they cut & belowed down in admirable maner, killing their foes as they went in huge multitudes. There was neuer a furke that Mermont met, but he stroke him dead to the earth, crying to al his host; Lordes and renowned fellows, strike couragiously, & neither

feare

73

## the historie of Meruine.

feare king, prince nor peasant, for this day haue I taken conquest my prisoner. At these wordes, a pleasant angry Turk went to Baucamont, & sayd: Glozy my soueraigne be to thy wedding day, for Mermont hath brought his daughter on his sword, and tendered her vnto the priest, with such memorable blowes, that if you sone acknowledge not satisfaction, his paiement will impouerish you of all your attendants. Baucamont hearing, & angry to heare this, took his lance, and swoze by all the deitie of Mahomet, to be gloriously reuenged on Mermont, and then like a stormie whirlewind he ran into the hoste of Montment, crying Damas, Damas, for the glozy of Damas. Then began the fight to renew his age, and to shew himselfe in his lustiest youth, doubling the deaths and wounds, of the both sides pursuing pagans. At none Baucamont being mounted on his steed Marcheull, which sometimes belond to the euer renowned duke Oger, the father of Meruine, he perceiued where Mermont rode triumphing in the conquest of his sword, whom he pursued with a valiant emulation, till Mermont beholding him, turned to encounter him, and sayd: Now Baucamont receiue from my sword the lone salute of Berea, whom befoze thou shalt enioy this earth, the common receptacle of the dead, shal be mine instant habitation. When with their wounding heeles spurring their hozses, they encountred either other so furiously, that both fello from their hozses to the ground.

4 As soon as Clarissa beheld the king his master ouerthrowen, as if his coward heart had a sympathie of euery mans afflictions, he betooke himselfe to flight, but far had not the wings his wee hozne him, but a pagan, who all the day had obserued his faint hartednes, came vpon him, and gaue him such a blow with his sword, that he fell sone dead from his hozse, yielding to a shamesull life, a sodaine death. But at this while Mermont & Baucamont assailed ech other with

such



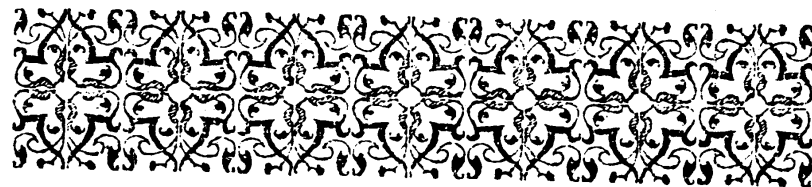
74  
The first part of

such kingly magnificence, that al the army stood in an amaze to behold them. In the end Mermont by the helpe of many handes was remounted, after which he assailed Baucamont with inestimable cruelty, yet he by the miraculous aide of his powers, which were infinite, defended himselfe, & despite of spight got on the backe of Marchenel. When began the battell, as it til then it had not begun, during which lamentable effusion, the king Sallames perceiving Eclamard who had slaine a countlesse number of his host, came running against him & gaue him such a well wishing blowe, that if the pagan had not speedily turned, he had neuer turned more than the last turne which turneth to life eternall: notwithstanding, the blowe was sent from so willing a spirit of anger, that glancing downe, it disscuerd his hand from his arme, which when Eclamard felt, he spurred his horse, and betooke his flight to his tent, whilst the whole armie which then were sadly discomforted, aduised him to returne and inclose Mermont, which Sallames vnderstanding, forthwith gaue counsell to retreat, lest that a sodaine inclosure should defeat their gotten happinesse, which they did most honorably, retiring pace by pace to the towne, their faces still fixt on their enemies: but in this retraite Mermont lost much, because Baucamont followed exceeding close, yet neuerthelesse, the other side lost much more, who returned to their tents discontented, because vntreunged. Now was Mermont brought to his palace, where his Queene and daughter royally receiued him, demanding both his health and successe in battell, which he reported in doubtfull maner, saying, both sides had lost, yet assuring them that Baucamont should neuer liue to enioy Berea, to which words Berea gaue humble thanks with princely reuerence. When demanded Berea what was become of Clarissa, to whom the king sayd, If thou louest me daughter, name not the base traitor, whose cowardise would neuer giue him leaue to strike one blowe, either with sword

or

75  
the historie of Meruine.

or lance, till he was slayne by the hands of a common soldier. Many other discourses the king and his barons held, til supper being serued, they sat downe: which no sooner finished, but Berea went to the chamber of Clarissas chamberlain, to whom shee reported his masters death. Lady (sayd he) grieue not for his death, for why, his merite was of al men least deseruing, & he altogether vnkinde, either for skirmish or battell. And there he discoursed vnto her all his stolne glory, how the prize he had before wonne, was not his, but the promise of yong Meruine, and that he himselfe had bene many times armed in his name. And lastly, of the vngentlemanly blow he gaue him, because he refused to weare his armour, & beare the standard of Mermont in that last battell.



CHAP. XII.

1 The arriual of *Jacob*, and *Barbin* at *Brandis*. 2 The presenting of the letter to the Counte. 3 *Meruine* is delivered to them. 4 *Minea* perswaded *Croissant* to accompany *Meruine*, which he did, with 400. horsemen.



When all the worldes beauteous eie, beautifull Berea vnderstood, that Clarissa had got the honour of the Toust, and the prized cup, not by himselfe, but by the diuine valiant hand of her best beloued Meruine, modestly her heart capzed in her bosome, and shee vnable to containe her thoughts, departed to her chamber, where first throwing her selfe vpon her bed, and then taking a well speaking

¶ 2

late,



76  
The first part of

lute, she appalled her voice to the sounding strings, and sung in this maner:

Eyes with your teares, blind if you bee,  
Why haue those teares such eyes to see?  
Poore eyes, if your teares can mooue  
My teares, eyes then must moane my lone:  
Then eyes since you haue lost your sight,  
Weepe still, and teares shall lend you light,  
Till both dissolue, and both want night.

No, no cleare eyes, you are not blind,  
But in your teares discerne my mind,  
Teares is the language which you speake,  
Which my heart counting, it must breake:  
Then cease ill tongue to tell my wrongs,  
My sighes shall get them better tonges,  
To tell what heauen to loue belongs.

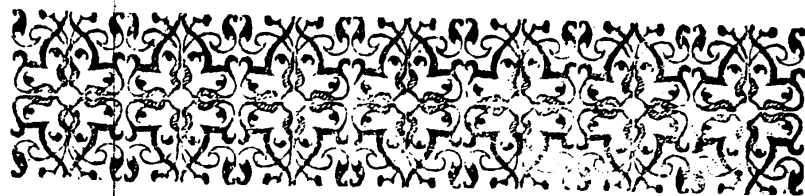
After she had sung this, as if the lute doubled her imaginations, she threwe it from her, & with erected hands & beatead eyes, she sayd. Thou onely honour to beautie, excellent Meruine, be gracious to my thzall, and refozte my miserie, & you gentle windes, quickly and with easie murmure, conuey my passions into his eares, whereas yet neuer entred my lamentations: bespædie honourable Iacob, and assure the honoz of my affections, else shall my desires be my death, and loue my burial: thus lamented she in whom woe was lonely, because adozned with her lone: but Meruin altogether skilless of her complaint, led in Brandis a most pleasant and delectable life: for why? the Countesse thereof did loue him with a most perfect and sincere loue, so likewise did Minea, whose careful intinacle so regarded him, that it was moze laboꝝ some for him to wish, then to attaine the end of his wish, but the absolutely

77  
the historie of Meruine.

vertuous Meruine neuer had vnchast thought, moꝝ euer accompanied woman but Berea, whom he married, and begate of her Orient, the father of the seauen signes, as is wzitten in the holy histozie of Godfrey of Bullein. But I will leaue them, and returne to Iacob and Barbin, who arriuing at Brandis, and comming to the house of Minea, were solemnely receiued of her and all her attendants. When Barbin inquired of the health of Meruine, and was assured by her, that he was excellently well, for that she had supped with him the last night. When he told her, that his occasions imposed him to goe to the earles court to deliuer him a letter for the release of Meruine. The musike of this newes entred harshly into her eares, for that she wist nothing less then the departure of Meruine, yet she couered it vnder a deceitfull shadowe of consentment, and then conducted them to the earles pallace, where they found him with a falcon on his fist: (for his delight was wholly in hauking) but when the Countesse beheld Minea, he sayd, Lady, what occasion hath drawen you into these parts? When Iacob drawing forth the letter, gaue the earle this salutation.

Mahomet that is our god, and the god of Asia, preserve the mightie king Meurmout, and blesse you, whom that good king kindly regreteth by these letters. When in most humble maner, kissing the superscription, he presented them to his hands, who breaking open the scales, read them, the tenure whereof was this.  
(. .)

78  
The first part of



The letter of king Mermont,  
to the Counte Brandis.



Oft thrise excellent and renowned Counte Brandis, we haue beene aduertised, that for an occasion of no great moment, more then the defence of a spotlesse reputation, you hold one of our liege people prisoner. Wherefore, by vertue of our royall authoritie, wee commaund you, that without delay, or further prolonging of excuse, you returne him to our saued handes, and send vs in writing all the articles of his imprisonment: and we protest by the holy title of our Crowne, to make full satisfaction. If otherwise you repell, and effect the contrary, expect nothing, but the vttermost worst of our indignation.

Written at Mountment,  
and signed Mermont.

79  
the historie of Meruine.

So soner had the earle read this letter which Berea had composed and sealed with her fathers seale, but he sayd to Iacob, honourable sir, your welcome is as good as your owne desires can intreat, and most willingly shal you haue Meruin restored, who, if he had wrongd me a thousand fold more then he hath, yet would I deliuer him for the loue of the famous king Mermont, to whom I am in kinred next allied: & assure his highnesse, that if I had knowen him for one of his subiects, I would not haue detained him for a kingdome.

3 This vaine to make a long tale of a light subiect: Meruine was sent for, & deliuered to Iacob, & his father Barbin, who accepted him with al ioy, and imbaced him with the highest contentment: and he on thother part did that duetifull reverence, which either a son ought, or a father expecteth. When the earle sayd vnto him, Meruin, this night will I do thee honor to sup with me, because for the loue of king Mermont I haue forgotten thy misdoings: & then the Sener being aduised, the kings seruice was sent vp, & they feasted with great pompe. The solemnitie being ended, Iacob, Barbin & Meruin, went with Minea, to her house, where they lay for that night: yet before they went to their rest, Iacob drew Meruin apart in secrete, and told him in wel couched phrases, adorned with a most graue & staied countenance, that the diuine lady of all hearts, only beautifull Berea saluted him, sending him that sacred chaste affection which no time could outweate, nor force violate. In brieve, he laid open all the large volume of her loue, & how she had composed that letter which was the meane of his redemption, with many other testimonies of her holy desires; euen on the tip of Iacobs tongue, as he was talking, late Loue heading new darts, and from thence toke his flight into the heart of Meruine, where he commented of all that was spoken, doubling each praise, and redoubling euery perfection, and in the end, in that religious Sanctuary, set

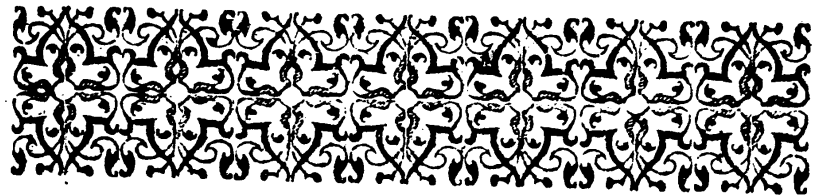
80  
The first part of

to woe this immouable iudgement, that Berea was most excellent, worthy of all loue, & therefore by him should euer be beloued. Hence began the sparkles of loues purest order, and hence grew an unlimited desire in Meruine, speedily to behold his new selected goddessse. Then Iacob presented to him from hir a paire of gorgeous gloves, on which was imbrodered a turtle done in a bowler of roses, and this motto, *Neuer euer alone*, which Meruin receiued as kindly, as they were sent willingly, often kissing and re-kissing them, as the blessed ensigns of a fortunate loue. By this the night grew old, so that euery one betooke them to their rest: but Meruine that night indented with his new thoughts that they should exile sleape from his eyes, and make his rest the resting on his loues imaginations: and so they did.

4 But when Minea perceiued that Meruine must so sone depart, she sent a messenger in all haste to Croisant, to intreate him to bring all his power to conduct Meruine to his owne country: the which he did, bringing with him to Brandis foure hundred hoysmen his attendants. When the morning had set open the gates, through which the day might passe, Meruine arose and desired his father & the rest to make haste in their departure: he longed exceedingly to see his brother Tyrus, and the rest of his kinned: but they that could haue read on the table of his desires might haue seene it was Berea to whom his wishes aspired. By this they were all ready, then Minea brought him his armes, and his sword, and one of his squires brought him his mare portant, whereon he lightly vaulted without the aide of stirrop, and said; Ladies, to whom my seruice is bound in an eternall band, be Mahomet euer gracious to you, and graunt you all what you can desire. At this the countesse and Minea kiss him, and then they departed: but the earle himselfe would needs be their conduct to their ships, giving Iacob

81  
the historie of Meruine.

Iacob a letter to deliuer king Mermont, importing that he had set Meruine quit of all accusations. And further, that if his maiesty pleased to commaund him or his power against the enemies of his commonwealth, hee was ready, and would take it for a grace of unspeakable kindnes. Thus hauing brought them to their ships, and seene them aboard, with triumph he returned to his castle, and Iacob, Barbin, Meruine, Croisant, and the 400. hoysmen bequeathed themselves to the fauor of the seas and the winds mercy, of whom we will cease to speake, and treat of other matters.



CHAP. XIII.

- 1 The incounter betweene Gallien, Rotherus, the sonne of Oliuer and Meruine, 2 Of the good knight Drohes, who yeilded himselfe to Meruine.



The euer memorizable recozd of this famous history maketh mention, that in the same time that Meruine was departed from Brandis, as is before written, there was sailing vpon that sea, vpon which he then daunced, many French Christian knights, that forsooke the floszie countrey of Fraunce, to behold the diuine sepulchre of their holie Saviour, amongst whom Oliuer that was exterminated by Marsilius, had begotten on Iauelin, whom Oliuer the beautiful daughter of the rich king named Hugues of Constantinople, at such time as the truce was made by Charlemaine and his twelue peeres. There was also with this Gallien

## The first part of

Gallien, Rotherus another knight, the remembrance of whose vertue, might exceedingly wel equal the most praise-worthy reputatiō: he had to name Drohes, who after that time became friend to Meruin, as shal be fully mentioned in this present history. Behold now these christians chased by the vnmmercifull fury of a violent storm, arrived nere vnto Meruin, who first perceiuing them, cried to his companions, this day is better then a Sabbath to my desires, for I discover a ship laden with christian gallants: if it be rich, he pours the profit of their wealth, vouchsafe me no bootie but prowesse, and honoꝝ to my sword, which is al I desire to deserue. And at these wordes a courageous fire of valiant fury inuironed his heart. Now if the zealous minded christians, when they beheld the pagans were ouerrun with a doubtfull feare of their successe wonder not, for they were but thirtie and those il appointed both for armour and munition, so that if the eye of heauen behold them not with a pitying aspect, their liues and honours are all in iopardy by the valiancy of Meruin. Cousin Gallien said Drohes, behold how these pagans draw nere to assault vs, if Iehouah looke not from heauen, here shal our liues pay their last forset. Feare not cosine (replied Gallien) for by that faith I owe to th Almighty, so long as I can hold my battell as in my hand so long wil I maintain my liberty, and doubt not but to send thousands of them to hell. O cosine, against the foes of religion we ought to be eternally valiant, yet if God in his great booke of destinie haue set dovn ne our tragedies in this conflict, let vs receiue with ioyfulness what we cannot repel with vntwillingnes: Yet I protest to you by the greatest protection of a christian soule, that before I be taken, ile infranchise so many pagan soules from their cursed bodies, that the crimson currents of their blood, shal vouchsafe my hands a perpetuall couerture. While Gallien was speaking this, Meruine and his companions, being already prepared for the battell, bowed Gallien, to whom Meruine hailed & deman-

## the historie of Meruine.

demaned whence, and what they were, whose white crosses were (said he) the signes of christianity which he had bowed to root from the face of all nations. Scarcely was his last word ended, but the pagan mariners assaulted the christians whom Meruine & the rest with their swords in their fists, violently seconded, making almost the beginning and ending one moment. Where might the eye of man behold a lamentable spectacle; for of xxx Christian soules in a trice were xxvj. breathlesse, only iij. sacriuing, which were Gallien Drohes, and ij. others, which breathed scarce a breath, before their breaths vanished but Drohes turning aloft his stakebetwing sword (which the counte of Deulant had giuen him, when he fought against Sodonas) slew an infinit number of the valiantest Sarazens but Gallien caried himselfe so courageously that he neuer strooke blow with his are, but he disseuered the life from the body. When Croisant sawe the prowesse of Gallien, he cried vnto his people, that they should not for a world kil him, because he would present him as a great estimate to king Mermont: but that word of lifes safety cost him moze by much than he desired to tender: for Gallien smote so thicke with his are, that the pagans in abundance tumbled into the sea, Gallien still crying S. George and me; and withall crying; Thou holy Lamb of Iuda, comfort thy people. All this while the valiant acts of Meruine the son of Oger did, were wonders beyond wonder, and moze than words haue power to deliuer: yet what he did, he ill did, sith it was to exalt Mahomet, & shew himselfe an inuincible pagan, yet ought he not be hated for his misbeliese, but curse with immortall malediction, that false fairy Gratiana, who stealing him, told not the trueth of his birth and being. Gallien and Drohes made great resistance against the pagans, but the highest valure is profitlesse against an higher resolution. Wherefore cousin Drohes, said Gallien, let me kisse thee, and bid thee farewell, for here shal our

84  
The first part of

our bodies vnſundered, ſunder their acquaintance, but our ſoule I hope, embrace in the higheſt pallace of heauen. Well doſt thou know, & that we had ſuch cauſe to know! how Ganelon the traitor by his treaſon deliuered vnto the king Marcellius, my father Oliuer, and the famous Orlando, who died at Ronceualli: & Oliuer my father, thou ſcourge of Sarazens turne back into heauen. Thus ſpake the wiſe Gallien, whom Meruine beholding with the eyes of perſite anger, and ſeing that none of his people durſt approach him, cried, retire thou valureleſſe amated nation, whoſe earthly ſpirits are conſumed with the fire of this chriſtian, to me belongs the conflict, to me the reputation. Approaching to Gallien, he ſaid, Traitor, all thy defences are but miſts that baniſh from thy ſafety, great hath bin thy conqueſt, greater thy fault for ſuch conqueſt and greateſt now ſhall be thy overthrow: Yet for thy valure ſake, I will contradict my iudgement, yield, and thy life is ſaued. Were it not for charity (ſaid Gallien) I ſhould hate thy ſoule, but thy body be aſſured, I deſeſt, yet my ſelfe much more, ſhould I haue but halfe a thought of ſubmiſſion: neuer was there pagan bozne, to whom I will be obedient: and at that word he ſtrucke a pagan that approached him with ſuch furie, that he fell dead beſore Meruine. Meruine beholding this true magnanimity, had not euen at that inſtant wrath thruſt pittie from her ſoueraignty, he had both ſaued and loued him, but being blinded with emulation, he ruſht vpon Gallien, and ſtrucke him vpon the head, that he claue him euen vnto the girdle. Alas Gallien the ſonne of Oliuer, as memorable for his vertues, as famous for his victories, is now ſlaine: forgiue him great loue that ſlew him, and yet it was a wound that wounded all chriſtendome.

2 How is Drohes alone, and yet not alone, for ſeing Gallien dead, he was conſorted with infinite perplexities, and

85  
the hſtorie of Meruine.

and as twere armed with their inuiſible tumults, he ſware that beſore he died, he would reuenge his death, then ſlew he amongſt the proudeſt Sarazins ſending infinites to attend him whom he loued, but alas their courſes were contrary, for Gallien aſcending, they deſcended. So like a careleſſe mad man, only diſcreetly wiſe in the waies of prouidence did Drohes behaue himſelfe, that leauing his own, he boarded the ſhip where the Pagans were inhaused, and there defended and offended with ſuch vnſpeakable corage, that not any but ſtarted backe and reſuſed to aſſaile him. Jeſus, ſaid Drohes, that madeſt the croſſe glorious by thy paſſion, ſhall I, & muſt I die here, and thus vnreuenged, with that word he leapt into a litle boate that was behind at the ſtern of the ſhip and ſwoze by holy Mary that who ſo entred there, he would be his deaths man: for ſithence he was alone, he would ſell his owne & his fellowes liues, at the rate of a bloody tribute. When came Meruine all amazed, ſaying; Chriſtian, for pure loue only of thy vertue, if thou wilt yield, and traſt mine honorable reputation, by Mahomet, and him thou calleſt thy redæmer, thou ſhalt haue no harme, only the title of my priſoner, and for the reſcōue of thy valiancie ſhalt goe whither fortune ſhall conduct mee: this do, and ſo do, otherwiſe by Alcaron, my honour and my ſword, inſtantly either thou or I will be entertained into deaths manſion. Drohes hearing the thunder, yet the ſwæt thunder of Meruins ſpeech, albeit it made but a dolefull melody in his eares, yet entring into many ſouldierlike conſiderations, both of after aduenture, and preſent danger, guided by the grace of God and his good Angell, he accepted a will to accept thoſe conditions ſaying to himſelfe: By that ceſſial virgin who bare the fruit of life, it is better to be in priſon, and prolong life with ſome hope, then preſently die, and the ſoule vnſatisfied. Then raiſing his voice aloft; Noble pagan, ſayd he to Meruine, on theſe conditions, that

## The first part of

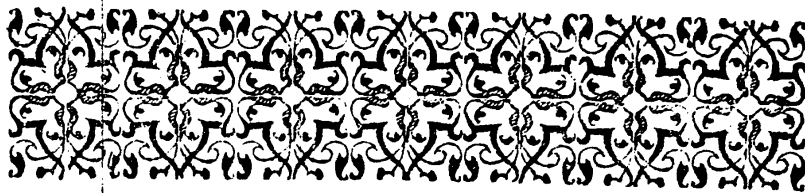
that neither my life be violated, nor I bound to deny my religion, I yield my selfe. Christian qd Meruin I assure it thee: then Drohes deliuerd by his sword, and Meruine receined it. At the instant of this aduenture, there stood by a pagan, who boyled to shew himselfe a notable varlet, and seeing Drohes without armes, he smote him ouer the face, saying Willaine, thy death is swozne. With that Meruine turned back, in whom rage by desert challenged an interest, because both his faith and honour was profaned, saying to the Pagan, Thou son of a common vngratified whoze, proue why thou smotest this Christian, who is yielded my prisoner, and to whom by warranty my reputation is ingaged: with that Meruine lifted by Drohes sword being naked in his hand, and stroke the Pagan, that he claue him to the teath: then amplifying his protestation, said, By Mahomet, if there be any man, of what estate soeuer, that impeacheth my promise, or doth my word wrong to any christian, this hand, and this sword shall minister reuenge: for all my deeds shall be iust and religious. Immortall creator (said Drohes to himselfe) how well worthy is this Pagan to rule a monarchie! I haue not scene a creature more wise, gracious, nor more valiant. And thou that disposest all things, dispose and conuert his thoughts to christianity, so that he be well worthy of all honours, otherwise my thoughts are prophets, presaging an vnpeakeable losse to ensue by his chivalrie. These praises whispered Drohes of Meruine, bring but the first sacrifices of a greater loue which ensued. Now came Barbin to Meruine saying, My beloued sonne, too strong a witness is this blow of thy heauy displeasure, I pray thee of loue, giue not to thy followers matter of indignation, as you haue done to him you haue slaine. Father qd Meruine, dissimulation is a branch of cowardise, I will be plaine and iust, if the greatest monarch vnder heauen wrong me, my sword shall right me. Pea but (said Barbin) feare is fellow with

## the historie of Meruine.

with tyrannie & souldiers must be preserved with affabilitie. By Mahomet answered he againe, I will be feared thorough out the world, & who so is not feared, is not truly beloued: of whatsoeuer is gotten by the conquest of these christians, I desire nothing part it amongst you, saue onely this prisoner: wherefore let none doe him villanie, for it is mine indignitie. This sayd: al the pagans trembled, till with a cherefull countenance he gaue new life to their terror: such effects of wonder was in his beholding. Now all troubles being appeased, the pagans diuided the bootie amongst them, and Meruine withdrawing himselfe into his cabin, onely made himselfe rich, with heaping to himselfe infinite wishes to behold and enioy the most admirable Berea: and in these cogitations he sayled with such prosperous successe, that in few dayes they arriued at the port Luternia, where they landed, two leagues from the host of king Baucamont, who as you haue heard, had besiedged Mermont within Montment, with two hundred thousand men, and had so continued five moneths, from the time that Barbin and Iacob departed in quest for the only valiant Meruine, whom they brought with 300. fighting men, 400. they had at their departure from Brandis, but in the conflict at sea, they lost 100. Now as they marched, it was told Meruin that the next morning should a great battell be fought betwene the kings, wherefore Meruine sayd vnto Iacob, I pray you let vs adde wings to our fate, that we may flie to the beginning of the battell, for in it shall Berea behold me either honoured or intombed. Thus, and in these discourtes, they shortned the tiresome way, passing by a little cottage, and thence entred into a small village, but there they found nothing to eate, for Baucamont had destroyed al. Thus will I leaue to speake of Meruine, and will returne to Mermont, and his fortunes in the next dayes mighty battell.



# The first part of



## CHAP. XIII.

- 1 Of the great battell before Montment. 2 *Mermont* taken prisoner. 3 *Meruines* arrivall and recouerie of *Mermont*, 4 *Meruines* exploites in the battell. 5 His second deliury of *Mermont*, & other accidents.



As soone as the sun had put on the dayes golden armour, *Mermont* arose and commanded proclamation through the towne that every one armed should mount on horseback, for that day he would give battell to *Baucamont*: and when all the host was assembled, he ordered his battalions according to the customs of the most ancient Romanes: which done, he gave his standard to be carried by a notable pagan, the sonne of his sister, named *Tufer*, who had in his regiment 20000. *herclemen*. The second batalion was commaunded by a most fierce *Sarazen* called *Arufait*, who also had 20000. *Murgaffier* his brother conducted the third: the fourth was led by the high Admirall, a man both proud and valiant: and the fift, the king himselfe commanded every regiment being 20000. from rank to ranke. *Mermont* the king in great maiesty passed admonishing his people with excellent persuasions, saying, Lords and my fellows in this high worke of fortitude, behold now the prize of the most excellent resolution, make her the aime of your thoughts, and winne her by your almighty actions: right is your assistant, and *Mahomet* your guide, the thing you

# the historie of Meruine.

you defend, is your inheritance, & the man offending is *Baucamont* a flayer, an usurper, and worst of all, a tyrant: be ther valiant, and spare none, with his malice spareth not to rote out you and your families. Many other arguments of encouragement he used and then issued out of the towne in a well ordered march, and pace for pace, in a well orderedly equipage approached their enemies, who staid, for them ranged and ordered in most formal, proportion. When *Baucamont* beheld the power of *Mermont* so well detained and denided, he went from ranke to ranke, & cheered his men with these speeches: My Lordes and Barons, for the honour of your names ever till now eternized, lay by in oblivion the remembrance of your wives and children, and save honor alone, keepe nothing secret: our enemies are but few in number, it is impossible for them to hold long, if everyone do his endeavour: We then wondered at for valure, for the easier to attaine, the greater dishonor not attaining. Sir, replied the chiefe commanders of his armie, he resolved, that this day we will either win *Berea*, or all be dissolved and in that hope set forward to fortune & our conquest. At those words *Baucamont* mounted on *Marcheuall*, which sometimes was *Ogers*, whose damme *Meruine* conquered, when he slew the traitour *Brohars* (as you have before heard) and when *Baucamont* was mounted, he caused a charge to be sounded: & his foes on the other side, answered with like musick. How gallant a thing it was, to heare the reuiuing clamors, to see the ioyning of the hostes, to behold the shot of one and other side, in such abundance, that it seemed like a snow descending from heauen: when the shot ceased, then began they to fight hand to hand, *Mermont* crying *Montment*, and *Baucamont*, *Damas*. There might you see a fierce skirmish, as well of the flaine pagans, as the dying wounded: there ran the horses by and downe, trailing their reines in contempt, after them that but ere while ruled them. There might you see a hand holding a sword,

## The first part of

sword, but wanting a body to rule it: a man that but now  
 fought to keepe away death, now lamenting for nothing, but  
 that he could not haue death, all things confused, all things  
 tumultuous: for such and no other is warres beauty. Mer-  
 mont being valiant, picked amongst his enemies, exclaiming  
 against Baucamont, and threatening reuenge for the wrongs  
 both to come & perfit. And in this furie he smote a pagan  
 named Malcuidant, that he tumbled dead before him: thence  
 he passed and incountried Affricant, whom he slew likewise.  
 Why shall I make labour some my discourse? Mermont, be-  
 fore he ceased, slew five, & then cryed on his standard bearer,  
 whom he brought to the strength of his battell. Then Arti-  
 falt of Luterne, and Murgaffier his brother folowed him:  
 on the other side Baucamont cried to his armie, come on gal-  
 lants, if any haue courage, let him follow me, and he shall not  
 onely win gold, but kingdoms. With Baucamonts speeches  
 his souldiers took such courage, that in despite of fortune,  
 Mermont and his hoste were compelled to retire. During  
 the blacke sunne, shine of this contagious day, Berea was at  
 Turgon standing on a tower, from whence she beheld the  
 battell; & when she saw her fathers army retire, with a pitey-  
 ing sigh she sayd, Ah Mahomet, that our men had new  
 strengths, or better fortunes: with that with entered the  
 thoughts of Meruine into her memorie, for whom she excee-  
 dingly lamented, saying, Deare loue most excellent, because  
 onely worthy to be excellent, how tardie are thy plumes,  
 that conuey thee with no more speed to our affliction: thou stai-  
 est too long, & thou staiest too long, come speedily my loue, or  
 these iron blowes of our enemies will confound vs, & blisse  
 mine eyes once againe with the sight of thy halure, els shall  
 my soule leaue my body, because my body shall be compelled  
 to forsake thee. Thus, and with these teares of lamentation,  
 complained she for her absent loue, who staid in the village  
 where we left him, even untill morning, at which time he  
 arose

## the historie of Meruine.

arose, armed himselfe, and gorgeously adorne the top of his  
 helmet, by fastning thereon the gloues sent him from Berea.  
 Thus armed, he mounted on Mordant, and pating forth,  
 found all his troupe ready attending his coming, and so in  
 warlike maner they all departed, but in their marching Mer-  
 uine called Drohes to him, and sayd, Christian, if by that  
 faith which so much thou holdest inuiolate, thou wilt this  
 day aide vs in the battell, to which we are marching, I will  
 both doe thee honour, command thee armes, and reuerence  
 thy reputation. In faith (replied he) or what els thou canst  
 imagine I esteeme dearer, I will: neither doubt mee for dis-  
 loialtie, sith if all thine army should renounce thee, Drohes  
 would die faithfully by thee. At those wordes Meruine com-  
 manded him armes; and when Drohes was armed, he made  
 a vow, that if that day he encountred the pagans, then the  
 Discipline and Justice issuing from his sword, should te-  
 stifie, that the death of Gallien Rothorus should not sleepe  
 vnreruenged. Now had they ridden so farre, that by the giant,  
 begotten cloudes, and the murmuring ruor of the troubled  
 aire, they might see they were not farre from the battell: a-  
 none they might heare the noise, the cries and the incoun-  
 ters, all which assured their former imaginations.

2 When picking more eagerly for ward, they hasted to be  
 made parties in the conflict, yet ere they could approach, by ill  
 chance Mermont was ouert hrown by Baucamont, & in de-  
 spite of his followers, taken prisoner: to whom Baucamont  
 with reuiling wordes, sayd, Wastle to my fortune, this day is  
 the last of thy lifes date, and thy death shall be shamefull, thy  
 daughter in spight will I teare from thy possession, yet will I  
 lie with her but one sole night, for after I will bestow her on  
 Pimon mine embassado: to who thou threatenest death for  
 bringing my message: such shame will I heap on thy crown,  
 such scandal to thy fortune. This said, Baucamont called An-  
 tifer,

92

## The first part of

tifer, and commanded him to conuey Mermont to his tent, til he had utterly discomfited the rest of his army. Then took they Mermont and bound him with strong cords, and muffled his eies lest he shuld see any alteration in that base manner, haled him to their tents.

3 But as Meruine rid aside discoursing with Iacob, the good merchant Iacob perceiued how pittilessly his king was martired with his tormentors: wherefore, as if his eies had wounded his heart, he cried to Meruine, O saue him, saue him: behold, king Mermont taken, dishonored & tormented. Meruine, as if awaked from a slumber, at such exclaiming, looking about, and seeing him, smote the mare with his spurs, who like a whirlewind carried him against Antifer. He approaching so neare that the sound of his words might be retained, he cried, Mermont my king, feare not thy ill fortune, for in despite of these villaines, I will recarry thee into Montment, at that word he encountred a pagan called Esclardy, nephew to Baucamont, and with such commanding violence, that no steale durst withstand it, but the head of his lance made a passage both thzough his hart and body: he dead, Meruine charged his followers, chiefly Drohes, to whom he said; Absolutely valiant Christian, I challenge thee, make good the couenant betwixt vs, spare neither king nor prince, commander nor follower: then spurred they two in amongst the pagans, in such sort, that as the ripe cozne befoze the shearers, so fell they befoze them. When Meruine approaching to Mermont, whom a Turk holding, Meruine gaue him a blow that claue him to the girdle. After vndering the kings bonds, and giuing him liberty to see his redemption, said vnto him, famous king, and my loues soueraigne, my work is but the work of duty, command my life for thy ransome. As Mermont was about to reply and imbrace him, Meruine stayd him, saying, what I do, I ought

doe,

93

## the historie of Meruine.

do, hereafter shall write mine allegiance: hold, lace on your helmet, and I will prouide you a horse to mount on.

4 With that he beheld Antifer, who was princely mounted, & came thus to him; Pagan, of necessity you must present me your horse for the king my soueraigne: and for a fulpoint to his speech, he gaue him a blowe crosse the beuer, as he fell downe mortally wounded. Meruine toke his horse, and thereon mounted king Mermont, whose ioy none can speake of, but those that haue tasted his affliction. Now began a maruelous battell, wherein all did very well, yet euery one couetous to do moze: pleasant and louely it was to behold Drohes, who thinking euery pagan he mette the murderer of Gallien, sent thousands to heil, that had not seen Gallien, but aboue all, Meruine surpassed, who neuer lifted vp his hand, but death folloved the falling. At these two Mermont wounded, swearing within himselfe the one was Mahomet, the other Apollo, and that they were come, the one to shew deitie, thother to attaine a greater conquest than the death of Pithon. In fine he said, both were his assistants, bicause his quarrell was lawfull. In such sort did Meruine and Drohes behaue themselves, that of 3000 that caried away Mermont, not one escaped, but either slaine or sore wounded. A Sarazen beholding this sight, seeing two thus triumphant ouer so many thousands, smote his horse with his spurs, and came running to Baucamont, crying, King of Damasus retire for euen Mahomet and Jehouah are come to fight against thee. Mermont is recovered and thy men discomfited, two for two millions are much too mightie, retire then, retire, for saue death thou canst haue no compassion. Night-rauen, quoth Baucamont) care for thine owne soule, I scozne thy prophesies, yet tell me from whom, or from what part are those people arriued. Instantly (said he) you shall see them ascending from yonder valley, sie, sie, for

death

24  
The first part of

death is in their foreheads. Traitor said Baucamont, turn thee and bring me to them. Not for the wealth of the world answer he againe, for by Iupiter I had rather mountaines should fall vpon me, then the wrath of those enraged people should by aduenture find me: and in this saying, he strooke his horse and flew ouer the field, feare giuing him wings and slight bearing him beyond the compasse of eyes prospect. So sone was he gone, but Baucamont perceined the approach of Meruine. Then mustred he his people together, saying, neuer till now houered the crowne of Glozie ouer vs, win it, and weare it: for see, he that commands it, comes vnto vs to present it, and with that he smote Marcheual, and charged Meruine. Meruine on thother side gaue Mordant the reine to encounter with Baucamont: their carier was like the meeting of two tempests from two seuerall corners of the earth: but Meruine hit Baucamont such a blow, that he fel from his courser to the ground, neither had he euer raised his head from the earths pillow, had not a band of 4000 come in to his rescue. Betwixt him and them, a singular to an infinit plurall began a fierce, doubtful and vndying combat. Iacob this while the good merchant valiantly behaued himselfe, so also did Croisant and Barbin, whose swordes bare lieries of their Lords wages: yet when I thinke on Meruine and Drohes, the deeds of the others were but as margent notes to their huge volumes: there might one see confusion in her royaltie, heads without hands, hands without bodies, legs without feet, thighs like fat mowing: there you might see stones broken with bodies burden, yea burdened bodies by stones broken: all things horrible, yet nothing but honorable: there lay pagan slain on pagan, misbeliefe on vnbelieving, while Drohes smiled to see selfe religion, selfe discipline and law confound one another, and beganne to pride himselfe, that that day his deeds should be eternized. But at this time what Meruine did is impossible to describe, because they

25  
the historie of Meruine.

they ascended higher than mortall capacity. He encountered Africant, and slue him, so did he thadmirall, whom horse and man he bare down to the ground. What shal I say moze of force was no force, when his force gainestod it, as Hares from hounds, Lambs from lions, Fatones from tygers, so flew the pagans before him. What he did, what his power sought to do, was all this while beheld both by Berea and her mother, who stood next her, and from the tickling spirit of her heart, said to her daughter: Faire soule, saist thou not wonder pagan, whose armes are like sunne shine, and his deeds better then the sunnes beauty: in his helm he wears two gloues, a swimming swan in a boluer of roses: on my soule he is not mortall, for his deeds are celestiaall. his prowess is heraicall, and his cartage like the god of warrefare. Berea hearing her mothers speeches, it seemed the roses in Meruines headpiece were fled thence to her cheeks; for she prettily blushed, and thought of her loue Meruine, and as she looked downe toward him, her thoughts, the truest heralds of a louing conceit, told her it was he alone that so gallantly behaued himselfe to the wonder of all men. Whose with that imagination loue gaue new fire to his old flame, and surprised her with delicate thinkings: then grew she dumbe with admiring, sighing because she was dumbe, blushing to heare her selfe sigh, & then grew pale, lest her dumbrnes, sighing and blushing, should of other than her own eyes be perceined. After this war of maiden looks had taken a little truce with her intentions, thus to her heart her heart whispered. Thou God of my forefathers, how excellent hast thou made my loue! death being most fierce, fearing, is become his vassaille, attend him death, but touch him not. As she was imagining moze, her mother turned about, and perceiving her distraught in countenance, challenging the distemperature of looks, asked what she ailed, and desired nothing to be hidden from her. Madame (said she) I felt a torment

## The first part of

ment of such vehemencie take hold on me, as no creature can imagine. Mahomet defend my father, for I feare some end. Thus dissembled she with her mother, Meruine being the loadstarre by which all her lodgings were guided. All this while fell destruction from the sword of Meruine vpon the pagans who like larkes vnder the wings of a hobby, sought holes in the earth to hide them. Drohes pursued his foete, steppes, and the nearest of any imitated his vertues. Now was Baucamont remounted once more, and passing thorow his ranks, gaue them new incoragement, reuiling the new come strangers, and disabling their actions, though his wounds bare bleeding witnes of their wounds.

5 When he had done, he charged afresh tpon Mermont, and that with such impregnable violence, as he ouerthrew him horse and man to the ground, but with nimble agilitie, he soon recovered his fete, and drawing his sword, brandished it for his defence. All that shew of magnanimity had but little auailed to his profit, if Meruine had not againe by chance come to his rescue, who cried aloud, Mermont my king, deferre thy fortune but a moment, and ile yield succor to thy life: and then rushing amongst the thickest, he strake Gyrion on the head, cleauing him to the wasse. After him, the next, and the next, sparing none that was within his encounter. When Baucamont sawe death and destiny lie in Meruins sword, like a man made desperat, bicause his estate was desperate, he toynded himselfe to Meruine, striking so violent a blowe, as he cleaued insunder the crest of his helmet, but to his head did no harme but amazement. Meruine displeased at his entertainment, drew Entrant his sword, and without o'her salutation stroke at Baucamont with all his puissance. The pagan king fearing the blow, retired a little: yet had hee neuer breathed anie more malice, if the sword had not turned in the hand of Meruine, which like a thun-

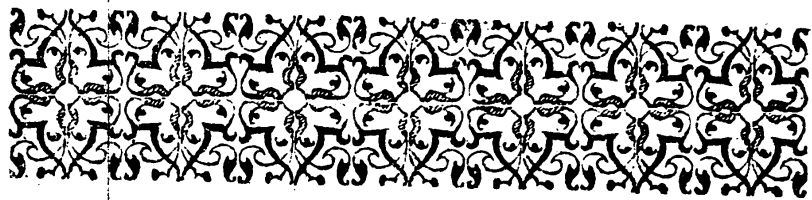
## the historie of Meruine.

thunderbolt fell on the arme of Baucamont, and that in such heauy maner, that the arme, shoulder, & all, were cut asunder. When Meruine saw him thus spoiled of his defender, in iesting maner he sayd, king Baucamont, it is time now to the world excuse you from these martiall occurrents, sith theittest for you is a monasticall function: say henceforth for the loue of Mahomet you will abiure your folly, hauing paid to this good king your right arme for a ransome. Thus hauing sayd, he returned to Mermont, & remounted him the second time, but Mermont in whom was ingrafted a strong beliese, that Mernine was Mahomet, with prostrate humblenesse sayd vnto him, great and almighty God of most excellent authoritie, this day hath thy goodnesse newly created me, and made my life more happy then the liues of my forefathers, henceforth be gracious to my proceedings great lord of our religion, and I wil make thy name be rung through all nations, thy temple I wil multiply, & all thine ornaments shall be of purest silver. Meruine seeing the blindness of his amazement, raised him from his prostracie, saying, no, but you are deceiued, you are deceiued, I honor him & you: and with that he rushd agayne into the battel. Thus while Drohes and the other behaued themselues valiantly, effecting such feates of knightly chivalrie, that force perforce, they drave to retraite the hoste of Baucamont, many flying, none abiding till the mightie king Esclamart caused all his troupes which came for the succour of Baucamont, being 10000 Sarazens, all fresh and vnsoiled, hauing as yet not striken one blowe, to turne vpon their enemies like a storme begotten by a storme in the moneth of Aprill. When Mermont perceiued them, and considering his people and horses were wearie, vnable to withstand them being fresh, caused a retraite to be sounded, and in honorable sort retired into the citie: but when he came to enter, Esclamart and his men, being swift and nimble, had gained the port, had not Meruine & Drohes withstood them, who



98  
The first part of

who marched behind, and Meruine in that last encounter slew the nephew of Esclamart, with many other pagans, and they so well defended themselves, that king Mermont and his host entered into the citie, & Meruine and Drohes after them, to the confusion and dishonour of Esclamart, who returned sorrowfull for his nephewes slaughter, whom hee caused to be brought with great solemnitie into his tent, bowing to Mahomet his god, reuenge for his misfortune.



CHAP. XV.

1. Of the honours *Mermont* did to *Meruine*. 2 *Meruine* made chamberlaine of the Court. 3 *Gratiana* for his sake made lady of the chamber of *Berea* with other accidents.



King *Mermont* and all his knights, being entred into *Montment*, were most royally received both of the quene his wife, and the most beautifull lady *Berea* his daughter, to whom he said, thou golden planet of mine age, my dearest daughter, I beseech thee honour with all the excellencies thou canst imagine, this admirable creature who sits armed and mounted on this mightie mare, I once imagined him to be our great god Mahomet, so godlike was he in mine vnderstanding, and so impossible it was for the force of man to enterprise what he hath effected. When *Iacob* came and heard the kings speeches, pleasantly he replied: O ye gracious soueraigne,

99  
the historie of Meruine.

soueraigne, it is a common saying, that a fowles bolt sometimes as wel hits the marke, as the wise mans arrowe. True said the king, but I pray thee, to what ende dost thou cite this adage: to this my liege lord (answered he) I who am basely vntoorthy to counsell kings, yet anciently experienced in warres doubtfullnesse, went in your maiesties name to *Brandis*, and thence brought this *Meruine*, the sonne of *Barbin*, who this day by his most celestiall prowesse hath twice preserved you from death, and the dangerous hand of your enemies. Now if the actor be worthy his honour, is not the agent for the acte worthy to be rewarded: els let my fortune refuse me, said the king. *Iacob* I will heape wealth vpon thy wealth and on *Meruine* I will double a thousand honours of knight hood: for by *Mahomet* I imagined him to haue bene *Mahomet*, so farre excelled he all creatures, yea euen *Brahier*, and Iustament his valiant brother, who were slaine by that renowned *Oger*, the scourge of our religion. O *Meruine*, if *Mahomet* continue gracious to thy proceedings, our law shall be by thee exalted as much aboue christianitie, as the first mouner is resident aboue the earths center. Alas alas, this prophesie was too true, for with the eyes of infants shall be watered with teares, as hereafter shall be declared. Now *Mermont* looking vpon *Drohes*, asked *Iacob* what he was, and *Iacob* in every point described him both their meeting, conflict, and conquest, and how he was a christian, whose name was *Drohes*, adding withall, that if any miracle could make him renounce his religion, that then the law of paganism by him more then by any christian, but *Oger*, would be raised & admired, but this wisdom is so great that no will can remoue him. When *Mermont* asked *Iacob* from whence & by what meane *Meruine* had gotten that band of men which he had brought to the battel. When *Iacob* shewed the king *Croissant*, who then was busie in talke with *Meruine*, & from point to point declared his fortunes, both how

Basina



## The first part of

na was accused, Meruin engaged, Brohars flaine, and Croisant restozed from his unbelœuing: the king hearing all this, his heart danced for ioy, and he solemnly vowed to raise Meruine higher in authoritie, then the conceite of man could aspire vnto. Whereupon, calling the gallant yong knight before him, who came with all the reuerence belonging to so great a maiestie, the king with a dumb, but speaking countenance amazedly, as if in a manner skared at his beauty, and with his long looking and intimate searching in euery lineament of his proportion, he suddenly apprehended in his memory the diuine features of Oger. Wherefore he sayd, beleeue me Meruine, by that Alcheron in which I trust, thou resemblest both in body, figure, and beautie, the famoussest of all christians, renowned Oger the duke of Denmarke, whose fortunes if thou counteruaile, the penne of all men shall write thee most happy. By this time the day had exchanged the colour of his garment, and put on the nightes vesture, wherefore at the tables being royally apparelled, and supper set on the boarde, water was brought for the king, he sate downe to eate: but because all his studie was to doe honoz to Meruine, he commanded him to sit downe before him, after him Drohes, swearing by the faith of a christian, that he would neuer part or obscure himselfe, vnlesse it were by the commandement and consent of Meruine, and for that bolwes sake, he was neither restrained nor imprisoned, but suffered to goe and dispose himselfe round about the towne at his own pleasure: the royalty and solemnity of that nightes seruice, I will leaue to speake of, because tediousnesse inuenometh a willing hearer. Supper being ended, and euery ceremonie perfozmed to a kingly magnificence, the king called Barbin, and spake to him: Barbin, I bind thee by thy fealtie, neither deceiue me in thine answer, nor restraine from the knowledge of that I intend to demand of thee: who, and on whom diddest thou beget this wonder, this Meruine.

## the historie of Meruine.

uine, trust me he resembleth thee in nothing, neither by his deeds the fruits of a merchant-like generation: My deare soueraigne (answerd Barbin) I begot him of a noble & renowned Sarazen lady, as great in dignity, as the house of Ottoman, who though her paine in childe-birth, piteously died. After whose decease I tooke the infant & a most belcat lady (the sister of my dead lone) who swore to him in his last panggs neuer to depart from him til terme of yeres had brought him to manhood, & transported them with me into these parts: if now you malessie misdoubt my protestation, I haue the lady at my house, who is both an eye, and an eare-witnes. Let the lady be commanded before vs said the king, which immediately was done. To her likewise the king propounded these articles, with many other egressions as he had done to Barbin, and she in euery point answered without differing, inasmuch that the king belœued them, so artificall was their cunning.

2 The king demanding her name, she told him it was Gratiانا: then said the king, faire damosel descended of a diuine issue, for lone of Meruin thy nephew, whom all lone that haue any plendoy in them, how sacred a thing lone, is my pleasure is, that henceforth thou be lady of the chamber of Berca mine only daughter: by thee be she disposed by thee be her vertues increased, loue her and line with her, for thou canst teach her both excellencie & honour: this was the faire lady Gratiانا boyne vp to the cloudes in honour for the loue of Meruine, whom falsely she had stolne, as was before mentioned.

3 When this was done, the king called Meruine and asked him if he found no deceiuing in his memory from that his Maie of vertue, which hitherto he scaled, but that he would perseuer in his beginning, and bear the glozy of Mahomet, as far as the sunnie was bozn in his chariot. My earthly god (sayd he) and the next in my lone to Mahomet, my whole de-

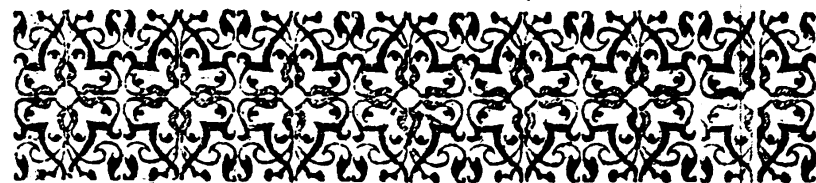
## The first part of

fire is to make famous my religion, and the aime of my content to proue my force greater than any christians : this I loue, in this I liue and thus shall my life consummate. The king hearing this, was very ioyfull : wherefoze embracing him in his armes, he said, Dearer than my kingdome, Meruine my champion, hencefozth for thy prouesse, valure, and magnanimity, and for thou didst twice restore me fro death to my former being, I create thee the principal chamberlaine of my court, be thy rule like thy selfe, righteous, and let all obey thee. The thanks which Meruine gaue the king for these honours, were such as made glorious the giuer, yet the receiuer seemed only glorified. Thus in great pomp Meruine continued in the kings house, beloued and feared of all men, except of the traitor Marant, nephew to the king, being his sisters son, and espoused to Butor that generall of the north, where Meruine was imprisoned five yeares, as hereafter you shall heare. This Marrant could by no possible meanes loue Meruine, so hugely had enuy taken possession on his soule, to behold the honour the king his vnckle had done him, wherefoze he watched to do him villany, for villanie is euer waking. It hapned one day, Meruine rising early in the morning euen with the sunne, there came to him a certain spie, who gaue him intelligence that king Baucamont, with 800 of his appoynted warriors was intended to hunt the stagge in the great forrest, bordering vpon the citie. As soone as Meruine heard it, he called Drohes, the traitor Marrant, and 500 expert souldiers, and with them priuily issued out of the city, taking an vsuall path, through which he passed so long, till at length he perceiued where Baucamont with his hoste returned from the chase, his arme as then healed, and he mounted on his steed. Meruine ambushed himselfe and his men within a little grove, whence he intended to charge Baucamont, holding both his lance redy in his fist, and hauing vnder him his mare Mordant : anone when

Bauca-

## the historie of Meruine.

Baucamont was approached so neare, that he was hopelesse of retiring, Meruine caused his men to march against him, saying, fellows in armes, think not of fortune, but victorie, for in my selfe there is no other imagination.



### CHAP. XVI.

- 1 How *Baucamont* and 800 souldiers were discomfited, and himselfe taken prisoner. 2 With him the King *Antifer* & 24. pagans, all by *Meruine*. 3 How he deliuered them to the traitor *Marant*, to present to king *Mermont* his vnckle, in *Meruins* name the conqueror.



When Baucamont beheld Meruine, whom he knew by his helmet, because in many battels, which I leaue to speake of, he had taken notice of the same, he turning to his traine vsed these speeches : You followers of me and my fortunes, reuiue your selues, and in the name of Mahomet, be now or neuer courageous, battel surely we shalbe offered, be fortune as auspicious as please her, for behold an enemy whom my soule hateth, euen he whose single sword did me more hurt then Mermont or his huge hoste could haue effected by a godlike incouragement, yet is he no other then the base son of a ware-exchanging merchant, whom some diuell hath nursed for a damned execution. At this word he took a battell

104

## The first part of

tell are in his hand, charging Marcheual with his spurs, charged courageously, Meruin on the other side, as nimble as lightning, ran to intertain him, their running, meeting, & conjunction, being louder than thunder, & stronger than a northern tempest, & when in midst of the assembly, they had discharged upon either other, the wonders of chivalrie, Meruine having broken his lance, drew Entrant his sword, and therewith assailed Baucamont with such furie, that he thrust him from Marcheual his gallant beast to the ground, & that with such incomparable prowess, that he lay a long time on the ground in a deadly passion. Meruin descending, unlaced his helmet, and was even ready to divide the long conjunction betwixt his head and body, when Baucamont awaking from his trance and beholding himself utterly exiled from the hope of longer living, with erected hands cried unto him: thou flower of chivalrie, and the best mate to fortune, be as honourable as thou art valiant, & take me to thy presence: then turning his sword in his hand, he delivered the hilts to Meruin, who perceiving it, delivered him unto the traitour Marrant saying, Prince Marrant, take king Baucamont to your charge, and guard him safely, because I know the king your unkle will esteeme this fortune much better then the gift of an empire. Marrant accepted him joyfully. This while Drohes and the rest were in the midst of their enemies, where the deeds they did were worthy of immortal memorie. Now after Meruine had left his royall prisoner in safe keeping, he flung himselfe into the heart of the battell, like a hunger-starved wolfe amongst a flocke of sheepe, the first he met, he strooke dead to the ground: so did he the second, the third, the fourth, and the fifth: why should I bee tedious in description; for to their deaths he sent with one breathing. Drohes seeing him doe these excellent feates of knight hood, grew amazed of him, & praised him in his heart next his creator: but God of heauen (said hee) how wonderfull beyond conceit are these actions!

105

## the hist orie of Meruine.

if his thread of life lengthen like his courage, and some pittie-  
ing powder of heauen alter not his unhappy misbelieving, al-  
tho' the house of Dauid be forsaken: thus from the anguish of his soule spake the most righteous  
Drohes, whose valure and feates of armes were bounden in  
no limite, augmenting hourly: the rather to beholde the ex-  
amples of Meruine laide before him.

2. All this while was the sonne of religious Oger surro-  
ing through the middest of the army, & had euen now over-  
thrust a king Antifer to the ground, whose head had payed  
his ransom: if fearefull humblenesse had not made him sub-  
mit to merrie: him likewise hee gave to the keeping of Ma-  
rant. Now had Drohes encountred a giant-like pagan, with  
whom he maintained a dreadfull battell, but in the end hee  
smote him a blowe with such vigour, that he claue his head  
to his teeth. Which another pagan beholding, ranne at Dro-  
hes, and with his launce strake his horse through the heart,  
that he fell downe dead at the instant. But with great agili-  
tie Drohes recovered himselfe, and flourishing his sword,  
vowed vengeance for his iniurie. But Meruine seeing the  
pagan by such dishonour had slaine the horse of Drohes, pre-  
vented his intent, and with one blowe stricke the pagans  
head from his shoulders. As this was in doing, the gallant  
horse Marcheual came galloping masterlesse by them, run-  
ning here and there, having his reins at his owne randon,  
When Meruine sawe him, hee thrust his spurs against  
Marrant, and flew after him, and that with such violent  
swiftnesse, that in short time he took him, and delivered him  
to Drohes, who being mounted thereon, swore by him that  
with blood washed the world from her transgressions, that if  
ever Meruines fortunes should be in neede of his employment,  
his life should be waisted in his service. When againe Dro-  
hes thrust himselfe into the middest of his enemies, of whom  
he

## The first part of

he made infinite destruction, that both pen and wit are too blunt to describe them, and yet were they to be ioyned with Meruine in no degree of comparison, no more then the night to the daies glorie, for he neuer lift his sword aloft but he kild either horse or man, or both horse and man together. Let mee not dull your eares with a heauie tale: such excellent feates of armes were performed by Meruine, that of 800. which went with their king on hunting, there were left alive but twentie & fouer, which with Baucamont and Antifer werelike wise taken prisoners: great was the bootie and riches which there was taken, but Meruine refusing to touch it, caused it to be equally diuided among his souldiers. Then commaunding a retraite, and summoning his band together they marched in souldierlike manner to Montment. But amongst the rest a Pagan, whose name was Hebie, thrust spurs to his horse, and passed from the troupe with such swiftness, that he ranne to Montment before the rest a long season: as soon as he was lighted he ascended the pallace, and kneeling before the king he said, My dread soueraigne, more ought you to adore our God Mahomet & greater incense to throw upon his Altars, then any Donarke whatsoeuer: for Meruine this day by his neuer sayling prowess, bringeth bound in triumph Baucamont, Antifer, and twentie foure of the most couragious Pagans, taken all prisoners by his only sword: when the Paragon of all ages (diuine Berea) heard this, if her ioy exceeded her beautie, and yet than her beautie was nothing more amiable, (let no man wonder nor demand the reason, for she is beyond y<sup>e</sup> bond of a larger limit.

3 Now whilest the king and his nobles were increasing their conceites of pleasure with imagination of these adventures, the Prince Marant, with Baucamont, Antifer & the 24. Pagans entered into the hall, & kneeling before the king with a stiffe knee, faintly, as unwilling his tongue should be guiltie

## the historie of Meruine.

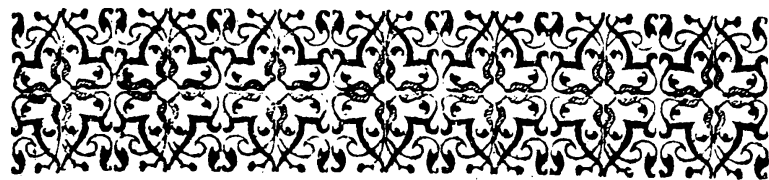
guiltie of any vertue, he vttered these speeches, Faire knicle and my liege Lord highly may you (if you please) honor Meruine your great chamberlaine, whose renowned prowess & true valure hath taken these mighteous prisoners, in whose name, and with all humble reuerence, I present them to your Maestie, assuring you the debtes he hath this day done, are more then the wisest hath power to describe, or the strongest force to counteruaile. When whispering his malice to his owne soule, he said: Meruine, these praises which in giuing I haue giuen mine owne desires the lie, I wil shortly heape vpon thee with an eternall vengeance. Now heauen that sa- ueth all things saue the renowned Meruine, against whom the thunderbolts of priuate enuie threaten destruction: when Mermont beheld Baucamont, Antifer and the other prisoners, his ioyes exceeded in greatnesse his kingdome, and he repeated the wrongs their unlawfull armies had begotten in his countries, threatening a requital for these indignities. But Baucamont regardless of all mistrusting fortunes, without any amazement in his countenance, made a petition to Mermont, that all the twentie foure prisoners might be deliuered, onely himselfe and Antifer detained for the satisfaction: which if it would please him to purchase them, would restore him recompence for all the indamagements, they or their warre had procured, and that their mightie armie as yet not wholly banquished, should returne to Damas. Upon these Articles the king concluded, so the 24. were enfranchised and with them also the two imprisoned Ambassadors of Baucamont, to wit Morgant, & Nygron, who as then had bene prisoners the space of a whole yere, during which time the war had continued. Now when they were returned backe to their tents, they found the king Esclamart mightily perplexed with sorowe for the taking of Baucamont, and Antifer his brother: yet notwithstanding they tolde him the conditions of compromise agreed vpon betweene the

## The first part of

kings of each party, upon which report hee made proclamation for the raising of his tentes, and leauing the sieg in perfit manner, departed without further trouble to Mer-  
mont of his country: and betaking himselfe to the seas, sail-  
led so prosperously, that in short time they arriued at Damas-  
cus, where they repozted to the state their vnhappy occurrents  
which had befallen them. Thus will we leaue them to the  
sorowes of forsaken subiects, and returne vnto king Mer-  
mont, whose ioy was the greatest of all ioy, to see himselfe  
hold in his subiection Baucamont and Antifer, two of the  
greatest kings of all Asia, whom he had sworn upon Al-  
cheron & a kings maiestie, that they should not pretend any  
flight or escape without his royall will and licence. All this  
while was Meruin in the court no lesse honozed, exalted, and  
admired of the king, the queene, and the nobles, than of the  
basest vassall liuing by the graces of his fauour. The reason,  
because as he was valiant, maiestieall, and inuincible: so was  
he sweete, courteous, affable and pleasant in the eyes of all  
creatures. Yet Marant, in whose heart enuy had built her a  
blacke sepulchze, increast his malice, and hated him the more,  
because no man else hated him. Thus being great with child  
of damnable imaginations, he grew thoughtfull and sicke,  
how hee should be deliuered: anone hee bethought himselfe  
there was no so ready meane to heape ruine on the rich daies  
of Meruines prosperitie, as to come to the true vnderstan-  
ding of the loue betweene him and Berea, wherefore to  
that marke hee aymed all his thoughts, but yet  
his leauell carried him farre away, and  
his labour in that point was vt-  
terly frustrate, as you shall  
heare in the next  
Chapter

## CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



## CHAP. XVII.

Of the priuate discourse betweene *Marant* and *Berea*,  
and of her answere. 2. How she came to the vnder-  
standing of *Marants* enuie to *Meruine*. 3. The treason  
he intended, which he had procured *Calix* his Cousin  
to execute.



It happened on a day that *Marant* espied the  
princesse *Berea*, set all alone in her chamber  
without other comfort then her owne cogita-  
tions, wherefore drawing nere vnto her, and  
saluting her with an humble dissembled reue-  
rence he said: my most excellent cousin, and the ornament of  
your sex, excuse me to speake boldly what loue and nature  
carefully stirs in me; I find no profit, in more liberall sorte  
about to this nation then the happy cunion of you in a  
lawfull marriage, which if the king mine vnckle neglect, he  
robbereth both his yeres and this kingdom of their greatest  
felicite. And in mine opinion (if the loue of vertue leade me  
not into a blindfold path of forgetfulness) there is not any  
whose excellencies better meriteth, whose wisdom can  
reach to higher desert of gouernment, nor whose valure af-  
ter the decease of my most gracions vnckle, can be better  
defend this Realme from disquiet, than incomparable *Mer-  
uine*, the glorie of mankind, and the loadstarre to all ho-  
nourable actions: now tell mee my dearest diuine cousin, can  
you not loue his person, whose inward goodnesse lies be-



## The first part of

pond common admiration. Berea whose naturall wisdom had taught her a politike dissembling, answered: Cousine, wert thou not iniest, I should be angrie in earnest, or if thou hast in earnest I must needs iest at thy extreame folly: fie, that thy tongue is so wise to deliver words without thoughts: counsell of better aduise ment: Belieue me, thine error is inexcusable, and thy punishment worthy no ending: alas, imaginest thou me, because a woman, therefore a foole, or that I am so infinitely poore of vnderstanding as to build the hope of my life, I meane mine affection vpon Meruine, which is but the bastard son of a filie Marchant? Belieue me, belieue me, rather would I be tozned in peeces: neither is my loue augmented to you for this perswasion, but rather abated for propherying my dishonour. Thus with an angrie countenance spake she to the traitour, who many daies before had watcht to behold their proceeding. But so wise were they in the course of their affections, that not any creature, moze then Iacob, and Gratiana: no, scarce Cupid himselfe knew of their selfe likings, yet all their loue was honourable, chaste, and holy, without touch of an vnlawful imagination, onely kisses the harts heralds, and embracing, the knots of sacred affections, with which they consumed two yeres in vnspokeable contentment. When Marant beheld with what affiaunce she had deliuerd him her answer, he imagined she spake from her heart, as in dede she did, for such thoughts neuer lodged in that habitation: wherefore he replied. By Mahomet (swarte Princeesse) thou hast answered excellently to my motion, and in nothing act moze wise, than in not leauing Meruine. Alas, what is he but a boy, whose descent not any knoweth, saue that one saith he is the bastard of Barbin the poore marchant: as for his honour, I thinke all the deuilles in hell haue conspired to make him famous: but if I liue, I will bring to an end all his glozie. Berea hearing this, was stricken dumbe, and had not power to answer a word.

When

## the historie of Meruine.

2 When the Traitor taking his leaue, departed: but she into whose breast Sorow was shorne to make sweete his lamentation, stayed, and with beteaured eyes cried out in this manner: Alas, alas (said she) now may I well say that Meruine my loue, he that in all lones alonely is gracious, he in whom my lone liueth, liueth to liue vnhappy: ay me! now goe my ioyes on their last date: and Meruine must die by vndying treason. Forsaken that I am, what shall I doe? I know not. Help me memorie: O thou wilt helpe me, but to recozd whois horroze? If I discouer what I conceiue, I am guiltie of my kinsmans tragedie, for that nothing but his life can make Meruine satisfaction. If I hide what I haue heard, Meruine my Lord shall be my Lord no longer: woe alas! misery in my minde hath made a perpetuall dwelling. If Marant die, Berea is dishonoured: if Meruine die, Berea is forsaken. Liue Marant, so Meruine liue, and die Berea to saue them both from misfortune. Thus argued the virgin, whose heart by this occasion was helde with a thousand sorowes: and in the middell of the agonies, Meruine entred into the chamber, who beholding her in that conflict of passion, grew wonderously amazed, and demaunded both a reason for her sighes and the cause of that infinite torment, boluing by all the yeals of his vnspotted loue, that if any creature, of what estate soeuer, had epyther in dede or word giuen occasion to those teares, that he would die or wonderfully reuenge it.

When Berea heard him, she was at her wits ends, what aunswere to reply vnto him: yet on the sodaine she apprehended this fiction, and thus excused them: My most deere loue (said she) mistake not my woe, which is no other but an entire desire to enioy thy company, which I am afraid will too soone vanish from my happinesse. With one told me, not long since, thou wert determined to depart



from my fathers Court to seek adventures in strange countries: this is the reason of my teares and cause of my mourning, no other thing at all afflicteth me, then and thy losse is my whole lamentation. Deare Lady mistresse of my life (answered hee) falsely they lie that haue so falsely blazed my thoughts into thy bosome, by Mahomet in whom I affie, my loue shall neuer be dislodgd from the sacred tents of thy Celestiall eyes, till an eternall night ouershadow the Element, and then embracing her in his armes, with a world of innumerable kisses, he sealed the deedes of his perpetuall possession. My deare loue, said Berea, I beseech thee (not for knowledge, but for suspicion sake) that thou haue alwaies a regardfull respect to the deedes of my cosin, prince Marant, for he is false and full of insupportable pride, & withall, the sonne of a mightie king, euen Butor of Minor, that is so strong & impregnable. Madam (replied he) all that is nothing in my estimation: and by this right hand of yours, in whose Spheare my hart is contained, & Alcheron so worthy as shall neuer be prophaned, if your cosin Marant doe me the least touch of honour may be imagined, his life shall make good mine indignitie, neither will I desist for his parentage, with the mightines of the man makes the art of dishonour almightie, when receiued. Thus spake valiant Meruine, but Marant stil notwithstanding continued, both in thanking & contriuing how to bring a dayes day on his praises so manfully atchieued.

3 It hapned on a day that king Mermont for his recreation intended to ride a hunting, & took Baucamont & Antifer with him: which when the traitor Marant vnderstood, he was exceeding glad, and instantly assembled a band of traytours together, to the number of 500. all nobly bozne and of his owne linage, to whom he made this short preamble: Lords & Princes, you are royally descended from the same stemme of which my selfe am issued: in you then either both or should re-  
maine

maine a lineall thread of amitie to support mine honour, and reuenge me of my protested enemies. Cosin answered one, whose name was Calix, tis true, therefore without ceremony, where loue and nature bindeth allegiance, display thy griefes, and be it right or wrong, we are the executioners of thy vengeance. Calix (quoth Marrant) thy loue is flown into my bosome, and there shall find an immortall residence: the thing whereof I complaine, is of that hono- deucuring Meruine, whose pride if it take roote, and his life flourish, the king will giue account to no man, but him, for happines: but if my wit faile me not, that as yet neuer quailed in like stratagems, this day will I bring his praises to a full point, and intombe his body in a graue of destruction. And thus it is, the king my vnkle intends this day to hunt in the forest, it is needfull then that you lie in an ambush in some priuate bordering groue, untill such time as you shall see Meruine passe along by you: for which purpose there shall be an espial to giue notice of his passage: then when you haue him within your power, he being naked, & you armed, shalt dismount him from his loftie mare, and with cordes bind him to the body of some oake, growing in some desert & solitary place, to whose abiding traceth the footstepps of no humane creature, and so leauing him without more torment, because by that meanes, if you shall be examined upon any point of his misfortune, you may iustly swear you were no agents of his death or funerall. And I doubt not but in a moments space, the wild beasts of the forest, which so abound in this region, will soon be the actors of this wished tragedie. This is the reuenge I haue inuented, and the meane I would pursue for his affliction. Cosin, said Calix) you haue spoken excellently, and by my life all shall be performed, as you haue deuised. Upon this traitors conclusion, they shakt hands and departed, he to the king, and the band of 500 to the woods, where they ambusht themselves in a couert, through whose thickness

114  
The first part of

thicknes, as yet the sunne had neuer pieped. Now earely in the morning before Meruin went tattend the king on hunting, he went to the chamber of lady Berea, who that night dreant a fearefull and strange dreame, which had not onely put her senses in amazement, but drownded her heart in a deluge of extreame sorrow; yet when she beheld Meruine like a flame, she threw her selfe about his necke, heaping upon infinit kisses infinit redoublings. said: Ah Meruine my loue my deare loue Meruine, for thee my soule breaks, and for thee my heart dieth. This night I dreamed a vismall dreame the solution whereof belongeth, I feare to thy fortunes. He thought I had a most delicate and princely greyhound, so swift, so nimble, so deliuer, that it was impossible for nature to conceiue how to forme such an other. This greyhound methought, went into a chamber, where were many serpents, who with inuicomed malice so inclosed and assailed him on euery side, that it was impossible for him any more to returne to my company: the griefe for his wat made teares burst from mine eyes, and those teares inuited sadder lamentations, that struing to make knowne my languor, I awakned with my sorrow: what this pretends, I know not, only I beseech thee for the hono<sup>r</sup> of Mahomet, that aboue all men thou beware of mine vnkind cousin Marant, for he is traiterous, and treachery hateth alwaies the vertuous. As it possible god Meruine, that in Marants faire countenance should lodge such distemperate malice: Ha my one onely excellent loue (said she) trust him not, lookes are liers, and his cheeks are a table of falshood. Madame replied he, I trust none but my sword, and that in extreames shalbe mine onely redemer: what shall be shalbe, onely deare lady, I beseech you commaund some carefull attendance to be giuen to my neuer-failing friend Drohes, who is fallen exceedingly sicke of a feuer, for his like in constancie and manhood, is not to be found among liuing creatures. To this she gaue

115  
the historie of Meruine.

gaue him assurance with many protestations, and so after diuers kisses and imbraces, they departed either fro<sup>r</sup> other. But when Berea was alone, her sorowes gaue a new onset on her soule, and put all her hopes to slaughter, and that not without good cause: for before her eyes againe shall giue salutation to his forehead, his life and hono<sup>r</sup> shalbe both in danger, if God himselfe, and the virgin mother of the greatest moner, with a gracious eye pity not his huge misfortune. Mermont with Baucamont, Antifer, Meruin, Marant and other noble gallants, departed from Montment, and came to the forest, where they had kingly pastime, and killed many wild beasts, continuing their sports iij. dayes without thought of returning: all which space, an espiall of Marrants attended fast, by foot vpon Meruine. The fourth day approaching, Mermont prepared to go home againe to the city, which he did, but Meruin staid behind: the reason was, he had that morning found out a daintie spotted yong goate, whose colour and beauty so well pleased him, that he swore he would haue it to bestow on his lady Berea: but no sooner offered he to assaile it, but it fled, and with all speed pursued it, even till in the maine chase, he had utterly lost sight of it, which not a little grieved him, but when wisdom told him there was no auale in anger, he sought to return, but the greedines of his sport had expelled the knowledge of his way from his memorie, and as he knew not where. The spie whose eyes neuer forsake him. perceiuing his ignorance, thwarting through strange paths, placed himselfe in a way through which Meruin of force must passe. When Meruine saw the spie, he was more than well pleased and demaunded of him: which way king Mermont his lord rode: Sir said the spie, if it please you to follow me, I will conduct you: so the spie led the way, and Meruine folowed him, whose hart was thoughtles of any treason. After they had traueled long in a night concealing corner, Meruin said, friend,

## The first part of

friend, I feare me we are both out of our way. And fir, (replied he) feare not, I will bring you to the king my master presently. And as he was thus saying, they were arrived in the place where the traitors were ambushed: and as soone as Calix beheld him, he, and with him forty lancers charged Meruine behinde him, not speaking any word, and that with such violence, that ere he dreamed of disadvantage, they had thrown him to the ground from his mare forward: but like the flower of all knightly chivalrie in a trice he remounted himselfe upon his fate, and drawing Entrant his sword, flew upon the spie, and gave him such a blow that he cleave his head & chaps in two pieces, saying: Villaine, thou which hast led me to my death, in death shalt be my first companion. But scarce were his words ended, before he was assailed on euery side, with all five hundred: but he defended himselfe more like a god then a mortall man: and questionlesse, had he bene armed, as he was naked, twice so many as they, had not taken him prisoner, for before he removed his right foot, he had laine an hundred dead before him. But now faint heat ingendering within the torment of his incessant labour, distilled such a weakenesse through his all too extreme travelled members, that his handes began to wepe in sweatie drops, that they had power to wield his sword no longer, and his bodie faultered, as most willing to die, such it had least strength to relieue his master: when they perceiued this, all at once they cast themselues upon him, and like a tempest against a princely forsaken building, ouerturned him to the earth: then, as if too few, they all lay upon him, some taking from him his sword, some blinding his eyes, and some binding his handes behind him: this done, violently they dragged him to a forsaken pise, whose mansion was so horrible, that no liuing eye till then, had seene where he was planted. Against it they bound him, and so leauing him, returned to Pontment. When Meruine beheld his pitifull estate, he says,

## the historie of Meruine.

said: O diuine propheteesse of the world, faire Berea, excellently dost thou foretell my danger, and the hatred of kindred, but my deafe resolution would neuer, till too late, beloeue my misfortune. Thus said Meruine, and in thus saying, sighed out such heart-killing lamentations, that if the most barbarous vplandish peasant, had but heard his meanes, he would not onely haue melted, but haue bene partner of his afflictions. All night continued Meruine in this wofulnes, who in a moment had bin deuoured of sauage beasts, if some heavenly power had not inspired his galant mare Mordant with a man-like vnderstanding, who defended and preserved him from a thousand deadly dangers. Mermont who was returned to his court in Pontment, and vnderstanding Meruine was absent, grew exceedingly sozie: but the traitorous Marrant tolde him, he was ridden a little out of the way to visite a gentlewoman, who dwelt neare vnto the forest, and that no other occasion withheld him. Which report, although it satisfied the king at that present, yet notwithstanding, it was nothing sufficient to quiet Berea, who incessantly inquired for her Meruine, and that not without abundance of teares, and intollerable sorrow, which when her heart, too publike a tell-tale of her loue could with no more patience conceale, she went into the chamber there to publish the mountaine of her cares, which else would wound her body by her hearts breaking, and thus she beganne: Thou patron of our countrey, thou great God! Mahomet, contentedst thou alas, so soone to diuorce me from that most diuine creature, in the temple of whose sides, my heart and thoughts are inspired: O, speake, speake thou immortall prophet: and at that word she wrong her lillie fingers, and tare her haire, her haire more fine than the golden tress of Diana: and as she was in this lunaticke trance of complaining, the fairie Gratiana entred into her chamber, who seeing her perplexitie, grew more than her selfe amazed,

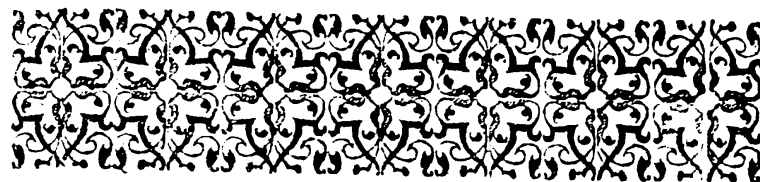
## The first part of

mazed, saying: Madame, what wonders wrought griefe in your countenance: trust me, they did him wrong that lodged him in so rare a receptacle of beauty. Ha, peace, peace, said Berea, my moanes are worthy no measure, and then she declared how Meruine her Lord and loue was not returned from the forest, and that not any could tell newes of his absence, and then she began afresh to wepe, as if these winter cloudes of sorrow had but then ouercast her faces element: but Graciana with not to be refelled arguments, lent such comfort to her comfortlesse imaginations, that she deferred, though took not away the worst of her extremity, and with a dissembling countenance of contentment. Berea went into the hall to supper, for the king her father was then set at the table, about the middest of supper, Calix and diuers others of his traiterous consorts, entred into the hall, whom as sone as Berea saw, she said in her selfe, this is the cosin of Marrant, and in his lokes are written tyzanny and treason. O my heart presageth that some notable villany by them is wrought agaynst my louing Lord this singular Meruine.



CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



## CHAP. XVIII.

1 How Berea hiding her selfe, came to vnderstand the treason. 2 Her reuealing it to Drobes. 3 Drobes challengeth Calix before the king, and pawneth his gage.



Bereas thoughts were the true augures of hir loues mischances, which so vehemently bered her, that she swore by Mahomet, her eyes should neuer close in rest, till she knew the truth of her presages: whereof priuately vnlesse of any, she went into a secret chamber, whither Marrant when he had any priuate occurrents to discourse of, usually repaired: and vnder a cupboard ouer the which hung a rich turke carpet, she closely conueied her selfe: but no soneer was she inclosed in that forgetfull cell, but Marrant and Calix entred, and Marrant leaping vpon the cupboard, there sate to vnderstand all the misfortunes of Meruine, which Calix described altogether, as fearefully as it was done ruthlesly, and how before he could be taken, an hundred were slaine. My deare cosin (said Marrant) well haue you performed my wish, no more shal that boyes great pride pester the courts of princes, and for your exploit assure your selfe it is more full of honours than midnight of stars. After this was said, Marrant and Calix went to their bedchambers, and the heart-consuming carefull Berea rose from her blacke lodging, deeply vowing that this damnable practise should be declared to the king hir father, and so she went vnto

## The first part of

unto her owne chamber, where the fayre Gratiana attended her: comming, and when the fayre beheld her, she said, Madame, your looks are gaskly and dispairefull, how fareth your Ladieship? or where haue you bin? At that demaund Berea with a sad countenance reported from point to point all the treason committed against her Meruine, and with such feeling protestations, that all her amazement flew to Grariana, and she looked with a greater terrour. At length gathering her senses together, she said, It behoueth vs madame to be wise how we manage this mischieuous action. By heauen, said Berea, I will tell it to the king my father. Not for a kingdom quoth Gratiana, for so may you draw your selfe in danger.

2 Rather let vs accuse false Calix, and lay the treason on his shoulders, but because we will not be vncircumspect, let vs go to the vertuous Drohes & take his counsell, to which they agreed, and so came into the chamber of Drohes, who had lien long sick of a burning feuer, whom when he beheld he knightly saluted, and demanded what occasion they had, that so late an houre brought them from their rest. Berea without circumstance, in plaine, but pittifull speeches, denounced vnto him both the reason and the treason: which when he heard, his manly heart was mad at the misadventure, for Meruine was as deare to him as his soules safety. Yet with a faine countenance he said: Lady, banish all feare: for to morrow I will not faile, but before the king I will call Calix to account for the treason, and even so God deliuer me from my extream malady, as I will without dissimulation shew the true loue I beare vnto the princely Meruine. Thanks god Drohes, said Berea, and so departed to his bed, but no rest could draw the motions of her sunny eyes, but all night she wept and lamented for the loss of hir only beloued Meruine. As soone as the morning had thrust his sozehead  
out

## the historie of Meruine.

ouer the mountains, Drohes in whom could slumber no forgetfulnesse, arose with a lion-like resolution, to combat against Calix, and make him confesse his treason: but alas he had lien by weeks sick of a fierie ague, & through want of food, was now weak and feeble: now God be his guide, for his attempt is dangerous. When Drohes was ready, he went into the great hall, where he found La Mermont, Iacob the Marchant, and Barbin: meane while when Drohes saw the king, he said: King of Montment, iustly maiest thou be accounted vnwise, and traiterous to thine owne maiestie. When thou sufferest the death of the most wise and valiantest creature of the world, who had done thee so great honour and profit, as to the like may nothing be compared, whose sword twice in one day hath ransomed thee from thine enemies, and whose promise hath deliuered captiue to thee, the kings of the greatest nations. Alas, how little right or lawe is lacke repaid him, when he is traiterously murdered? It is Meruine of whom I speake, he in whom valure is proude to haue an habitation, he that took Baucamont and Antifer, who yet are thy prisoners. When Mermont beheld with what a settled and displeased countenance of discontentment Drohes spake, he said: I pray thee desist thy speech, for there is neither king nor prince vnder the cope of heauen, who shall wrong the gentle Meruine, but he die or worke a mighty reuengement. He said Drohes, these speeches are of royall value, know then he is in your house that hath murdered Meruine in the forest where yester day you hunted: name him (said the king:) tis Calix said Drohes. At that word the king changed his colour, and calling before him a Sergeant at armes, commanding him to take a band of souldiers with him, and fetch Calix before him, which immediately was done, the rumour whereof astonished Marant, who went after to behold the occurrents.



## The first part of

3 No sooner approached Calix before the king, but Drohes said: Traitor, thou, euen thy false selfe, who hast murdered renowned Meruine in the woods, which if thou deniest, my sword shall make thee confesse with repentance, before this day be fully banisht: in signe whereof there is my gage, which I psworne to proue all my assertion truer than thy religion. When Calix heard him, he beganne to waxe pale, bowing his head to his breast, without speaking any word: which the king perceiuing he said: false traitor, why takest thou not the gage which he offereth: by the faith I beare vnto Mahomet, if thou be guilty, all the golde in the world shall not ransom thee from a shameful death. I refuse it not quod Calix, and then lifting aloft his head, took vp his gage. Marant seeing what had passed, aduising himselfe said to the king: Now your maiesty must assigne vs a day of combate, to the end we may assemble our friends and kindred together, to behold the combate, and my selfe will be pledge for the fealtie of Calix my kinsman. By Mahomet saith the king, I vnderstand not your intention, but as I am king of this region, I will not eate, till I see an end of this dissention. When forthwith was Calix commaunded to be armed, and Jacob carried Drohes to the chamber of Berea, who gaue him the most excellentest wines, and rarest conserues, that time or experience had found out, of all which he tasted with good appetite, making himselfe strong and lusty. Then was he armed in euery pte according to his owne liking, and when he was readily prepared, he mounted on his horse Marcheual, which sometimes was belonging to the famous duke Oger, then taking a lance in his hand, trotted in stately maner into the great court, ioyning on the castle of Turgon, which the king had then caused to be prepared for that deadly battell, a world of gallant cheualiers attended Drohes into the lists. And a short space after Marant brought Calix, whom he earnestly besought

## the historie of Meruine.

besought, that if he were discomfited, yet that he would not accuse him, and he would quickly procure his peace with the king. Calix agreed, giuing his faith thereunto, and entered the field where Drohes attended him, whose bodie, though sickenes had made weake, yet his courage as invincible, was most mighty, albeit he knew Calix to be renowned for faith of chivalrie. When both the combatants were in a readines, the king said, Champions stand forth, for I will that the occasion of this battell be published vnto euery one, say therfore Drohes of what thou accusest him. I say quod Drohes, and what I say, this sword and arme shal witnes to be true, that this traitor Calix here present, hath murdered Meruine in the forest, where your highnes yesterday hunted, as I will proue vpon his body before it be night. It is a false lie said Calix, I neuer had thought of so monstrous treason, in signe whereof, I defie thee, and craue no other redemer than this hand and the combat. This said, retiring themselves, the trumpets sounded, and they putting spurs to their horses, charged ech other. Calix valiantly assailed Drohes, breaking his lance into manie shivers, but Drohes answered him with so strong a counter-buffe, that he threw him to the ground backward: but in a moment he rose againe, and drawing his sword, saide to him, Traitor, if thou dismountest not thy selfe, I will kill thy horse: at that word Drohes alighted, & with his sword charged Calix so mightily, that had not his weapon turned, it had bin the first & last of the battell: yet for all this ill hap, it fell with so huge a power, as helwing away his pouldrons & laces, it pierced his flesh so far, as the traitor drunken. When said Drohes, villaine, ere thou and I depart, I will make thee dance before the k. a Morisco galliard. Calix, as much ashamed at the contempt, as grieved with the blow, rushed vpon Drohes, and stricke him with so manly a puissance, as the earth and flowers thereon trembled, and withall, the

124  
The first part of

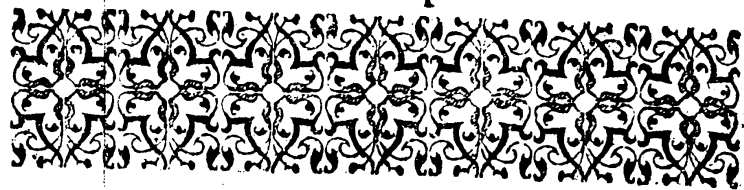
sword glauncing downe, cutte away one of Drohes spurs, and a litle of the flesh with it, insomuch, that he wanted litle of falling ouer and ouer : and let no man thinke it anie dishonour, considering his weaknes, and the long liuing paine of his sicknes. When Drohes lifting his heart to heauen, said; Sweet Iesus, thou diuine sauour of the world, look downe from heauen vpon me, and lend strength to my weake arme to banquish this miscreant, with all the end of my act is to exalt thy diuine Godhead. As he was thus speaking, Calix stricke him againe with such mercilesse vigour, as he turned about and staggered iij. times in amazement. Then said Calix (whose pride lifted him higher then his fortune:) by the allegiance I owe to our great prophet, if thou dost not immediately confesse befoze the king, that thou hast accused me falsely of this treason, ere the sunne descend from the heauens, I will diuorce thy head from thy shoulders. Alillaine (quod he) I esteem thee not a pin, then mounting his sword, he smote Calix on the helmet, that he fell to the ground: yet instantly he rose vp againe, but by the glauncing of the blade, was cut from his right thigh a piece of flesh enough to haue gorged a cast of falcons for a whole day. Calix made mad with this ill misfortune, grasping his sword in both his hands came right against Drohes, meaning with that blow to make an end of the combat: but Drohes turning himselfe sodainely, for the sword came as thunder or lightning, wisely slipt aside, & the sword bristled by any interception, drove into the ground more than a foot and a halfe, and that with such vnusuall violence, that by no power he had, could it be drawne backe againe. Drohes seeing this leapt befoze Calix, and stricke him in such manner, that he cut off the arme which then was contending with the sword for mastery: the anguish wherof made him fall to the earth. But Drohes striking, in his falling, cut one of his legges off also: the torment wherof

made

125  
the historie of Meruine.

made him cry that the whole assembly heard him. When the traitorous Marant saw Calix thus banquished, in a moment he mounted himselfe on horseback, and neuer gaue ouer siring, till he came into the strong city of Minoz that was governed by king Butor his father. Drohes now seeing there was no power left in Calix to defend himselfe any longer, said, Traitor, this mischief hath thy sinne heaped vpon thee, know then I wil kil thee in the sight of this assembly, if thou confessest not thy treason, and the murder of Meruine. Now by Mahomet said Calix, my thoughts are guiltlesse of his euill: at that word Drohes cut off his other arme. Then said Calix, ha excellent knight Drohes, be no more my tormenter, but call the king, and to him I will report all things touching Meruine. Then came the king, and with him many barons to heare his confession, to whom he told all their committed treason: the first plotting, the continuing, and executing: lastly, how, and in what manner they left him, & the place where his sword was hid. Then to the king he said, My liege, lay hands on your kinsman Marrant, for it was he alone wrought vs all this mischief, for which now my heart is inwardly sorry. When the king had heard all he could say, he caused him to be dragged by the strength of horses into the field, where he was hanged according vnto the custome of traitors in those countries. And thus will we leaue to speake of him, and returne to our former matter.





CHAP. XIX.

1 How king *Mermont* went to the forest to find *Meruine*. 2 The occasion & maner of his finding. 3 How he brought him to Montment, & other adventures.



After the death of the notable traitor *Calix*, *Drohes* was carried into the chamber of *Berea*, where he disarmed himselfe: then calling for the skilfullest of the kings surgeons, he had his wounds bound up & dressed, which with careful regard, were speedily healed. Now *Mermont* who was piteously perplexed for the losse of *Meruine*, commanded *Jacob*, *Barbin*, and diuers of his chiefeft nobilitie, to mount themselues on horsebacke, for he would instantly to the forest in quest of *Meruine*, to which they all accorded, and being come to the woods, they ranged a long time, but could not find the fatal place of his abiding.

2 But at last *Mordant* the courageous mare, neighed so lowd, and with such an unusuall stillnes, as the *k. hearing* her, said: without doubt I heare the cry of *Meruines* mare in these parts: let vs ride towards her with all speed, which doing, they found the mare in the midst of the high way, but *Meruine* by no means could their eyes recover. Then halowed the king aloud, saying: Ha, my dearest and best friend *Meruine*, where art thou? I pray thee speake, if thou be neare me, conceale not thy selfe from him, who so loveth thee. When *Meruine* heard the king, whose voice he knew by the resounding, hee turned his head with great paine,

paine, and said: Come hither my lord to this unhappy tree, and behold how I am tormented. Then went the king to him, whose eyes ranne ouer with pittie, neither was there a ny flinty heart so obdurate, which would not haue relented to see *Meruine* so neare the doore of miserie: for he was bound with such straitnesse, that his nose gushd out of blood abundantly, and his necke, his armes and legs were swolne and coloured like a man in leprosie. The vertuous king *Mermont* quickly cut his bands in sunder, and *Jacob* and *Barbin* held him vp, for his legs were not able to sustaine him: whereat *Barbin* wept grienously. But *Meruine* recompenced him, saying: Father appease your sorrow, for albeit my body be thus tormented, yet my mind is so free from bondage, that at this instant I could incounter with xx. knights well armed, could I find Entrant my good sword, which vnmanly the traitors took from me. *Meruine*, saide the king, thou shalt soon haue thy sword, and then went to the place where *Calix* had assignd him, and brought *Meruine* his sword again. By gracious liege said *Meruine*, how knew your highnes where my sword was hidden? Then reported the king vnto him all the circumstances of *Drohes* challenge and victory against *Calix*. To what purpose shall I double my discourse? the king forgate not any point of the story, *Meruine* was well contented with the historie, and loued *Drohes*, if possible, more than he did before.

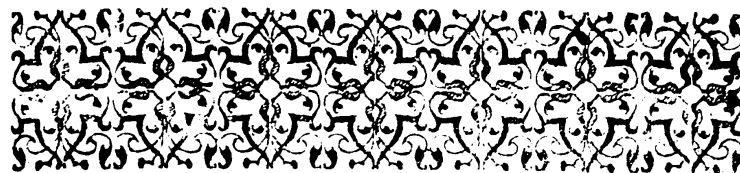
3 Then being mounted on his mare, he returned with them in gallant maner to Montment, where all the burgeses and rulers of the towne ran forth to meete him, for *Meruine* was esteemed the patron of peace, and highly loued amongst them: then was he brought to the pallace where he was most royally receiued of the queene, and more then may be spoken, of the beautifull *Berea*, whose ioy to see him aliue, like the highest heauen, had no circumsference: yet durst she not proclaime

## The first part of

but oft sighd, that vnder clouds she was compelled to containe it. Which when he perceiued, he smild, & loued for she was wondrous faire, and withall most wise and prudent. Of her Meruine legat Orient, who was father of the seven signes, of which one had to name Elias, who begat Ydaim, from whom issued Godfrey of Bullen, which conquered Ierusalem, as it is written in the famous historie of the same Godfrey. Meruine at that instant was of all men most ioyfully receiued, and the king commanded his physicians & surgeons carefully to attend, who in one moneth, thereto their art & diligence, deliuered him safely recovered: for which the king being glad, both praised & rewarded them. After Meruine was healed, make no question but he ouerslapt no time or occasion to visit his hearts goddesse Berca, who to either other read al the legends of their misfortunes, he making her, she him, a cabinet where they stood by their chieffest treasures: after they deuised of their loues, whose last hope and conclusion, was, chaste to espouse one another, which before they could bring to passe, they passed thereto many worldes of greater troubles: for Meruine after he was returned to be a Christian, he was five yeeres detained in Spinoz prisoner, during which season Berca endured infinite mischances, being twice enforced for her lifes safetie to renounce the redeemer Christ Iesus: yet not by any meanes would she adoe Mahomet, but what she did, was womans weaknes, and her lifes loue: for alwayes the true God of heauen was mighty in her memorie, as shalbe declared hereafter in this historie. And thus will we a while leaue to speake of them, and intreate of another occurrent.

## CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



## CHAP. XX.

1 Of *Pimons* embassage from *Eslamart* to *Baucamont*, touching the 4. sonnes of *Guskier* of Denmarke, 2 and how the peace was concluded betweene *Mermont* and *Baucamont*.



Done after Meruine was recovered of his late misfortune, as Mermont was sitting at the table with Baucamont, and Antifer, Pimon the embassadoz of Baucamont entered into the hall, and after humble reuerences perfozmed, kneeling vpon his knees, thus saluted the kings: That Mahomet which gouerneth the vniuerse, saue and defend the puissant king Baucamont, my lord and soueraigne, the good king Mermont, and Eslamart, that hither hath sent me. Know then you mightie kings of the most mightiest nations, that king Eslamart desires you, & in the name of Mahomet, commands you to knit an eternal peace between you, both for the profit of our religion, & the maintenance of al your kingdoms: which if obstinately you refuse, all your dominions are in hazard, and Baucamont my soueraigne shal assuredly lose Damascus: for the false christians, who seek to confound our great prophet, are entred into his confines with sword and fire, consuming his territories, not sparing infants, or taking any pagans to mercy, that willingly without compulsion falleth not downe, and adozeth their God the God of heauen, as your maiestie shal more plainly behold, by the contents of this letter which king Eslamart by me hath sent you, then kissing the letter, he deliuered it Baucamont, which contained this that ensueth.

To

130  
The first part of



To the king of Damascus,  
health.



Arise hie and mightie king of  
Damascus, my soueraigne  
vnkle: sithence these three  
yeeres that your sacred maie-  
stie hath unhappily bene de-  
tained prisoner, I haue not  
budgde my foote, nor remo-  
ued from this citie, which I  
haue gouerned and ruled in most peacceable quiet,  
vntill the end of this last moneth, at what time the  
hare-braind sonnes of Gualtier of Denmarke, inua-  
ded thy dominions, the names whereof ensueth:  
The eldest as it is reported to mee, is named Guion:  
the second Bertran, whose valure not any creature  
is able to resist: the third, Thyerry, and the fourth,  
Florion, all exiles, and banished their countreys:  
wherefore I intreate your excellencie, finde some  
meane to giue an end to your trouble, and come  
home to defend your owne nation and if possible,  
bring some aide, for your foes are mightie.

From Damas,

Esclamar

When

131  
the historie of Meruine.

When Baucamont had read this letter, he sayd to Mer-  
mont: behold, king of Pontmet, if this newes be not a ready  
meane to thy saueur, assure thee it is a hie tract to my vtter  
desolation: for sith these foure bryethzen are entered into my  
countrey, I know them so redoubted in armes, that nothing  
is able to withstand them. By these foure bryethzen in one  
yeere, was the most famous Gratiana, and five other kings,  
besore renowned for chualtrie, vtterly discomfited. Besides,  
Brandis hath written to me in inclosed letters, that they are  
the most renowned conquerors this day vnder the firma-  
ment. These things considered, I beseech your highnesse let  
vs conclude vpon agreement, and leaue the hostilitie we haue  
maintained one against another: the beginning whereof is  
my grieve, and the ending that I aske thy mercy.

2 Baucamont, sayd Mermont, more to defend the law of  
our religion, then for any other zeale I haue to thy kindnes,  
I freely pardon thee the forfeit of thy life and kingdome, and  
withall promise thee by a kingly protestation, to aid & defend  
thee against thine enemies. Thus with diuers other ceremo-  
nies of stricter combining, was the truce concluded betwene  
the kings, and instantly edicts sent abroad into euery crum-  
trek for the assembling together of an infinite numbe of pa-  
gans, to make an vnvanquishable army: which being mu-  
stered & enrolled, instantly there betooke themselves to the sea,  
king Mermont, Antifer, Baucamont, & the wise alconque-  
ring Meruin where for a while we wil leaue them, & return  
to the 4. bryethzen, to wit Guion Bertran, Thierry, & Florion,  
& noble Huon of Burdeaux, who at that time was in the ar-  
mie with them In their host was 20000. good christians by  
whose proweesse they had marched so farre, that now they had  
laied their sledge to Damascus, which then swarmed full  
of mis-believing infidels, because since the returue of Escla-  
mart, he had still in that place detained the ancient armie:  
thre



132  
The first part of

there was also with him in the towne the king Brandus, Herades, and Isay the king of Iuda. In byese, there was five kings, and their powers at that time in the citie of Damascus. When Esclamart sawe how gallantly the Danes had besieged him, he called Bandus and the other kings, and sayde vnto them, You kings of Asia, and defenders of Alcheron, let vs issue out courageously, and visite these christians, and I doubt not, but if we vertuously shew our resolutions, we shall before the Sunne touch the highest point in the heauens, vanquish and amaze them: for they imagined to haue found vs altogether vnprovided, because mine vnkle king Baucamont is at Montment prisoner, and so in his absence, thought suddenly to surprize vs. 'Tis true, sayd Bandus, therefore you haue my consent, to sallie out immediately. To this stratageme every one concluded, therewith arming themselves, and then with a crie able to deafen thunder, they sallied out of the gates, and in a trice, cast themselves into battalion order. Bandus (sayde Esclamart,) beare you the standard, and for your garde, take twentie thousand of the best souldiours. You Herades shall haue other twentie thousand, and incompasse them about, through yonder valley, my selfe with the rest will charge them in the faces, and doubt not, but come to behold their destructions. In this politike sort, Esclamart trained his troupes, who burnt with desire to bring our good christians to conquest: but they as too wise to bee fooled by inuention, had aduertisement by their espials of this approaching, wherefore Guion called his brothers and sayde, Princes, remember you the blood from whence we are descended, and the vertues of our famous father Gualtier, whose backe was neuer turned to the face of the proudest pagan. Remember you also our renowned uncles, whose almightie promesses haue conquered the realmes which they now gouerne: euen now is the time for vs to imitate their vertues, and with like

promesse

133  
the historie of Meruine.

promesse to obtaine to our selues crownes of perpetuall endurance. And for mine owne part, I vowe by him that died for me, this day to giue my name such life amongst the pagans, that the rumour of mine honour, shall indure beyond all ages. To this they all answered, with an equall desire of honour, whose courageous spirites like lions, were neuer tamed, yet they were all exceeding young, the oldest amongst them hauing not as yet attained to the age of xxi. yeres. Now God of his goodnesse prosper their proceedings, for immediately begins the battell, which will be both fierre and dangerous. When ensignes were displayed on all sides, and the signe of battell giuen by the trumpets sounding, Bertran toke a mightie lance in his hand, and spurring his horse, was the first that charged: whom, when a Turke named Butor, who was king of Ecalion, beheld, he distringed himselfe, and ranne to encounter him, but Bertran who toke his flight like a tempest, came against him after such a fashion, that at one blow, both horse and man tumbled to the ground, which when Bertran had perfourmed, he returned with his sword drawn vpon the Turke, who with the blowe was so astonished, that locking his hands together, and lifting them vp, basely begged life, and pardon. When Bertran demanded if hee would renounce Mahomet, and beleue thenceforth one onely Iesus Christ: to this the Turke answered, no. When by heauen, sayd hee, in me thou shalt finde no mercie, and at that word strake his head from his shoulders: then turning to his brother Guion, who then was come vnto him, he sayd: Brother, if to euery one I pay this payment, I beleue the pagans will gaine nothing by my tendure. Nowe began the battell to be mightie on both sides, and Guion leauing his brother, thrust himselfe amongst the middelt of the pagans, where the first he met, he threw dead to the ground, and in like maner made an end of the second. Briefly, before his lance was broken, he sent

some

134  
The first part of

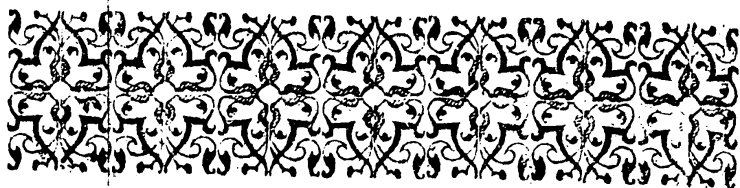
some to the earth to accompany their forefathers: but when his lance was broken, then he drew his sword, and meeting with a pagan, he claue his head to his teeth and then pursued another. Bertran this while being amongst the thickest bandes of his enemies, encountred a pagan, who was the cousin to Esclamart, to whom he lent such a salutation, that he claue him downe euen to the girdle, which another pagan beholding, ran to Esclamart, and sayd, Generall, thy noble cosine is slaine by a chystian, see where he lieth, and see where his foe rangeth. When as Esclamart saw Bertran possessed with a fellonious rage of immortall reuenge, he thrust spurs to his horse, and assailed Bertran with such puissance, that with the force of his present blowe, he strake his horse dead vnder him: but Bertran quickly baluted on his feete againe, and with his sword in his hand, ranne against the pagan, against whom he boyled to obtaine but one straight blow, but by any meanes, he could not for the pzeale: yet notwithstanding reaching one, he light so violently on the head of his horse, that it was more then time for Esclamart to heare him companie on soote also: and Bertran then running against him, had there slaine him, but there swarmed such innumerable troupes of pagans about him, that if God himselfe had not bene his defender, Bertran then had breathed no longer. Yet for all this, the gentle yong gallant miraculously behaued himselfe, for he strake not any pagan, but he seuered the life from the body. Ifay the king of Iuda seeing Bertran thus courageous, thrust himselfe against him, but there was mightie follie in his worke, for Bertran met him in the midst of his carier with such a blowe, that he claue his head to his collar. Mahomet, said Esclamart, this chystian is possessed with some deuill, what mischief he doeth me: and then he cried to all his souldiers, promising prizes of great worth to him that could take him. When was the famous gallant assailed on every side, but like an enraged

horse,

135  
the historie of Meruine.

horse, he ranged amongst them, and in such sort defended himselfe, that the pagans like larkes fell vnder the hovering of his wings. But yet alas, all his promise had profited him but litle, and he was at the point of taking or killing, when Thyerys Florion his brothers, with Huon of Burdeaux, with diuers chystians, by great chance came to his rescue. Brother Bertran (said Florion) now or neuer remember who you are, and banish the feare of a pagan infidell, and with that word he thrust into the pzeale, ouerturning and killing al that stood betweene him and his brother. When Bertran saw him, he toke new courage, and like a lion roused himselfe with greater furie: in so much, that he strake Esclamart to the earth, whom Florion like a gripe seized vpon, and deliuered him to two stout chystians, who bare him to their tents. Then began the battell Hydra-like to renew, in which the pagans died without number, for whom soeuer Bertran touched, neuer more stood need of the phistion: on the other side his brother Guion did wonders who encountred a king named Afriquant, who was exceeding strong and baliant, him Guion ouerthrew to the ground, but a band of Sarazens despight his head, mounted him againe, and assailed Guion in cruell maner: but like a wise and baliant knight, he defended himselfe from their furie. Then came Huon of Burdeaux, who like a baliant knight of unspeakable vertue, slew infinite troupes of the pagans: but when he saw yong Guion in hazard, he turned vnto him, & in a moment, deliuered him from the swords of those miscreants. At al this, the battell weakened no deale, yet might you haue seene as many knights lie dead on the earth, as starres in a winters night shine in the heauens, and so many masterlesse horses posting about the fieldes, as atomies playing in the sunnes beauty: yea, so baliantly our chystians bare themselves in that conflict, that in the end the pagans were discomfited, as you shall heare hereafter.

CHAP.



CHAP. XXI.

- 1 How *Florion* the yongest brother was taken prisoner  
by *K. Brandus*. 2 How the pagans were ouerthrowen.  
3 How *Florion* was giuen in exchange for king *Goham*  
*Gaisiers* brother, and other aduentures.



**M**ightie was the flurre, and most dreadfull  
the battell, in which our christians shewed  
the renoume of their valiances, but aboue  
all, the price of victorie seized on the helmet of  
Bertran, for the number which he slew, were  
accounted numberlesse: euen the yongest of  
the brothers, most delicate *Florion*, did that day maruei-  
lous acts, who beholding a pagan in his presence to kill a chri-  
stian, swoze deuoutly, his hand shold be his reuenge: but the  
pagan lying before him, thrust himself to a batalion of Sa-  
razens, where *Florion* ouertaking him, slew him in his en-  
terance. But euill befell that chaunce to the yong gallant,  
who imaginig to returne, found himself inclosed on every  
side with the power of king *Brandus*, which the were twen-  
tie thousand pagans: all with one violence they laied siege a-  
gainst *Florion*, but preailed nothing against him, untill by  
an euill misfortune, they killed his hoyle, who in his falling,  
fell vpon him: by which meane, and no other, they took him  
prisoner, and sent him to *Damascus*. When *Brandus* brought  
his armie into the heart of the batel, with whose sight, it recei-  
uered

uered new life, became sharper then at the beginning.

2 Yet was *Bertran* so feared amongst the pagans, that  
not any durst stand before him, but if any by chance did, they  
neuer after were beholde to their surgeons: so mightie and  
inuinible was his force that day, that by him king *Goham*  
the brother of *Gaisier* was taken prisoner, whom he com-  
maunded to be brought to his tentes. Not farre from him,  
his brother *Guion*, like a demie-god of armes, encouraged  
his souldiours, charging them for the honour of *Iesus*  
*Christ*, and his deare passion, that day to be inuincible: for  
though the pagans be infinite, yet their sight is shamefull.  
To this renowned *Guion* belonged a squire, whose name  
was *Regnier* the sonne of his sister, who with a battell-ar-  
miche held, strucke a pagan named *Tuier*, throught the  
helmet, with such verine, that he cleaue his head to his shoul-  
ders. When *Guion* sawe the mightinesse of his blowe, he  
went vnto him, and embracing him, gaue him the second  
order of knight hood, saying. Thou branch of the stocke from  
whence I am descended, continue thy magnanimitie, & by  
that honour, to which I couet to aspire, I will make thee  
the commander of a towne, or a stately castie. Euen in his  
greatest mightinesse was the battell, when *Brandus* had  
ioyned his armie with the others. There might you haue  
sene so many lost heads, so many forsaken bodies, so many  
ouerthrowne knights, so many vnbrackett horses, who trai-  
ling their bzidles vnder them, made their masters so pieces:  
that since the Lamb of *Gloze* was shadowed vnder the  
spotlesse wombe of a virgine, the like hath not bene scene,  
nor heard tel of, nor that so great resistance could be made by  
so few as our poore christians: for the pagans were in num-  
ber one hundred thousand and more, but our christians by  
their valure, lest but ten thousand which were not slaine or  
taken. At the king *Brandus* was in the midst of the christians  
armie,

## The first part of

armie, of whom he made mightie destruction. Among whom he thrust one noble chystian to the hart: and after him, like a wolfe in a flocke, sent a number to follow him. On the other side of the field was Bertran triumphat with victory, ranging to sake his brethren. Two of them hee quickly found out, who were ioyfull to behold their conquest. Wherfore, said Bertran, where is Florion? I know not, quoth Guyon, it is convenient that we goe sake him. Then put they themselves into the battell to search him out, but could not find him: and there was reason, for he was straightly imprisoned at Damascus in a strong tower. When Bertran saw he could not find him, he took a solemne oath, that nothing but the extreme darknes of the night should dyne him from the field, and with that he beganne a new conflict, proposing his body against a world of swordes: but how many soeuer he dismounted, neuer rose againe to become armed. Amongst the rest he encountered Croniquant, vnto whom he gaue such a blow, as he clane him in two pieces. Now began the Pagans to recolle, & flie toward the towne, whercof when Bandus was aduertised, he used all his force and eloquence to returne. But it was in vaine, for they reported hote king Esclamart, Goham, and diuers others were taken prisoners, and carried to the Chystians tents: which so sone as he heard, he betooke himselfe to flight also, whom Bertran, Guion, Thyerry, and Huon chased so fiercely, that they put many of them to the sword, as they entered the gates of the citie. Reignier in this chase, whom Guion had newly made knight, behaued himselfe so valiantly, that he was named the Pagans tormentor. Thus entered king Bandus into the towne, with tenne thousand that suruiued of an hundred thousand and better. Thus the Sarazens were ouerthrowne by the valure of our Barons: who as the storie reports, were so noble in their conquests, that nothing could resist them. They in this battell lost but

four.

## the historie of Meruine.

four thousand men, and the wealth they gained was so innumerable, that the basest in the Chystian army, was able to purchase a castle. Besides kings, they had an hundred of the greatest pagans prisoners. Yet for all this, the generals were not committed, but sorrowed for the losse of their brother Florion, to whose fortune they knew not what had chaunced. Briefly, their woe was so great, that no tong is able to report it. But leauing them in their doubtfulness, let vs returne vnto king Bandus, who being entered into the citie, and sad for his discomfiture, commanding Florion to be brought before him, saide: Chystian, I charge thee without any dissembling, tell me thy name. Pagan, answered he, in whom it was impossible for feare to haue anye resistance, I hate the thing from which thou bindest me: know then I am called Florion, and so they baptized me, as those know that are acquainted with me. I haue three brethren whom thou oughtest exceedingly to hate, for they haue vowed neuer to part or turne aside, vntill they haue taken the city of Damascus, and conuerted hie people vnto our Religion. But I wonder much, I sawe not Baucamont all this day, surely he either ouerslepeth his glorie, or wanteth courage to sustaine himselfe in combat. Chystian (saide Bandus) he is at Montment, and from thence is comming with a mightie hoste, to chastise your follies, amongst whom is a Pagan named Meruine, whose very rumour of excellencie, will daunt you with amazement. But letting these things passe, tell me I pray thee, from what line art thou descended? My fathers name, saide he) is Gualtier of Denmarke, that now ruleth Babylon, whose mightie promise hath conuerted millions of your faith, to a perfitt and true religion. Duke Oger also is mine vncle, who conuerted king Moyfant, and that was thy sonne of his called Florion, who as the fruit of baptism gaue me the name I now carry: know then, if by thy my

th 2

death

140  
The first part of

death be procured, not all the kingdoms of the world can  
shelter thee from vengeance. We therefore advised by me, and  
let me returne to my brethren, so shalt thou please them, and  
rescue thy fortune from a greater mischief. By Mahomet  
(replied Bandus) though thy youth and smiling eloquence  
might in a milde regard then mine, pay thy rancome, yet  
know, I am so farre at enmitie with relenting clemencie,  
that before the sunne decline an hower lower, thy head shall  
be twentie scize from thy body.

3 But when Gaifier heard him, he sayd, remember king  
Bandus the famous prisoners & our fellow kings who bide  
within the christians iurisdicions. In my conceite it were  
more wisdom to exchange him, then by his death to hazard  
all their fortunes: I beseech you, if they will render my bro-  
ther Goham for him, that you will yield and be pleased. I am  
most willing, answered Bandus, try your fortune in the af-  
faire. Then departed Gaifier, and came to the tents of the  
christians, at such time as our barons were set downe to  
supper, whom in this manner he saluted. The great god Ma-  
homet preserve king Bandus, and direct his counsels: and  
that God which you adore, some dispatch you from the bor-  
ders of those countreys. Guion, & you other commaunders  
of this christian societie, Bandus by me demaunds if you  
will rancome your brother from imprisonment for one of  
those kings you haue taken, which I shall nominate. With  
all my heart (sayd Guion) whose heart for ioy would haue  
leapt from his bosome, when he heard Florion was not  
dead: name whom thou wilt, and he shall be given for his  
rancome. Then deliuer (said he) Goham my brother. Im-  
mediately was Goham fetcht, and his forseit armes de-  
liuered him, and so conducted by Guion, Bertran, Thierrie  
and Huon, even vnto the wals of the citie. And Florion  
armed stood in the port where the exchange was solemnly  
finished:

141  
the historie of Meruine.

finished: Gaifier and Goham entering in, and Florion is-  
suing forth, who bowen by the glory of his Sauour, to pay  
his hoste a round payment for his most entertainment.  
Then came his brethren who embraced him, and pompos-  
ly brought him to their tents, where still remained many  
Pagan prisoners, vnto whom Bertran saide, that if they  
would not remoue their false idoll Mahomet, and be wil-  
ling to be baptized, they should all die: but they like duels har-  
dened in their mischief, refused. Then said Guion, I beseech  
thee to preserve these kings safely in prison, vntill the  
emperor Charles returne from the holy Sepulchre, who  
intendeth to repose a space with our father: so that the empe-  
ror be joyfull with our gift, and applaud the honour of our  
swores. It pleased me excellently, saide Bertran: so dis-  
patching their prisoners into strong safetie, they went to  
their rest, till early in the next morning, at what time  
they valiantly assailed the towne, but with fruitlesse suc-  
cesse: for why the city was strongly fortified and peopled,  
with abondance of all nations, who defended it (though  
with losse) to their gie admiration. And in that dolefull  
manner we will leaue them, and speake of Iain  
Mermont, and the enee to be re-  
red Meruine.





142  
The first part of



CHAP. XXII.

- 1 How King Mermont, Baucamont, Meruine, and two hundred thousand Pagans ariued before Damascus.
- 2 The losse the Christians received by the valure of Meruine.



While was Mermont vpon the seas accompanied with Baucamont, Antifer, and the puissant Meruine, but not with the good knight sir Drohes, for when hee knew the expedition was made against the Christians, he refused the kings colours, and staid with the Angell of women, diuine Berea, who was richer in nothing than in the riches of his company: so prosperous were the windes to their sailing, that within a very short space, they attained to the sight of Damascus, where they landed about two leagues from the citie.

Now the Historie reporteth, that there was a certaine espiall, who beholding their landing, ranne to the tents of the Generall, and cried out, My lords why haue you neglected to defend yonder hate-nourishing haueu, where enen now there is landed so many Pagans, as it is im-  
possible

143  
the historie of Meruine.

possible to number. Bertran more angry to feare, then heare his wordes, said Anaunt villaine, thunder thy threats in the eares of dead men, we feare no Pagans a pinne. Sir, said the spie, belieue me for certaine, I haue seene an hundred thousand or more. When the rest heard, and saw his constancie, they said, let vs arme our selues. prouidence auoideth had-I-wist. When they were all armed, Guion called Bertran and Thierry, and said, I pray you stay behinde with five thousand souldiers, to this end, that if they of the citie issue vpon vs, you may prevent them from inclosing vs behinde: to this they were agreed. So Guion and the rest went against the Pagans, who beganne to approach a little before the euening. The right renowned Meruine marched before the rest, and with him onely Croisant, and Iacob, whose conference was the praying of Drohes, in that he had refused to beare armes against his owne religion, to which praise Meruine lent double commendations, affirming him as well worthy the title of a king, as the honour of knighthode. All the while that they were in praying Drohes, Mermont was encouraging his souldiers, saying: Now was the time for them or neuer, to raise on high their god Mahomet. In these discourses they did march alongest a river, which led them to a broade and spacious field, where the Christians were ready to charge them.

2 Amongest whom, Huon with his launce in his rest, discharged himselfe against Meruine, vpon whom he broke his staffe with such fury, that the more Meruine was astonished, the more he highly esteemed him, that lent him the cause of amazement, yet not accustomed or willing to die in any debt to so good a credito, he assailed Huon so valiantly, that hee bare him from the crupper of his horse backe: the shame of which fall, lent sorrow to the soule of  
Huon,

144  
The first part of

Huon, because till that houre, not any, how puissant soeuer, had power to make him lose his stirrups. When as Meruine had thus dismounted him, he turned to Huon, and deliuering him his horse, said. Noble Christian, mount thy selfe againe, for so excellently haue I tasted of thy vertue, that I will not wrong thee to purchase a kingdome. When vanted Huon vpp into his saddle, eased with this hope, that a world of Pagans that same day should pay for the shame which Meruine had done vnto him. Now by this time was Meruine like vnto lightning flouen in to the midst of the armie, and Mermont like him, was amongst the strongest battallions, whom the gentle Florion at the first encounter ouerthrew euen vnto the verie ground, and had in the same moment cut off his head, if he had not bene relieved by a strong band of Sarazens, who mounting their Lord againe, flew all vpon the infant, but so gallantly did he defend himselfe, that they all started backe, and the boldest durst not giue another onfet. Then cried he aloft. Demincke, and victory, which as soone as Huon heard, like a madde man he ranne into the battell, and the first he encountred, was Marquant, whom he so saluted, that his head flew in two peces: and after him, a second, a third, and a fourth fell dead to the ground before him, so mightily he sought to reuenge the shame Meruine had giuen him. And in briefe, such was his prowesse that he soone deliuered Florion from the throng of his enemies. Not farre from them was Guion, who had made a great slaughter of the Pagans, for from one at a blow he strake his eare from his head, and his head from his shoulders. When old Baucamont aduance himselfe, who had but one arme, in which he held a strong lance, wherewithall hee was inflamed to assaile Guion, but he failed of his intent, though Guion failed not at all of his purpose, for with his sword, as he passed by, he strucke that arme also from his shoulder,

145  
the historie of Meruine.

shoulder, to the terrour of the beholders, and tozment of Baucamont, who hauing neuer an arme left, cryed out: Now am I the most miserable caitife raigning vnder the sunne, who am as hatefull to my selfe as fortune: and with that passed through his arme, who sorrowed to beholde his misfortune. When they of the Citie heard the rumour of this battell they issued out of the towne, but were immediately intercepted by Bertran, Thyerie, and five thousand christians, who brauely set vpon them. Bertran, who was most hardy was the first that charged, and meeting with a noble Sarazin named Moyfant, stroke him dead from his horse: after him foure more in the same ranke he after the same sorte serued, and then cried: This day (traitors) shalbe Dommings day to your generation. At which wordes his brother Thyerie and all the army gaue a most couragious charge, and ouerthrew a thousand Pagans that neuer rose againe to draw sword in anger. What shal I write more? Bertran his brother, and their souldiours (though not without great perill) so behaved themselves against the citizens that if they had bin any more then five thousand, the Pagans had neuer passed to ioyne with the great new landed army. But now the day failed, and the night beganne to shut in the sunnes windows, which was propitious for our christians because, if the day had endured, the valour of Meruine had ouerthorne their reputation: but now, by reason of the darkenesse, a retraite was sounded: for which Meruine was grieved, and said, they had conured by cloudes to shadowe their flying. But notwithstanding, all parts were content to vse the present benefite. Now Guion and Bertran are returned vnto their tentes hugely intraged, and Bertran said: Brothers, no Lords, this might hath the Pagans worst vs, but if I liue til the morrowe (God being mine ayder) I will atchiene such wonders, that the bloody liuery my sword shall put on, shall last longer then their religion. Now the Tables being couered,

covered, the noble company sat downe to supper, where they were honourably serued. After supper, as soone as the tables were taken away, and the watch set, the Generals went to their rest, till the morning starre awakened the sun from slumber: then rising and arming themselves, they martialled their army into a warlike propozition, intending to assault the pagans, who on the other side were euery deale so watchfull, and stood ready to behold the signall. Guion the vertuous Dane beholding both parties equall preparation, fell downe vpon his knees, and thus prayed: Thou true God of vs and our forefathers, I beseech thee in this battell be our guide and our defender: lift high the glorie of thine owne name, and bryze the armes of thy professed enemies, increase in vs euerlasting spirites of courage, that no scandalous report of our misfortune, bying our aged fathers haire to the graue with disquiet: if otherwise it be thy wil, that our deach shall this day giue an end to our aspirings, yet thou Lambe of Redemption, and thou God of Israell, boughsafe that our soules may be placed with thy saints in Paradise. As soone as he had thus said, bowing his head, he kissed the earth 3 times for remembrance of the holy Trinity.



CHAP. XXIII.

- 1 How the Christians were vanquished by *Meruine*,
- 2 How *Guion*, *Bertran*, *Thjerrie*, *Florson* and *Huon* of *Burdeaux* were taken prisoners and carried to *Damaschus*.

**A**fter Guion had ended his Prayer and ceremony, he came to his brethren, and saide: Princes, I beseech you in the honour of the holy passion of our great God, blot from your thoughts, the remembrance

the historie of *Meruine*.

byances of all worldly actions: out of all your vnderstandings be applied to the exaltation of our true religion, and the destruction of these faithlesse miscreants. This said, they marched towards their enemies. And the Pagans raged on the other side, came proudly against them. But now by this time was sprung vp in *Mermont* and the other Pagan princes, a mightie enuy against *Meruine*, as if his glorie darkened their praise, and it seemed to them, that without his assistance they were able to vanquish the christians wherefor *Mermont* came vnto him and said: *Meruine*, thou art too valiant and ouer daring, to march thus before continually in the hazard of all chances, I pray thee stay behind with two and twentie thousand, and approach not vntil the extremities of our last fortunes call thee, because, in thee consists our hope, and thy losse will giue an assurance to their conquest. I will (said *Meruine*) doe what your Maiestie commands me, but of my life, there is no wisdom in this policie, for I know by proufe that all your mightines is not able to resist their prowesses: yet notwithstanding approve your imagination, if fortune proue contrary, mine aide shall not be far distant, though what you do in my conceite is but to gaine that which I regard not. I meane this dayes glory, and not as you pretend, my safetie. And it was true he prophesied, for they enuid he should beare away the prize in each battell, and he but the son of *Barbin* the marchant. When began the allarum to lighten in the eares of each army: a resolute pagan named *Turquant* was the first that charged, who *Bertran* separating himselfe, incountred with such violence, that his lance making way through both his sides, caried him to the ground, his first and last mother: at this the battelles isynged, like the outrageous meeting of many confused waters, where the Christians bare themselves most valiantly, and in the first shooke ouerthrew a thousand Pagans dead to the ground. *Bertran*, who as yet had not broken his lance, meeting

## The first part of

meeting with Merbrom, brake him to the heart, and brake his lance with the encounter. Then drew he his sword, with which he excellently knew when to aise, when to be, when to assaile, and with it did wonders. Guion his brother brake Aquilant, but not he of Lucerne, but another, whom at the first blow he divided to the girdle, and then cried, *Forward in the name of God, you chistian nations, the day is ours.* Thus said Guion, whilst Thyerie, who held his sword in both his hands, was with his brother Florion in the midst of the array, making an admirable slaughter. Now became the battell to be strong and fierce, full in which the Pagans dyed innumerable: and the christians increased so highly in their resolutions, that the Sarazens began, from a little recorning to betake themselves to a maine flight, in which Baucamont was slaine by Bertran and Mermont taken prisoner, and with him diuers others of the greatest estimation, who were carried to the tents to accompany Esclamart, that had runne the way of dishonour before them. But now beholde the exchange of immortall fortune, our thrice renowned christians, in whom Conquest seemed to be proved, because they liued, and who returned victors from euery battell, shall unluckily be vanquished and overthrowne by the hand of their nearest cousin, most absolute Meruine.

You haue heard before, how Meruine staid behind with twenty thousand, according to the commandement of Mermont, to whom as soone as a Pagan had declared the mighty overthrow that was befallen them, with a smiling anger he said: *The King and his Princes imagined to subdue the christians without Meruine, in despite of Meruine, but it is happened otherwise, and themselves are forsaken for forsaking Meruine.* Well, now shal they know my power, and the worth of my service, for before the evening shall call forth the Moon to appeare in the great Starre-chamber, I will

## the historie of Meruine.

will reuenge them on their enemies, and restore their liberty. This saide he broached his renowned beast, and with his army gaue a hote charge on the christians, who when they beheld Meruine (though not discouraged) yet were they wonderfully amazed: and not without good cause. for his men were fleshy, and Meruine the best knight that in the world then liued, and they both euersolde and weary. Which when Bertran sawe, he saide, *Courage immortal spirits, and be not dismayed to beholde these Pagans: as I beare faith to my Saviour, they are no more to be esteemed then the withered grasse in a meadow or the stalkes of corne in the hand of a shearer.* By my life (saide Huon) I thinke these we haue slaine haue purchased a new resurrection. Yet so (saide Guion, beholde how they lie in heapes one vpon another. After this talke they prepared themselves, and incouraged their enemies, whome they assailed with unspeakeable resolution, but to too little profit, for their wearinesse had so much weakened them, that the Pagans slawe them most pitously: and Meruine so victoriously triumphed where he went, that not any escaped with life, on whome the weight of his arme descended. He slew Reignier, Guyons young knight, and after him another, and another, and al whosoever was within the reach of his furie. But barons were astonished to beholde his resolution: and yet more great incombrances immediately fell vpon them: for why, the citizens issued againe, and the rather, at the intreaty of Guyda who besought them to ayde her to take him alive, who had slaine her father: to whome Pimon declared that Bertran was he that slew him in the great battell, whome Guyda mightily desired, and inwardly loued, imagining her selfe happy if shee might but beholde him. The Pagans assured her her wish, and so sallied out vpon the christians, on whom Meruine had raigned lamentable misfortunes.

Now

150

## The first part of

How were the gallants of chistendome inclosed on e-  
uery side, they of the citie behinde them, and Meruine be-  
fore them, who alone was the planet of their destruction:  
for why, no force was p<sup>ro</sup>ue against his magnanimitie.  
When Florion sawe that he alone held in his hand their de-  
stinies, he prest vnto him, and gaue him such a blow, th<sup>ro</sup>wart  
the helme, that he closed his eyes from the day light. But  
Meruine recovering himselfe, payed him backe so heauy  
a requitall, that he strake the infant from his horse to the  
ground backward, who was no sooner downe, but Sa-  
razens eagerly leapt vpon him: to whome Meruine saide,  
Kill him not (souldiours) on your liues, for he that wounds  
him, woundeth my soule also. Thus was one of the foure  
brethren taken, for whome was made piteous lamentati-  
ons.

There was at this instant left of the Christians but ten  
thousand, who with one voyce cryed on God to be their ay-  
der: and Bertran sayd, follow me (my hearts) one God, one  
honour, and one graue: and then like a tempest of thunder  
he cast himselfe into the bosome of his enemies, confounding  
and killing all betwene him and the goale of Honour. Mer-  
uine this while chased the Christians to the gates of deso-  
lation: at the which Guion grew madde th<sup>ro</sup>ough anger:  
and setting himselfe against Meruin, gaue him such a blowe,  
that he made him bowe his head to the creast of the great  
mare Mordant. But Meruine vnaccustomed to haue any  
such manner of regratings, stroke Thyerrie (who then had  
thrust himselfe betwene them) so mightie a blowe, that he  
fell to the earth, and was instantly taken prisoner by the  
common souldiours.

After that Meruine had thus ouerthrowne Thyerrie,  
there came a Pagan vnto him, and tolde him, there were  
two Christians yet suruiuing, whom it was impossible to  
take without great effusion, for on whomsoever their hands  
fall

151

## the historie of Meruine.

fall, death followeth. And then hee brought Meruine  
where he found Bertran and Huon of Burdeaux, who ha-  
uing ioyned backe to backe, shewed such discipline in armes,  
as might well haue remained a myracle to all ages. When  
Meruine viewed their contragious resolutions, he grew in-  
amoured with their vertues: yet for all that, with Entrant  
his god sword he strake so manfully at Bertran, that albeit  
he neuer bended but to heauen, yet now he was forced to  
bow one of his knees to the earth. When leauing him, he  
charged Huon, who seeing the blow, by recoiling backward,  
escaped the violence: but the Pagans came swarming so fast  
behinde him, that he was able no longer to defend him-  
selfe against Meruine. How were all the noble Christians  
taken, except Guion, who alone with five hundred, de-  
fend himselfe, and they were all that suruiued. Like a wilde  
boze against a tree inuironed with a kennell of hungry  
dagges, so stode Guion defending his life, and teaching  
his followers how to die brauely. But in a trice Meruine  
put those stile to the sword, and took Guion prisoner,  
whom he deliuered to the Pagans, whome he charged vpon  
their allegiance, and his displeasure, to vse those vertu-  
ous prisoners honourably.

When this was done, he went vnto their tents, where  
hee founde King Mermont, and foure of his confortes:  
also King Escamart and sundrie other Pagane. When  
Meruine beheld them, hee sayd: Kinges and Princes,  
what make you heere? I imagined you had ouerthrowne  
the Christian army, but I see it is otherwise. Ah Meruine  
(sayd Mermont) euen for thy countres sake, and the ho-  
nour of Dahomet, deliuer vs from this thraldome. Thou  
art onely wise, onely valiant, and onely most fortunate.  
Mermont (sayd Meruine) thy freedome is already paid  
for, and then cutting their bandes in sunder, made them  
free from their afflictions. This done, Meruine commanded  
the



## The first part of

the tentes to be ransacked, and all the wealth thereof which was exceeding much, to be brought into the city. When when at was performed, and they returned into the pallace in Damascus, Meruine commaunded all the prisoners whom he had taken to be brought before him, and the other Pagan princes: which being accordingly effected, Guyda lokt vp on Bertran with a burning eye of desire, and an amorous amazement, saying to Mermont, can your Maestie possibly behold a semblance that more exquisitely resembleth the gallant features of our most famous Meruine then this chrestian, if his lineaments were as bigge and as largely shapen. It is most true Adam (saide Bandus) and the more I beholde him, the more I beholde him in him: Now Princesse, (replied Meruine) is there in every place one like me? Here, tofore you said I did resemble Duke Oger, and am I now become like this chrestian? what, is hee also of Ogers line? When turning to Bertran, he saide: Chrestian, I beseech thee without dissembling tell me the name of thy father, and the descent of thy pedigree. Pagan, saide Bertran, we whom you behold are the foure brethren that haue tormented Paganisme, and yet hope to be the last end of their destruction, Gautier of Denmarke is our father, who wanne his crowne with his sword: and Oger whom you so remeinne, and whom Enie her selfe dare not but extoll, is brother to Guion our grandfather, who now ruleth Jerusalem: It is most true, saide a Pagan standing by, Guion king of Jerusalem is brother to Oger, whom I beheld in excellent combat to kill Bruhier before the walles of Laon, and his brother Iustament before Accre so fierce and valiant is the descent of their pedigree. By Mahomet (saide Meruine) sith I resemble Oger, I would I were also of his issue: and so hee was, though mischief and euill kept it from his knowledge: but the time cometh, in which he shall know himselfe and his offspring. Thus (as you haue heard) questioned

## the historie of Meruine.

ned the Pagans with Bertran, who most stoutly made replies. When Mermont rising vp saide to Bertran: All thy lineage hath bene the scourge and ruine of our religion: and I am too well assured, that nothing but your deaths can giue peace to our quiet: wherefore (Meruine) it is most necessarie they die, to excuse our further trouble. Not so my Lord (answered Meruine againe) wee will not wedde Tyranny and Conquest together: besides, I bowed in my selfe, not to doe them indignitie, till I haue taken, as them, their father Gautier prisoner: which done, I will in a royall nauy crosse the seas, & lay siege to the flourishing citie of Paris, and giue battel to the emperor Charles that is surnamed Great: and by the aid of Mahomet I doubt not to bring all France to my subiection. When Meruine had thus said, he commaunded the foure brethren and all thother chrestian prisoners to be strongly imprisoned in an impregnable tow-er, where Bertran consumed his time in lamentation for his royall father and mother. It hapned that Guyda, & Goham the brother of Gaifier, being one day vnder the turret, they heard the complaints of the haplesse Chrestians. Sir (saide Guyda) what is he that now speaketh, know you his voice? Adam (saide Goham) it is the mightiest of the 4 brethren, and the most absolute knight in the world next Meruine, & his name (as I take it) is Bertran, whose lineage is as great as his minde, both incomprehensible. After these speeches they departed: but from Guyda neuer departed the remembrance of those speeches: wherefore as she went, she said to her selfe that Bertran from her leue should finde an inuincible army to release him, and that her desires should attend on him whilest her heart entertained a sympathy of his afflictions. Now were they returned to the pallace, where all the Pagan princes were set, who both honoured, and feared Meruine greatly, because, when he was angry, he spared no creature, of what estate soeuer, but dealt his almes alike

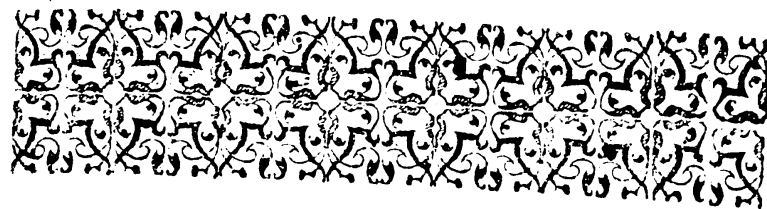
154  
The first part of

to all that maligne him. When supper was ended, Meruine commaunded that all the slaine Pagans should haue souldier-like buriall: which being done, amongst the dead was found king Baucamont, whom Meruine interred espally, offering in his obsequies, honorable lamentations. As soone as the next day appeared aboue the mountaines, Meruine commaunded all his army to be mustred, for he would instantly march towards Babylon. Wherefore calling king Bandus vnto him, he gaue him the charge and gouernement of that citie of Damascus, swearing him to his allegiance, and with carefull respect to nourish and guard the honourable christian prisoners, and also with all the reuerent obseruances appertaining to so great a Maiestie, to adoe and reuolue the excellent princeesse Guida. When euery ceremony of his charge was ended, he, king Mermont, and a thousand Pagans toke shipping for Babylon, where we will leaue them, and a while discourse of other matters.

¶



155  
the historie of Meruine.



CHAP. XXIIII.

How Charlemaine departing from France to see the holy sepulchre, arriued at Babylon, and was royally receiued of King Gualtier. 2 Of the Embassage two Pagans brought from Meruine and Gaudisse. 3 A Councill holden by the Christians, who demanded day of king Karabeu, of Florian, of Mesque, and of his father Mayssant, at their comming to Babylon.



The Historie reporteth, that in this time the most famous Empero<sup>r</sup> Charlemaine would needs goe to Jerusalem, to adoe the holy sepulchre, and to that end demaunded of duke Naymes if he would accompany him in the voyage, who most willingly agreed, aduising his Maiestie withall, that it were good to take with him also the reuerent archbishop Turpin, who had a longing desire to the iorney. the twelue Peeres, and five thousand resolved souldiers, to the end, that if in that expedition they were incountered with any Pagan princes, they might yet be able to defend themselves from mischiese. Thy counsell pleaseth me (sayde Charles) yet I can assure thee we may vnresisted passe euen vnto Samaria and Damascus, for that the rule of the Christians runneth euen vnto their citie walls. To be brieue in my Discourse, after Charlemaine had gathered his traine together, he betooke him to the seas, where the gentle winde lent him so prosperous breath, that in few dayes he arriued

## The first part of

arrived at a Cape called the Arme of Saint George, where they landed, and thence marched to Babylon, whither they ranne a little before dinner, where they found Gautier the nephew of Oger, and with him Claretta his quene, who had no understanding of Charlemaines approach till they beheld him in their pallace. The joy at their first meeting was unspeakable, and their entertainment so royall as made all men wonder. After many ceremoniall obseruances, and some repose taken, Charlemaine asked Gautier for his foure warlike souldiers, whom all the world made so famous for their chivalrie. He replied, that they were even then before the walls of Damascus with a puissant host, where they had taken Goham and diuers other kings and prisoners, and giuen the Pagans a mightie ouerthrow, as he was certified by letters not long since received from their tents, and many other discourses they had, which I omit.

2 Anone, as the two kings, Duke Naymes, and the twelve peers were deuising of sundry recreations, there entered into the hall, in proud and maiestick manner, two Pagans, the one had to name Iuorin Montbrant, the other Malegrap. And when they came in before Gautier, without reuerence, the first thus spake: Gautier of Denmarke, first understand, that we are sent to thee from the puissant king Mermont, from Gaudisse his royall admirall, from king Manuel, from Goham king of Egypt, and from five other mightie kings: lastly, though deseruing a title before all other for the vnvanquishable wonder of knight-hood, from a vassall of king Mermonts named Meruine, who hath vowed to make all christendome acknowledge no god but Mahomet: and to that end, by the exquisite perfection of his magnanimitie, he hath taken thy foure souldiers prisoners, and slaine all their host, except themselves and thirtie others, who with them are detained at Damas, whom againe thou shalt

## the historie of Meruine.

shalt neuer behold, but with sorrow. Now these royall Pagan kings, and chieflie Mermont, by his commaundment that Pilgrim-like thou appeare before them at Montbrant, (where they are landed) and on thy knees humbly imploze their fauours, so shalt thou purchase thy selfe grace, and know their pleasures: if otherwise thou resist, with sword and fire they will instantly besiege thy citie. When Gualtier had heard this thunder of a dismall oracle, his heart trembled in the armes of griefe and displeasure: at last, though it were long ere wordes could find way from amazement, he said: How can this be true which thou reportest, when thou saist, my souldiers are detained prisoners? Gualtier (replied the Pagan) it is most true: then leane to wonder, and giue answer to mine embassage.

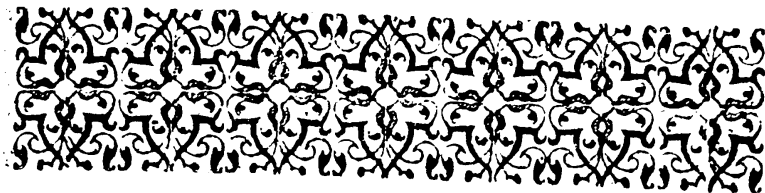
3 At this, for a space they dismiss the Pagans whilst the christians betooke themselves to counsell, where Gualtier demanded what course was to be taken in these times of extremitie. Great princes (said Duke Naymes) this is my opinion: to the embassadours should no indignitie be offered, both because they are but the tongues of others hearts, and also because our barons whom they detaine, are subiect to the like vengeance, wherefore let vs demaund aide of the Christian king Karaheu of Iuda, and of the king Moyfant, and his sonne Florion, intreating them, to whose religion and land it as nearely concerneth, speedily to repaire with their forces, and maintaine the Temples of our God, and our owne liberties. To this counsell euery one concluded. Then sending for the Pagans againe, thus Gualtier made them answer: Pagans, returne to your Lordes at your pleasure, and say to Mermont and the others, that I am heartily sorie for the thraldome of my souldiers yet can I not alter their fortunes: as for their inuasion, if they come to exile me, my sword shall defend mee, whilst there is eyther

158  
The first part of

nature honour in mee, so till the glorious God of my crea-  
tion forsake mee. Say hee saide thus, who will doe thus  
With this answer the Pagans reperted, and Gualtier  
dispatched Letters to King Karaheu: and the Emperour  
Charles and Gualtier himselte went to Jerusalem, where  
they found the good king Moyfant, who entertained them  
with royalty beyond expectation. To him Gualtier recoun-  
ted his losses misfortunes, and the threats of his own ouer-  
throwe, to whome Moyfant promised all the aide and suc-  
cours of his kingdome. Then went they to the holy Sepul-  
chre, where they offered up their holmes, gifts, and protesta-  
tions, and then with all speed returned backe to Babylon,  
where they found Claretta the Quene in great perplexitie  
of sorrow for the losse of her foure sonnes. The same daie  
arrived king Karaheu with seuentene thousand knights of  
estimation, all which were gallantly receiued. The next  
morning came Florion of Mesque with fise thousand, and  
his father Moyfant with as many: olds Guyon of Den-  
marke, the brother of Oger, and the father of Gualtier  
was not yet dead, he brought with him foure thousand: so  
there was in Babilon of strange nations thre score thousand  
besides fise thousand which the Emperour Charles brought  
with him. Al which receiued an othe befoze the throne of the  
true God, not to leaue Gualtier till the death. Now let vs  
leaue them a while, and returne we to Iuorim, and Male-  
grap, the two Embassadors, who returning to Mermont  
and the other Pagan Kings, declared their answer, the  
state of Babylon, the presence of Charlemaine, and the ge-  
nerall resolution of the whole nation. Mermont at the first,  
with silence beganne to wonder, til Meruine awaking him  
saide: What beame you of (my Lord?) my heart is set  
on fire with their wordes. I beseech you for honours sake,  
let vs march away presently. Whereupon a trumpet was  
sounded, and they all departed till they came within halfe a  
league

159  
the historie of Meruine.

league of Babylon, their whole army being thre hundred  
thousand, amongst whom were foure giants, which were  
the brothers of Bruhier, whom Oger had slaine befoze the  
walles of Laon. When the Emperour vnderstode they  
were come, he said, it would be a mighty indignitie, if  
they should molest him in the towne, wherefoze he would  
hads issue forth, though all the dangers of the world hang  
on the adventure.



CHAP. XXV.

How Charlemaine and all the christian army sallied out  
of Babylon. 2 Of the great battell, and how Mer-  
uine slew Guyon of Denmarke his vnkowne vnckle,  
3 Also how Charlemaine, Gualtier, and all the twelue  
Peers were taken prisoners, and their army discom-  
fited.



Now beganne Charlemaine, by the  
summons of the trumpets to ga-  
ther together of the christian army  
60000, and planting them in a  
souldierly proportion for the sally,  
rode about the troupes with these  
encouragements: You sinewes of  
Kings, and upholders of Monar-  
chies, I beseech you this day be al-  
mighty in resolution and combat against that coward fear,

## The first part of

if he whisper in your heartes a thought of retiring, imagine now the glorie of heauen (for so it is) is to be gotten by the conquest: and that the height of felicitie, for which from your infancies you haue made endlesse imprecations, is sent from aboue, and on this day by your valours to be atchieued: that done, angel-like contend for your perpetuall happinesse, and that crowne of immortall recommendations, which the God of our forefathers will bestow on euery one that raiseth his trueth aboue these misbelauing, infidels. Behold then, (you champions of the highest) howe like hunger-starred beastes they come rauening, and haue already before your faces deuoured your owne suppers: wherefore reuenge that indignitie, and maintaine the freedome of your Religion. These and manie other speeches the Emperour Charles bled, to which the people answered with shoutings and reioyngs. Then might ye haue heard a world of trumpets sound, double so manie drummes, taboys and tamburins: after which they marched against the Pagans, who in like maner came ordered and aranged to the encounter, king Mermont, with Meruine, being two of the foremost leaders.

2 When Guion of Denmarke, who was the brother of Oger and father to Gualtier, beheld Meruine, he charged his lance and ranne against him, whom Meruine with the same accomplement regreeted in the encounter: the good old Guion brake his lance, but without hazard to Meruine, who on the contrarie part smote him with such furie, that he ouerthrew him dead to the ground without motion. When Guion's band beheld that misfortune, they al at once failed Meruine seriously: but his defence was gallant, that he slew all who touched. Now ioyned the battel on euery side perillous, strong, & grievous against the christians and cruel, & desperat against the pagans. Mermont, Gaudisse & Brandis that day wounded, for they were at the beginning of the mischief:

## the historie of Meruine.

chiefe: but aboue all was Meruine highly feared, for death upon his sword had taken an euerlasting lodging: he as he posted, brake their ranks asunder, for not any Christian durst dare to assaile him. On the other side, Charles the great, king of Fraunce, duke Naymes and the twelve peeres, did such admirable exploits by their chualtie, that had it not bene for the invincible prowess of Meruine, the Pagans had not stood one houre before them, albeit they were three hundred thousand: so expert and wise in warre-like actions was Charles. All this while the battel increased: at last Charles encountered with Malegrape, to whom with Ioyous his excellent sword, he gaue such a blowe that he diuided him to the nauell, and withall cried, Courage Mountioy, Saint Denis. When Iuorin beheld Malegrape, slaine, he thrust himselfe against Charles: but the emperour gaue him such entertainment, as he fel dead to the earth backward: after him, another and another. The duke Naymes imitated the emperour as nere as might be, who encountering Gaifier, cut off one of his armes, & Gaifier that had but newly sene the death of his father, like a mad man did wonderful actions: neither was Moyfant nor his son Florion short of praise-worthy commendations. As for the good king Karaheu, he was in the midst of the battel where he encountred king Mermont, vnto whom he gaue such a blow, that he killed his horse vnder him, and he had then bin taken prisoner, had he not cried Montment, so lowde, that Meruine heard him, who thrusting his mare forward, overthrew all betwene him and Mermont. So soone was he sene but all souldiours gaue him place, so wel they knew, and were acquainted with him, only king Karaheu stood by withstood him, and strake so mighty a blow on his target, that in the midst he cleaued it asunder. Whereat Meruine was much grieved, and in quitall gaue him such a blow with Entrant, that he cleaued him to the iawes. Thus was king Karaheu

## The first part of

Karahen (whose like hardly furnished) slain by Meruine: who afterward was by a generall Counsell canonized a S. and called saint Karahen. Many miracles were done after the battell, which I may not report, but must returne to Meruine, who still conquered where he came. Amongest the rest, he slew a kinsman of Charlemaines, for which the emperour being displeased, and seeking reuengement, encountered a pagan whom he ouerthrew, and had slain, but for the rescue of many souliours. Terrible was the battell, both of the one side and the other. Notwithstanding that our Christians were few in number, yet their spirits so oft redoubled, that their hands were bathed in blood continually, Gautier straued still to reuenge his fathers death. Meruine to increase his conquest, by hap he encountered with therie of Dampmartin, throwing horse and man to the earth: and taking him prisoner, bound him with cords. When came the earle of Labrec to reuenge Dampmartin: but the gentle Meruine sone vnhoised him, and took him prisoner.

3 At which Mermont reioyced, because he was the 1st. prisoner Meruine had taken: so greatly were the Christians discouraged by the prowesse of Meruine, as they now began shamefully to die for their safetie, and saue twentie thousand that still were resolved, not a man would flie to sustaine battell. Whereat Charlemaine sorrowed greatly saying, their shames should not follow him, but their owne confusions: which done, desperately he ran into the midst of the battell, and D. Naimes after him, effecting greater miracles than before. Meruine rode triumphantly, and in the end met with the Counte Villiers, the earle of Flanders, and the rest peres: amongst them began a long fearfull, and a doubtfull battell, but in the end, for all things are subiect to fortune, they were every one taken prisoners: so as of the christian

## the historie of Meruine.

christian hoste remained no more commanders but thempers, Charles, and duke Naimes, who defended themselves gallantly against their enemies. Meruine seeing Charlemaine, he fell in love with his vertues, saying: O Mahomet, bow downe thine eyes, and behold thy inuincible christians: and then moued with one enuious love, and alone, lest enuy should wrong so excellent perfection, cried to the common souldiers, vpon paine of death not to touch them: which commandement they obeyed, for they durst not gainstand. When Meruine opposing himselfe against them with honorable speeches, the true badges of perfect magnanimitie, he said: Princes, yeld your selues, when fortune can auaille to no more conquest, and enrich me with your names because many pagans haue told me the armes you beare do belong to France, and that one of you also is the emperour. Thou saiest true, (said Charles) and know, my name for dread of any Sarazen was neuer changed: Charles is my name, Charles that ruleth Rome, France, and all Christendome: and this is duke Naimes, the nearest to me in counsell and affection, therefore stand vpon thy guard, and approach vs not, for here will we liue, and here will we learn to die. Who first presents himselfe to be our tutor, shall neuer haue other priest, surgeon, or sepulchre. At this speech a pagan king rusht to duke Naimes, giuing him such a blow as he strake him to the ground: but the duke quickly recovered his fate againe, and mad with that amazement, sent him backe such requitall, that the Pagan thereof died. And then were the Emperour and the Duke assailed on every side freshly: who notwithstanding defended themselves valiantly: insomuch that Meruine pitied them, and stood in doubt whether it were better he should preuaile, or they perish. At this he descended from his mare, and embraced king Charles, to whom he saide, Thou excellent wonder of knight hood, alas, thy defence is bottlesse, & I die,

to



## The first part of

to thinke thy fortune shoulde perishe: yeld to him, whose pi-  
ty thou hast taken prisoner in beholding thy vertue. Charls  
hearing this, and such honoꝝ in his enemy, said: Thou glo-  
rious almighty, that for their sinne exiled Adam and Eue  
from paradise, comfort, and counsell me: and with that he  
yelded himselfe to Meruine, only desiring him to ballance  
his honoꝝ, not by the foile of his ouerthrow. Sacred empe-  
roꝝ (qd Meruine) feare no misfortune, thy thraldome shall  
be but thine owne pleasure: then receiuing his sword, and  
taking off his helmet, deliuered him to a band of the noblest  
Pagans, to whom he gaue so speciall charge of adozation &  
reuerence, that like a demie-god he was deified. Duke  
Naymes seeing Charlemaine taken, deliuerd his sword to  
Meruine. Thus was the emperoꝝ Charles, duke Naymes,  
the xij paires, and xxxij noble christians taken prisoners,  
and all bound one to another, except the emperour, who had  
ingaged his royall word to Meruine, not to depart with-  
out his licence. This being done, and that there was not  
left a christian which was not slain or taken, Meruine went  
instantly, and gaue an assault to Babilon, but the citizens  
knowing it folly to withstand, when their chiefe comman-  
ders were imprisoned, came forth, and deliuered the towne  
to their mercie, bowing their neckes to the yoke of slaerie,  
renouncing the only true God, became misbelieuing mis-  
creants. As sone as Mermont was entred into the towne  
he imprisoned Charlemaine and the other Christians, in a  
tower, where they were safely garded, as prizes of inesti-  
mable value: but king Charles spent all his time in teares  
and such like lamentations. Alas, thou maiden mother of  
the worldes saluations, ought I alone to be the subiect of all  
misfortunes: must my long admired honoꝝ die in so shameful  
a graue of disparagement, and must my rule that stretcht  
beyond Europe & Asia, be her selfe contained in a square of  
this little compasse. If so it must be, it is my sinne, & happie

3.

## the historie of Meruine.

I, if it alone be chastised for my transgressions: thus spake  
king Charles, whose bird flourished like a white palme tree.  
Meruine hauing now a little repasted himselfe, called toge-  
ther the pagan kings and princes, saying: My lordes, this  
place we must make no place of repast or banquetting, be-  
cause fluggardise is hatefull to the honour, whereto we co-  
met to aspire: wherefore prepare your selues presently to  
depart, for I will not rest till I haue taken Mesques and  
Jerusalem, and brought the whole countries thereabout  
to our subiection, and taught the people to adoze no god but  
Mahomet. Lord Meruine, said Mermont, thy will shall be  
our guide, and thy courtes shall direct vs: When sending  
their drummes and trumpets about, and summoning their  
bands together triumphantly, they departed from Baby-  
lon, and so restlesse continued in their marchings, that they  
shortly appeared before the walles of Mesques, to which  
they laid so fearefull a siege, and gaue such maruelous as-  
saults, as in few dayes they toke the towne putting man,  
woman, and child to the sword, except those that willingly  
fell downe and adozed Mahomet. Thus Meruine made  
himselfe lord and master of Mesques, for he had a desire to  
rule in that citty: yet he would needs forward to Jerusa-  
lem. So he made a Pagan his lieutenant to rule  
only in his name: and with the greatest  
pomp that might be, before his depar-  
ture, crowned himselfe king  
of Mesques.



CHAP

# The first part of



## CHAP. XXVI.

1 How *Meruine* and the Pagan host came before Ierusalem, 2 How the citizens rendred vp the towne. 3 How *Meruine* refused to enter into the citie, but returned to Babilon, at which many of the pagans murmured.

**A**fter *Desques* was converted to the damnable belief of Mahomet, and *Meruine* had established it for his owne government, he would not sleep anie occasion, but charged all his army to be in readinesse, for that forthwith he would march to Ierusalem, to make himselfe lord of that mighty towne and the countrey thereto adioyning. When *Mermont* heard him, and saw the desire he had to spread their law through all nations, he said: O Mahomet, how great are thy workes, that from the loines of the poore merchant *Barbin*, hast raised a glorious branch, to exalt thine honour, and to bring all *Christendome* to subuersion? This spake *Mermont* in the hearing of *Meruine*, to whom he did all the reuerend honours might be deuised: but in soule, both he and all the Pagan princes extreamely hated him, because the honours wherewith they shined, were but borrowed from his splendor. And for that their labours could neuer attaine to a perfit end, yet they durst not but obey him, feare, not loue being their ruler. All things being now prepared, they departed from *Desques*, and marched with such prosperous expedition,

# the historie of *Meruine*.

tion, that they came before the noble and sacred towne, where the *Laine* of *unmort* all glorie suffered his death and passion for the worldes redemption.

2 As soone as *Meruine* beheld it he practised it, and immediately prepared for so strong and dreadfull assault: so that the poore *Christians* beholding their imminent danger, held a counsell, and concluded to deliuer vp the keyes of the citie: wherfore comming forth, and casting themselves prostrate before *Meruine*, they said: Dread Lord of our liues and beings, behold, we the chiefe rulers of this haples towne, render our selues to thy gracious mercy, deliuering to thee, as to our liege lord, all our possessions, promising to serue thee loially, and to hold thy faith lawe, and religion. *Meruine* hearing them, replied, Citizens stand vp, and be courageous. for your peace is concluded in an happy houre. Assure your selues from the honour of my reputation, neither man, woman, nor child of this towne shall be dammed: so returne in all peace, and be loyall: for not a souleier shall come within your gates, but we will all returne vnto Babilon: then turning to the hoste, he commanded them to take vp their pavillions, and march towards Babilon.

3 At this all the *Sarazens* were mischieuously agrieved, and with priuate murmuring, called vpon *Meruine*, who to their troubles would allot no ending but notwithstanding, all they set forthward, and by the restlesse labour of many dayes and nights, at last they arrived at Babilon, where they banqueted and reposed themselves, the space of thy dayes. After it hapned vpon a day, that *Iacob* the merchant came to *Meruine*, and said: How now my lord, how walks lone in your thoughts? what, is he viterly exiled? is there no remnant of memozy left to preserve the perfectiōs of beutifull *Berea*? *Iacob* (said he) more then thy blunt senses

lences are able to measure: but why dost thou now examine me vpon this holy article? For this (said Iacob) that if absented time haue not shut excellencie in doubtfulnessse, then would I haue you, that you may by it binde her loue in a moze eternall band of affection. Take Charles, his twelue peeres, and the rest of thy prisoners, and as the conquests of thy sword and her beauty, deliuer them to her sacred maiestie, that she may dispose them, vntill they retorne from Fraunce, and those other countries, which alreedy thou hast subdued, and of which in ensuing time thou shalt be king and ruler. Iacob qd Meruine, thou hast tutored me to my contentment, and thy counsel is as an Oracle: for to hir and no other my selfe and my sword is deuoted. As they were thus conferring Mermont entred in, who with a lowly, yet kingly adozation, saluted Meruine, and moze would haue done, if he knew, to haue done, moze for feare he stood in towards him, than for any religious affection he bare him: and then said; My lord qd Meruine, it behoues you now to thinke of your expedition into Fraunce, and to dispose of these christians you haue already taken. Saide Meruine, if your Maiestie will walke into the great hall, where the rest of the pagan princes are set in counsell, we wil discusse of this affaire. Meruine calling the gaoler, commanded him to fetch the prisoners he had in charge. Instatly the Turk performed his will, and brought forth Charles, the twelue peeres, and all the rest of the christian prisoners. As sone as Meruine saw them, he stood vp and said, kings, princes, and barons, My will is, that these Christian prisoners be conueyed to the castle of Turgon, vntill by my prouesse I haue conquered France, and all the famous countries bordering her territories. How (said Gaudisse) o wherefore shall they be thither haled? What reason is in so doing? I tell you, their liues are dangerous, death they haue deserved, and death by my wil shall they haue. Scarce were his words

words ended, but another pagan rose vp, saying: Meruine attend my words. This many yeeres haue I traueled my body, and wasted my reuenues to effect these conquests, and shall I now lose my guerdon: part haue I wonne of these prisoners, my part will I haue, and that part shall part with their liues at this present. And I also, said another pagan, who was both rich in wealth and strong in friends, and his name was Gratian: his reason I haue my part and profite of these prisoners, otherwise princes, let vs ioyne together, and with our swords diuide them.



CHAP. XXVII.

- 1 How Meruine would not consent to the death of the christians.
- 2 The great battell which fell out in the palace.
- 3 How the christians aided Meruine, and how the pagans came and cried him mercy.



Then Meruin (and not without reason) saw the arrogance of the pagans, and that for force they would diuide those spoiles amongst them, which his sword onely had obtained, he was almightily displeased, and with a fierce countenance of anger, told them, it should not be as they had deemed, but that in despight of the proudest in that assembly, he would beare the christians to Montment: and as diuine trophies of his affection, he would present the

## The first part of

to his celestia<sup>l</sup> Lady and mis<sup>er</sup>esse, (as Iacob befoze had giuen him counsell) wheretoze (sayd he) if there be any pagan, of what estate soeuer, that speaks another word of resistance, Entrant my sword shall be so equall a iudge twixt him & me, of my vengeance, that the rest shall be warned by his misfo<sup>r</sup>ture: and then raising his voyce moze higher, What (said he) will you diuide the things beleng to mee at your pleasure? I sweare by mine homage to Mahomet, the proudest pagā that dares to contradict my wil, or mislikes the intents of mine actions, shall forfeit his head to my sword presently. As he thus spake, Gratian rose up, who had about him a mighty band of sarazens, and sware by Mahomet, he would kill Charlemaigne, for he hath bene the scourger & tormenter of our religion. Wheretoze (said he) this day wil I take vengeance on his head, and not be withstood by thee, or denied my pleasure by a boy, y<sup>e</sup> base son of a silly marchāt. At this word he went to king Charles, and toke him by the beard, which was whiter then snow, saying: false traiterous king, this day wil I hang thee like a thiefe, and withal stroke him with a cudgel.

1 Which was so vnpleasant to the eyes of Meruine, that drawing Entrant his sword, he strake king Gratian twixt the necke and the eare, with such violence, that he chined him euen to the girdle: but no sooner was that fatal blow deliuered but the whole armie assailed Meruine with infinite violence: yet miraculously defending himselfe, neuer striking in vaine, so that from euery blow death ensued. There was amongst them another king, & cousin to Gratian, who was the greatest setter forwarde of the sedition: him Meruine ouerthrew dead to the ground, and then began the battell to increase with huge ho<sup>r</sup>our against Meruine, who like a mad man laied about him here and there, not sparing any.

2 When our ch<sup>r</sup>istian princes perceiued, that for their sake-

## the historie of Meruine.

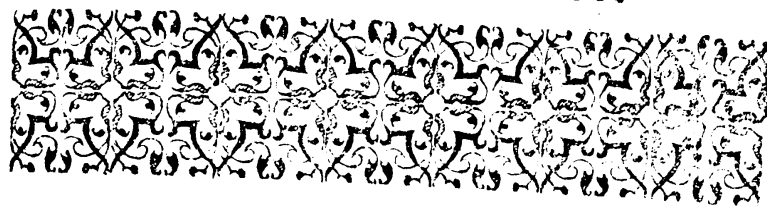
the Meruine had thrust himselfe into this dangerous adu<sup>r</sup>ture, they concluded among themselves, either to aide him, or per<sup>r</sup>ish in attempting: and the thrusting themselves befoze him they said, courage prince Meruine, this day we will die for thee, for thou hast bene gracious to our misfo<sup>r</sup>tunes, and we will partake thine ex<sup>r</sup>emitie. With that, they thrust themselves against the pagans, with euery one a sword in his fist, making a fearefull and bloudie skirmish, from one they cut his head, from another his armes, legs from the third, and generally, life from the most they encountred. Charles in this battell behaued himselfe most couragiously, but Meruine moze enraged then a long hunted boze, without regard, made slaughter of al befoze him, and by the ayde of the ch<sup>r</sup>istians, quickly winned the hall of liuing creatures. Meruine seeing this, sayd to the ch<sup>r</sup>istians: Lords, beware that by you no treason betide my fortune, for then shall your vniust<sup>n</sup>nes giue shame to your valures. Since Meruine & Charles, doubt not our trustinesse, who whilst we breathe, wil not faile thy fortune, & when thou art conqueror, be iudge of our liues & deaths as please thee. After these speeches they al issued out of the hal, & assailed the pagans on euery side, who with feare were so surprisid, that they knew not to what fortune to betake the<sup>m</sup>, but cried out: woe alas, Meruine is enraged, he hath forgot Mahomet, & is become a ch<sup>r</sup>istian. Notwithstanding this Meruine and the ch<sup>r</sup>istians pursued them, and as the h<sup>is</sup>torie saith, New 64. in a moment, which not a litle grieved Mermont, who now could not record any meane how to appease Meruine. At last he called Barbin, and with teares besought him to coole the fire of his sonnes wrath: & then they two ioining together, went, & on their knees cast themselves befoze him, whilst Mermont said: since Meruine, for the loue of Mahomet and Barbin thy father, and in ruth of my teares whom sometimes thou hast called thy soueraigne, appease thy iust indignation, and I le sweare unto thee by the

## The first part of

housse of Mahomet to perfoyme thy wil in al things, & if it be pleasing in thy sight, henceforth become thy subiect. By Iupiter, said Meruine, thou hast spoken in a happy houre, Rise father, and rise king of Montment, mins anger shal breake, if my wrongs be amended. Then turning to the christians, he sayd, Princes, returne into the hal, for a truce shalbe concluded, & my wil no moze neglected. So soner had he spoken, but Charles & his peers, returned into the pallace, and Meruine with an angry looke sayd to the pagans: Princes, imagine mee not satisfied, though I shew a relenting: for by my right hand, my seruants death shal not be dismissed, till the proudest of you all, vpon your knees, come & cry me mercy. At this, all the pagans cast themselves on their faces before him, and with one voyce cried, haue mercy vpon vs inuincible princes Meruine, and thy will shall be the law to rule vs and our nations. Here pitie toke place in the eyes of Meruine, and raising them from the earth, gaue to them new peace and comfort. Which done, he bade them arme themselves to guard those christians to the castle on Furgon, which is situate within Montment, where he intended to detaine them till his returne from France & her neighbor countreys, where he ment to ruinate their abbeyes, and burne the monasteries of ancient foundation: this done, they ran & kissed his feete in signe of their subiection, glorying that by him they and their lawes should be so highly exalted. Thus triumphed they with proude hearts, but I fear me within short space they will haue other resolutions: for even now almost is the sacred finger of the diall, vpon the holwer in which Meruine shall know, who is his true father, and the royall descent of his glorious pedigree: a history more delectable to heare, then those iarring tumults already ouer passed.

CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



### CHAP. XXVIII.

- 1 How *Meruine* departing from Babylon, brought *Charlemaine* and the other Christians to the castle of *Turgon*.
- 2 Of the apparition of the angel to *Charles*.
- 3 How *Meruine* knew himselfe to be the sonne of *Oger*, and the fairy *Morgue*.



He history reporteth, that during the time that Meruine was in Babylon (where he brought the pagans and Sarazens to such subiection, that his very lookes commanded them to all humblenes) the good king Charles who many times with zealous admiration beheld Meruine, at last imagined him so liuely to present the image of Oger, that he could not chuse but one day sayd vnto him, prince Meruine, I know not thy descent nor generation, but of what or whence soeuer thou art, beloue me thou doest so liuely resemble the most victorious duke of Denmarke prince Oger, that were but haire discovered vpon thy youthfull chinne, I would haue sayd, thou hadst bene no likely hood, but the selfe same most excellent creature: for of my soule there is not the greatest master painter in the world that can so verely figure his portrait as thine owne lookes: neither disoaine that to him thou art compared, for that neuer put in any battell vnto there pagan, Luke or Sarazen, that by menhood was able to resist him. This most true, sayd duke Naimes, and the twelue peers also.

When Meruin heard this, he sayd, I know not wel my selfe, what my selfe am, but many as wel Sarazens as christians,

## The first part of

who haue seene the duke Oger haue euer compared me vnto him, so that my selfe am in loue with him to whom my selfe am so often compared. After diuers other such like discourses, Meruine commanded the Christians to mount themselves on horsebacks, and then comming to Permont and Gaudisse, he said, I will my Lords that you stay here in Babilon till my returne, whilst I conuey these Christians to the castles of Turgon where they shalbe safely imprisoned, and I will leaue the keyes with beautifull Berea, whome vntill my returne I will make their Emperesse. Prince Meruine (answered Mermont) be all things as pleaseth thee, for willingly we will stay to attend thy pleasure. This spake hee with a seruile humbleness, rather inferd from feare, then issuing from a certaine loue. Thus Meruine and with him 4000. of the best esteemed Pagans toke their journey towards Turgon; whither the heauens and all the gracious aspects of wel pordending Planets happely guide him, because he shal neuer returne to Babilon, till he bee made a diuine and religious Christian, rooting from the face of the earth both Mahomet and all other false gods, and onely lifting vp in most high exaltation the Name of the euer-living I E S V S. So prosperously they journeyd that anon they came within the sight of Permont, where Meruine calling Iacob, sent him before to aduertise Berea of his approaching: who with an entire zeale performed his commandement. And after he was entred to the towne, he ascended the Wallais, where he found the only Starre of perfection Berea, whom with low humbleness he saluted, and reported the comming of Meruine, the bringing of King Charles of France, the twelue Peeres, and diuers others whome his inuincible prowesse had made captiues before the walles of Babilon. Berea hearing this had al her senses so suddenly ouergone with ioy, that from her amazement issued nothing but great woe. But Drohes who sadly had given attention to his discourse, dissolved his hart's

blood

## 175 the historie of Meruine.

blood in water from his eyes, and with extremitie of passion thus exclaimd, O thou true God of glory, how speedily shal the ruine of France fall vpon her bosome, with Charles and the twelue peeres, the columnes that sustaine her, are broken by Meruin, whose vnspcakable magnanimitie nothing hath force to resist! Many other teares of sorrowfull meanings fell from good knight Drohes, who for the loue of Charles famed to pine, with lamenting. Now the day being growne by many hours aged, Meruin and his traine entred the city: thence he went to the Palace where Berea most royally garded came down and met him: betwixt them was an encounter of his delicacie, their armes locking together their lippes, and from their lippes interchangeably breathing their soules into ech others bosome. Many prettie questions they had of ech others safetie, many oracles of their fortunes and many histories of their loues, the legends wherof lasted, till they were returned into the great hall of the Palace. Then were the Christians conueyed to the castel of Turgon, and safely imprisoned, all the Peeres being most disconsolate.

2 Onely king Charles from whom no misfortune would take away the title of a royal spirit, and whose faith in the living God was euer vnmoueable, cast himselfe on both his knees to the ground, and with lift vp hands, and erected eyes thus prayed, Glorious God, that for our finnes and for our saluation boughsatest thy life by thy death and passion, thou that the third day rose againe & ascendedst into heauen, thou that deliueredst Adam & the Prophets which had attended thy conuining: al so, as this is true, & on it my faith is grounded, so I beseech thee be my deliuerer from these gates of ill chance and bondage. When king Charles had made this short petition in honor of the holy Trinitie, he kiss the earth three times. And then as he was in rising there appeared to



## The first part of

him an angel of light, who blessed him with this happy salutation. Noble king Charles, be not abashed, for that power which hitherto hath succoured thee will not now refuse thee, who by my affairs thou, to morrow thou shalt be deliuered by Meruine, who is a baptiz'd christian, and the sonne of Oger the famous Dane: herefore be strong in thy layth and take comfort. At his sayd, the heavenly embassadoe departed from his presence, and the emperor after thanks, rose up, and declared the vision to the nobles, who called home joy to their hearts, and glories in their adventure. Meruine this while was in a private chamber with Berea and Iacob the merchant: & Gratiana the faire had withdrawn her selfe to behold Drophes in another chamber, where he rent his garments, tare his haire, and lamented exceedingly, crying out, that Meruine, in whom vertue was onely beautifull, would be the better overthrow of vertue that had made him beautifull. At his sayd he now shal Truth sleep againe with Oblivion, and Time shall consume in mourning for his daughter. Ha, Charles, Charles, thine affliction is my torment, and thy disgrace the death of our religion. This sayd, he fell downe to the ground, tearing his haires, and with dumbe sorrow exceeded all speaking lamentation. After Gratiana had beheld his infinite tormentings and with-all entering into consideration, that from Meruine issued this almightie mercie, and she the cause why Meruine made them so miserable, without any word speaking, she departed from the chamber, her heart even wounded to death with the ferroz of others mourning, and coming into an arbour whither euery morning Berea was accustomed to come, she there continued all night, vntill such strange actions of vnusuall sorrow, that if some diuine power had not guarded her wees, she had there dispaired & died. Carefully in the morning according to her wont, gentle Berea, came to the arbour, and beholding (ere she approached) strange signes of distemperature in Gratiana, said  
a little

## the historie of Meruine.

a little to see the issue, and with that she heard her say, Thou true God of immortall glory, haue mercy vpon me, whose infinite euill deed is almost run beyond the race of all pittie: and then she swooned, recovered, and freely lamented. After this Berea came vnto her, and demanded a reason of her passion, to whom she said, Ha madam, my torments be worthy no end, because the ill I haue committed is without measure. And then she recounted vnto her all she had done against Meruine, his birth, her rauing, his stealing away, her actiual in these parts, and what besides, whence these ill turnes were succeeded. Alas madam, said she, my sinne is worthy no redemption, nor my sorrow any ease of pity: the rather because I haue from him kept euer obscured this which to you now I haue reucaled, neither dare I at all make knowne his fortune, lest he should kill me for my treason. Therefore madam let your heavenly tongue beare to him the embassage of his birth and linage, whilst from hence I flee into some forsaken desert, where neuer man or woman shall misse behold me or my misfortune.

3. Not so answered Berea, first my loue comfort him and thou shalt make a profitable conclusion if thou wilt stay here and dilate to his eares his sorrow. I will madame, said she, and forthwith Berea went where she found Meruine, about whose necke when she had fastned her armes, she said, Sweet loue, I pray thee graunt me one little little petition. What euer it be said he, it is graunted, be it the greatest thing the world containeth. Then, said she, I beseech thee be not offended with any of thy forepassed fortunes, neither with the causes of thy destiny chiefly with Gratiana, who will repeate to thee the truth of thy descent and pedigree. Why lady (quod she) should I be offended for my birth? I know I am the sonne of a merchant, neither am I ashamed of that linage, because my cyualtie shal ex-

178  
The first part of

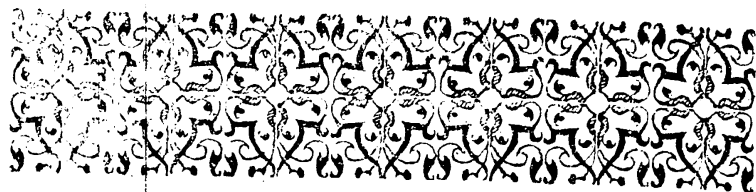
all me higher in the world than the sonne of the greatest  
Potentate. Walking along with these discourses, anone  
they entred into the arbour where they found Gratiana,  
who repeated such stories of his fortune, as cost the lives of  
many hundred thousand pagans and Sarazens: such was  
the valure of Meruine, who by his powerfull magnanimi-  
tie descended euen to the gates of hell, and made the diuell  
obedient to his sword, as shalbe declared hereafter. Grati-  
ana no sooner saw Meruine, but she fel byon her knees say-  
ing; Prince Meruine, immortally haue I sinned against  
thee, and the line whence thou art descended, admire not the  
wonders thou hast atchieued: for thou art by birth a  
Christian, and the sonne of the most famous that euer drew  
sword with resolution, euen the sonne of Duke Oger, the  
neuer to be conquered Prince of Denmarke, who begate  
thee in the fairy land of the royall bozne fairie Morgue:  
from her I stole thee, hither I brought thee, and here until  
now haue I kept in couert thy fortunes: wherefore I con-  
fesse my selfe worthy damnation, sith by me, and by mine  
occasion thou hast ruined both thine owne blood, and the  
glozy of thy fathers religion. When Meruine with great  
attention had heard her, he grew amazed, & bowing downe  
his head, stood dumbe with admiration. At last, desirous to  
be better satisfied, he said to Berea, How can this be? Be-  
lieue me, I cannot trust this new bozne honoz, if it be not  
prooued moze eident. Meruine (saide the fairy, by my  
soule, which sobbs with sorrow in my breast, all that I haue  
said is true, thou art the sonne of the most renowned Con-  
querour of the world, who at this instant is in fairy land  
with the princeesse thy mother. How the great diuell (saide  
Meruine) that conueied thee hither, conuey thee to hell for  
the wrongs thou hast done me, making mine hands the  
murderers of mine owne kin, viper-like eating my glozie  
from mine owne friends destruction: line henceforth bani-  
shed

179  
the historie of Meruine.

shed of sun-shine, and neuer find company but shame and  
darknes: how well hath euery one compared me to Oger,  
making my looks an index to his vertues, Alas, sith I am  
assured of my descent, thanks to the Greatest that hath  
sent me this vnderstanding, whom on mine humble knees  
I pray to pardon the wrongs of my ignorant evils, and to adde  
to my new spirit a new resolution, that these hands of mine  
may teare downe the euill I haue exalted. Turning a-  
gaine to Gratiana he said, Thou author of my ill fortune,  
tell me, am I baptized in the Christian Lawe, or no? She  
answered him that he was, king Orient, and king Arius,  
and the glorious Meruina, from whom his name was de-  
riued, being the witness to the Sacrament. Meruine ha-  
uing weightily pondered on all the speeches of Gratiana,  
his displeasure grew mightily impatient, and he said, Ma-  
licious, auant my sight, and neuer henceforth dare moze to  
behold me: for were it not my lone and oath binde me to  
this goddesse of my seruice, instantly would I execute on  
thee an infinite vengeance. At this angry discharge Gra-  
tiana departed with dying sorrow, from the presence of  
Meruine, and as the history reporteth fled to a wast and un-  
frequented wilderness which bordereth vpon Damatani,  
where she remained, and where we will leaue her till some  
better occurrent reuoke her, and we will procede with re-  
sumed Meruine, who espoused Berea, on whom he begate  
Orient the father of Helias that begate Idain that boze  
Godfrey of Bullen, as it is written in the holy  
Legend of the same Godfrey.

(\*)

CHAP.



CHAP. XXIX.

- 1 How *Drohes* instructed *Meruine* in religion. 2 How *Meruine* deliuerd *Charlemaine*, and the twelue peers.
- 3 How *Berea* was baptized with the rest of the citie, and was named *Mathaburna*, & other accidents.



**I**n most valiant *Meruine*, when (as you haue heard) he was assured of his genealogy, which byed in him no little comfort, and the rather, because he was a Christian, and the sonne of so famous a champion, yet he not a little grieved, that by him the Christians were surprisid and brought to so streight a doze of misfortune, wherefore his sorow strangely increased, which *Berea* seeing, she grew troubled, seeking (albeit in vaine) many wayes to recomfort him: which seeing they auailed not, she went to *Drohes*, and discoursed all that had chaunced, a liuely cordiall that inspired with an inexpressible gladnes, so as without any tarrance, he went with hir to the arbour where *Meruine* lay prostrate on the ground, beating himselfe with extreame languor. *Drohes* beholding the furie of his passion, though at first amazed, yet ran to him, & with true zeale of euer-living intimaie, thus kindly chid him: Ha, qd he, thou glorie of mankind, and flower of chivalrie, whither is the vertue of thy resolution fled, that thou lendst conquest to a weeping passion: What wilt thou in teares drowne thy body, & consume thy soule? Arise, arise, thou excellentest

181  
the historie of *Meruine*.

cellentest of all creatures, and with a liuely faith in the liuing God of Abraham, aske pardon for thy sinnes, and the lambe of peace that redeemed the world, wil wipe out thy transgressions, sith vnder the face of heauen, there is not so boundlesse an offender, as God in his mercy is an almightie pardonner. When *Meruine* had heard *Drohes*, he rose vp, & kissing his hand sayd: thou balm of mine afflictions, & heath to my sicke soule, & pardon mee I beseech thee, the vnlucky slaughter which on the sea I committed where I slew *Galien* thy deere companion, the famous sonne of renowned *Oliuer*, & the other christians, other wise I wil saue that hand which saued them in duty I should haue adored. Thrice deare friend (replied *Drohes*) my inward soule hath forgiven thee, and then *Drohes* sate downe and expounded to him many places of holy scripture, & instructed him in all the points of christian religion, he declared how our saviour had a diuine residence in the sacred womb of the virgin *Mary*, and how from thence hee was deliuered, shee being both a mother and a mayd. When how at the age of thre and thirtie yeeres he suffered death and passion to deliuet mankind from the gates of hell and destruction: and the third day arising from the graue, mounted into the dozes of the highest heauen from whence hee sent downe the holy spirit to inspire and recomfort his apostles. To be brieue, there was no point appertaining to saluation, which *Drohes* did not explaine with most heauenly eloquence. *Berea* that sate by, as soone as she had heard discovered the misteries & comforts of our religion, with a constant and maiestickall modestie, rose vp and sayd: beare witness, that here I renounce *Mahomet*, *Tauergant*, and their *Alcheron*, and desire to be baptized, and embraced for a persister christian. At this they all clapt their hands for ioy, & kissed the skirts of her clothing in token of reuerence.

2 Then sayd *Meruine*, who through *Drohes* instructi-  
ons

## The first part of

ons was both resoluēd and comforted, let vs waste no more time but go and deliuer Charles the emperoz. forthwith they went, and coming into the castle, they found all our Barons heavy and sadde : but the emperoz recomforting them with kingly resolutions. Meruine no sooner came in his sight, but falling vpon his knees, he said, *Reyall king of France, and all you right noble knights of Christendom, pardon me I beseech you, both mine errour and mine offences, to you I will be a liege man and a subiect : to these a neuer failing friend, in the hardest adventures, whom in signe of euer living amitie, I desire to kisse.* Then arose he vp and kissed both the emperoz and the rest, and after he declared how hee was a Christian boyne, and the sonne of Oger the Duke of Denmarke. Many other discourses they had, and infinite reioycings, crying, the sonne of Oger is become a Christian, woe to the Pagans and their false god Mahomet. Then issued Charles and the rest out of the Castle, protesting solemnely the sacke of paganism: By my redemer, said Charles, I will not rest, till I see the Sarazens tremble vnder Ioyous my god sword. As I am proud of my birth and progenie (said Meruine) there is not living a pagan, how redoubted soeuer, but if he refuse baptism, he shall also refuse his life and being. This said, they went into a chamber and armed themselves. Meruine caused a cornet to be winded, at the sound whereof, the 4000. Pagans Meruine had brought with him, assembled themselves in the base court of the pallace : vnto whom Meruine made this brieue speech. Fellow souldiers, admire not my speech, but be ready in your resolues : My will is, that every one of you be baptized, & become a Christian, and he that refuseth, to die the death : chuse either eternall life or destruction. The wonder was not little, that these wordes cast amongst them, yet what through feare of his prowesse, and terror to behold the Christians at euery point

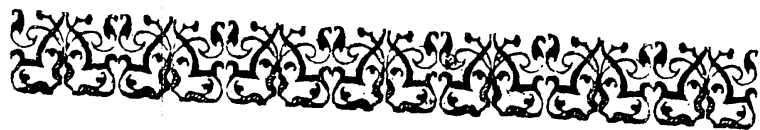
## the historie of Meruine.

point armed : they agreed to obey him, both in the course of life and religion. Meruine commended them, and forthwith gaue them charge to range through the citie, and to put all to the sword, that refused to receiue baptism. The Christian peeres of France were their fore-leaders, that spared neither man, woman nor child, that would not be baptized, so that in lesse than in an houres space, all Montment was wholly conuerted. These things ended, Charles called Meruine vnto him, and asked if he would accept at his hands the honoz of knighthood. My lord answered, it is the onely thing to which my thoughts haue a longing : then kneeling downe, Charles drew Ioyous his sword, and laying it on his shoulder, bade him rise by the most renowned knight vnder the firmament : only be thou steadfast in thy faith, and raise high thy god and religion. Then earthly god of Europe (said Meruine) in the maiesty of heaven, and before thy royall presence, I make a vow, there shall not a pagan moue his foote vpon the earth, if he renounce not Mahomet, and put his trust in the living God. And what he vowed, he effected : for his conquests against the pagans doubled his ouerthrowes against the Christians, as ye shall heare hereafter. Now had the emperoz Charles, Meruine, and the peeres of France, so well managed euery occurrent, that the whole citie of Montment was now wholly in their subiection.

3 When was there a vessell filled with water, which the Archbishop of Rheimes hauing blessed, all they of the citie were baptized therein, and the foure thousand. But before all, and aboue all, the most virtuous princeesse Berca was baptized, not by her auncient name, but by the name of Mathaburna. And when all the ceremonies belonging to that most blessed sacrament was finished, Meruine with king Charlemaine & his peeres, made a progresse through the

## The first part of

the realme, conuerting all to christianitie, for not any durst  
gainst Meruin whose valoure in those parts was almightie  
tyladoze, so as euen to the wals of Brandis, was not left a  
breathing pagan. After this Meruin returned again to Mōt-  
ment, where he was godlike receiued of Mathaburna, who  
amongst other of their priuate conferences, demanded when  
he would espouse her, who returned this answer: Lady god-  
desse, and ruler of my thoughts and wishes, I haue made a  
solemnne oath in the high parliament of heauen, not to mar-  
ry any creature, till I haue reconquered backe all that I  
haue spoiled from the christians, & haue set at absolute liber-  
tie againe, the foure famous brethren and sonnes to the  
god king Gaultier. My lord (replied she) be all thy decrees  
as immouable as destiny, and I will attend the effects of  
thy extremist desire. Thus will we leaue them, king Charle-  
maine and the christians, & returns to Bertran, Guion,  
Thierrie, and Florion, Gaultiers 4. sonnes, who as you  
remember, were prisoners at Damascus.



### CHAP. XXX.

1 How by meanes of *Guida* the daughter of *Baucamont*,  
*Bertran* and his brothers escaped imprisonment. 2 How  
king *Bandus* daungerously assailed them, and how they  
maruelously defended themselves.



**V**ou haue heard in the storie before, how the  
foure gallant sonnes of Gualtier were by  
Meruine, taken and imprisoned in Da-  
mascus: now further in the same discourse  
he saith, that Baucamont had one faire  
daughter

## the historie of Meruine.

daughter named *Guyda*, who with a most perfitte affection  
was inamoured vpon *Bertran*, and for his sake often did re-  
paire to the prison, to doe them honour and seruice, making  
the dayes of their indurance like the houres of a happy festi-  
uall, inso much that on a time, as the brothers were in consul-  
tation, they said one to another, that if they were but well  
armed, they would soone haue the castell at their commaun-  
dement, and doubted not, but the God of heauen would so  
protect them, that themselves would make themselves lords  
of their owne libertie, and in this they found no impossibili-  
tie, sith the Princesse *Guyda* sailed on them with good so-  
tune. My lordes (said *Huon* or *Burdeaux*) I will tell you  
what my soule thinks: had I but halfe the losse-sicke  
thoughts hanging vpon me, which I know that Princesse  
powreth into the bosome of *Bertran*, or would she, but as  
priuately conuerse with me, as I know she secretly swepteth  
her loue to him, I would in one naturall day deliuer both my  
selfe and my companions, yet without impeachment of my  
loue, or touch to her honour. Scarce was his last word ended  
but *Guyda* entred into the chamber, who with a modest  
gravity (the cloud of an impatient loue) saluted them, and de-  
maunded of their welfare. *Adam* (said *Bertran*) my health  
is in the hand of thy mercy: and but thou giue end to my  
sickenesse, there is no creature can preserve me from a sodaine  
dying. When she heard these speeches, with a frosty blush  
of a little wonder, she answered, Prince, repose a while,  
and immediately you shall know, if helpe be in my power.  
Then she went forth and called the Gaoler vnto her, whose  
name was *Corbun*, and intreated him to bring vnto her in-  
to an other chamber the Prince *Bertran*, who was a little  
sicke, that she might giue physicke to his euill. The not mis-  
trusting Gaoler, with lowe bowed reuerence, tolde her, he  
would performe her pleasure, and forthwith called *Bertran*,  
telling him he must goe to the Princesse *Guyda*, who at-  
tended

## The first part of

tended for him. The verie ioy of those wordes made him leape and caper thzough the chamber, whilest Huon with like shew of iollitie followed him. Then saide Bertran, Huon stay here a little till I call thee: Agreid said Huon: Then went Bertran to Guyda, and intreated that his friend Huon might participate of his phisicke, for he is not wel also. Prince Bertran (said the Lady) with all my heart, so he be secret, for feare of daunger. Feare not excellent Adam (said he) for Huon is most loiall, most constant, and most religious. Then the commaunded Corbun to bring Huon vnto her. Adam, said Corbun, I dare not, lest I bring the life of king Bandus in question. Your Ladyship is too bold in these rash aduentures, and nurse mischief in gracing these christians, I fear some evil wil succed this hazard: wherefore if Bertran returne not instantly, I will reueale his being to the king and your kindred. Lady and my deere loue (saide Bertran) if not he, then I will perswade thy pleasure: and in so saying, he drew nere to Corbun: to whom with his fist he gaue so mostall a blow, that he fell dead to the earth, without anie word speaking. When Guyda saw what he had done, she tare her haire, and sorowed without measure: but Bertran embracing her in his armes, whispered suchreconcilement into her eares, that he appeased her passion: and they slumbered in diuine contentment. either from other taking the delight of long wishing heartes, and most deere was their delightes to all Christendome: for in that houre he begat on her a sonne, whose name was called Bar-rant, who was father of Dolifern. Was there neuer creature more cruel or tyzannicall: for that he slew both his father and his mother, and brought vpon Christendome lamentable fortunes as you shall see hereafter. But to returne againe to Bertran: who as soone as he had accomplished his will vpon Guyda, hee returned to his brethren and saide: Princes, now followe mee, if you will reuenge your selues

## the historie of Meruine.

as well vpon the Pagans, as I haue done vpon him who in these walles hath restrained vs. At this they all pressed to follow him: to whom Guyda said, My me Lozers, what madnesse is in your thought: alas what will you do, but overthrow you selues, and my glory? Adam (said Huon) content your selfe, I know Prince Bertran so exceedingly loueth you, that no fortune can deuorce him from you, so you will renounce Mahomet, and become a Christian. Lord Huon (said she) there is nothing I more desire: but it is past my capacite, how our happinesse shalbe contriued. Adam (said Huon) I haue found out the meane: let vs but haue armour and weapons prouided vs, and there is not a Pagan lining that shall dare to denie vs passage at our pleasure. As I am true to my Lord and loue (said she) that shalbe effected, and then she brought them into the castle armorie, where was warre-like prouision. So they armed themselves, and desired Guyda to condux them into the bed-chamber of king Bandus: to which she consented. But a certaine vassall Pagan ouer-hearing them, without tarrying ranne to the kings chamber, who then was a slepe, and beating at the doore, cried: My Lord the king, treason, treason: and thy death, if speedily thou doest not abandon thy chamber, the Christians are in armes, who fly with wings of malice to worke thy destruction.

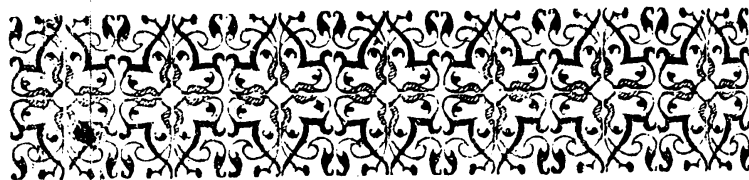
2 King Bandus hearing this rauen-song, rose vp, and calling his Nephew, said: We are betrayed, let vs fly for our succour. At this they ran forth of the chamber, and came into a garden, where finding a little turret, they mounted into it, & thencecried, to armes: and raised a mightie alarum, their voices sounded thzough all the pallaces. The christians entered into the kings chamber, but could not find him. Then went they from chamber to chamber. and slew the Pagans, with whom they encountred: in brieft they slew in their serch

aboue



## The first part of

aboue an hundred persons, and then helde the castell at their owne disposing. After this they descended to the gates, and thence sallying forth they were incountred with king Bandus, who with many bands of approued souldiers, gaue them a couragious onset, betwene whom beganne a sharp, fearefull and bloody battell: but the multitude of the Pagans so infinitely increased, that the christians were enforced to retire backe into the castell, which in despite of the Pagans they did: then fortifying their gates they ascended vp, on the walles to defend them: if they should be assaulted, which in dede was done most valiantly on euery part, but the christians defences were so sharpe and dreadfull, that the Pagans preuailed not at all in their fury: Now God of his mercy be their defender, for their quarrell is iust and lawfull.



## CHAP. XX XI.

How *Meruine* after the conquest of many citties went to *Damascus* to deliuer the foure brethren. 2 How *Charlemaine* refused *Meruines* company, because of *Huon*. 3 Of the great battell betwixt *Bandus* and the Christians.



Done after that, *Mermont*, and the whole realme about it was by *Meruin* conuerted to christian religion: king *Charles*, the twelue peeres, together with *Meruine*, made their expedition into the other countries bordering therea

the historie of *Meruine*.

thereabout, where they conquered more then seure hundred cities and castles, bringing all to the knowledge of Christ *Iesus*. Which done, they tooke shipping to make to *Damascus*, and *Meruine* saide, flie swiftly you labouring hounes of the day, and bring me with double speede to *Damascus*, that I may both confesse my errour, and deliuer from bondage my thrice excellent kinsmen, the foure famous brethren, and that renowned *Huon* of *Burdeaux* so percerlesse in his actes of chivalry.

2 So sooner had *Charlemaine* heard him name *Huon*, but a mountaine of disemperature sent an ocean of angry blood into his face. And he said who, is then that monstrous traitor *Huon*, the false murderer of my deare sonne *Charlot* in *Damascus* too: even by my crowne, and soule of my deceased father, I will bathe Joyous my sword in his heart blood. Brother (said *Gautier*) then will the world at be a villainous title to thy glozy, because thy selfe brakest the covenant thy selfe made. You haue banished him your realme, and thence he is departed. To me he came for refuge, and to me he hath done those immortall seruises, that while I breathe, I will neuer forsake him. By my scepter (saide *Charles*) *Gautier*, thou hast neuer bene so brauant vnto me, neither hath thy selfe, nor any of thy line bene so full to my proceedings: wherefore, if I be *Charles* of France, thou shalt not long raigne *Gautier* of *Denmarke*. By my ueraine (saide *Naymes* to *Charles*, why are you thus mightily beread? Behaue me, *Huon* is a noble gentleman, both wise and valiant, whom if he did you eill, forgive him because it was honorable euill. But if your displeasure stretch beyond mitigation, yet smother it in this place because you are bound to reuenge it no where but in your own kingdom, and the rather, not now, because we are but the followers of Prince *Meruine*. *Naymes* (saide *Charles*) thou addest faell

## The first part of

to my fire, because thou thinkest neuer again to returne into Fraunce: but if thou doest remember, I am Charles. Meruine haile angry at these still debates, went about to appease them, but finding his labour effectlesse through Charlemaines wilfulnesse, he said: My lord and emperour, sith my oratory is so harsh in your eares, know that neither for you, nor for your displeasure wil I desist or breake off the enterprise I haue undertaken. And then turning about Gaultier, (who knew the Emperours anger was most against him) intreated Meruine once more to sollicite Charles to accompany them to Damascus: but Meruine by no meanes would be perswaded, but taking his colours into his owne hand, marched away without morespeaking. Charlemaine on the other part who was highly enraged against Duke Naymes, and the twelve peers, because they forsooke him to follow Meruine, departed an other way, hauiing to God and his own soule, to lay waste and ruinous, the flourishing country of Denmarke, vntill Gaultier on his knees came humbly to aske him forgiveness, and to begge part on for relieuing the damned murderer of his sonne: In this agony of high displeasure, Charles marched so incessantly day and night, that at length he arriued at Maience, where, in despite of Gaultier, he began to burne and destroy the country: where we wil leaue him, and procede with the actes of Meruine.

3 After the departure of Charles, Meruine made such expedition, that in few dayes he arriued in the country adioyning to Damascus, where he began to conquer and conuert the nation till he came within the sight of Damas. It hapned that a certaine currier Pagan, who had beheld the doings of the Christians, posted with all his power to Damascus, and comming befoze king Bandus, he saide: My lord and soueraigne, to armes, for, befoze the morning starre shall againe be seene in the heauens, I assure you, you shall be bid  
strong

## the historie of Meruine

strong and fearefull battell, a mightie army of the Christians I haue discovered, whose looks and resolutions are both stout and valiant. Meruine, who lately hath renounced our faction, is the foremost leader, with him Gaultier, of Denmarke, and diuers others, onely king Charles of Fraunce is absent, who (as I vnderstand) for some private displeasure hath abandoned their companies, and is returned to his owne territories. Bandus was astonied at these words and charged the Pagan vpon his life that he spake nothing, but what truth would iustifie. My Lord (replied he if I lie, let me die the death for further, Montment, and with her almost 200 other cities are conuerted to christianitie, euen the princeesse Berea her selfe hath renounced Mahomet, and is baptized by the name of Mathaburna. Where then (said king Bandus) is Mermont her father? At Babilon answered the Pagan. This while arriued an other Pagan king named Gorbant, who hauing intamped his hoste in a meadow, arriued himselfe at the pallace at such time as the pagan was discovering the approach of the Christians. This Gorbant came to behold Guyda, the estimation of whose beautie was renowned through all Asia, whom as soon as Bandus saw, he solemnly receiued, & the more, because he was known for the most absolute valiant pagan that the liued, whose age then had accomplisht but thirtie: and by his means Bandus flattered his hopes with assured conquest. After diuers embracings, seeming knots of true amitie, Bandus declared the coming of the Christians to besiege Damascus, & with perswasive arguments intreated his aid, stirring him more with inuering against Meruin, who so lately had renounced their god, and Alcheron. To all his intreaties Gorbant gaue willing eare, and consented, bowing his uttermost induors for the release of Damas. All things concluded vpon Bandus commanded an alarum throughout the citie, and hauing assembled his men at armes together, he issued out

## The first part of

of the portes in warre-like maner, and soynng his troupes with the troups of king Gorbant, made one almost impregnable armie. The Christians this while were on the soreside of a great wood, through which they speedily passed, and ordered battaille Gaultier looking vpon them, and seeing the diuersitie of their ensignes, he said: God God, what strange nations are yond that come to encounter vs? A chyzilian hearing him, made answer: (for he of olde knew the coate armour he beheld, my Lord yond strange iolious you see, of my knowledge belong to king Gorbant: hee whose valour and excellent approued prowesse, hath placed him higher in ffames booke then any Pagan whatsoeuer: whose courage make dreadlesse of men, though he be assailed with many legions: Is it true (said Meruine) that he is so wonderfull in the deedes of chualrie? Powe to God I make a solemne protestation, that if I can but encounter him, I will teach him such a bloudy Letanie, that he shall willingly become a chyzilian, and bitterly curse the first houre of my natiuitie: this said, they marched forward, and the Pagans likewise: to whom king Gorbant made many orations of honour & valour, and encouragement, debasing Meruine, and reuiling, his backe-turning from his first knowne religion; but those railings will beate on his owne crest, and his mind will be changed if Meruine liue, and Entrant hold his vertue. When the armies were readie to ioyn: a young squire named Thyerrie, came vnto Meruine, & made humble petition, that for the honour of his God, he might be the first to giue the charge in that battaille. Meruine in loue with his forwardnesse, bade him passe on, and be fortunate. At that word Thyerrie thrust spurres to his horse, and comming euen vnto the face of the Pagans host, he saide: What is there neuer a Pagan amongst you, that hath the spirite of valour to encounter me (who haue contemptuously renounced your false God Mahomet, and sworne to adoe no name but

## the historie of Meruine.

but the euertling Iesus) or trie the breaking of a lance in his religious quarrell? Traitor quoth the Pagan Troulart, who was nephew to Gaultier) Behold, tis I will giue thee battell, and scourge thee for thine ouer-daring. And so saying, he disranged himselfe, and brake his launce vpon Thierrie with a gallant spirite: but Thierrie did returne him backe such an encounter, that ouerthrowing both horse and man to the ground, the Turke had neuer againe risen, if one of his fellow Sarazens had not stotone in to his rescue, who all at once assailed Thierrie with crueltie while he defended himselfe gallantly vntill the Christians came to his succour: then beganne the battell to be fierce and wonderfull. The renowned Meruine broaching the braue mare Mordant, ranged amongst the Pagans like an hunger-starued wolfe, or an intraged Lionesse. Drohes with many acts of admiablie chualrie that day seconded him. There might ye haue heard such clamors, such noyse, and tempestuous outrage, as if the clouds had resigned to the earth a greater power, than the power of their thunder. In the middest of the battell Meruine met with Thierrie, the valiant son of Bouchier, whom for the valor he expressed in the first encounter, he embraced about the necke, & after kissing him, gaue him the sacred order of knight hood, saying: Happfull blome of a happy issue, this houre I giue to thee vertue: which vertue will cease to flourish, when as it leaueth to exalt the name of Christ Iesus: and then departing from him, Thierry thrust himselfe amongst the Pagans, where he shewed his valour to be augmented by the honor he had obtained. Gaultier all this while made great slaughter of the enemies, being inflamed with a double furie: the one of reuenge for wrongs forpassed, the other of desire to see his foure sonnes, who during this battell were in the pallace at Damascus, which by the meanes of Guyda, they lately conquered. Guyda, with whom Bertran in-  
ioyed

## The first part of

ioyed all the howres of loues contentment: and were now  
recreating themselves vpon the leades of the Castle, from  
whence they might distinctly heare the clamors of the bat-  
tell. Insomuch, that calling vpon his brothers, he saide:  
Princes, what noyse is this I heare about the citie? As if  
not like the meeting of two inuincible armies? Belieue me  
I cannot a little wonder; they all admitted as much. Then  
ascending vpon higher into a heauen-kissing turret, whence  
they might measure the confines of all the country adioyn-  
ing, they beheld the battell, and knew the ensignes dis-  
played by each party. When cried out Bertran, This day  
shall we be reputed shepheards, if we conceale our selues  
within these walles, whilst our countrey men and kinne  
be fore the citie, for our sakes maintaine a dreadfull battell;  
for shame let vs issue out, or for sweare our names, and the  
ancient disposition of our natures. Guyda hearing this,  
wringing her hands, and with be-teared eyes, than which there  
could be no better Orators besought Bertran to stay: but  
he euer resolu'd in honourable actions, made answer he  
would quickly returne. But Guyda from whom all hope  
and reliefe was cryed, would not giue credit to his words:  
but with teares of the bitterest displeasure could be harbo-  
red in so faire a mansion, said he abused her: but if Mahound  
were Mahound, she would reuenge herselfe of his shameful  
departure. Leaving her in this agony, the princes departed  
easily out of the gates of the castie, because the garders of  
the same neither saw or heard her toymenings. And when  
they were passed by, the Porters would haue locked the  
gates, but Bertran, whose spirit was madee for his lone  
Guyda, with his sword vaine, came to the chiefest which  
bare the keyes, and gaue him such an vntreouerable blow,  
that he fell dead to the earth. Willaine (said Bertran) the  
duell take thy soule, I will be thy Porter whilst thou ta-  
kest thy rest. This scene, diuers other Pagans assailed  
him:

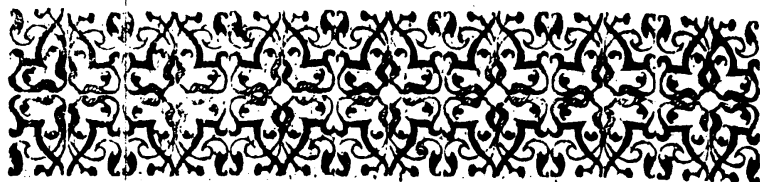
## the historie of Meruine.

him: but his brethren, and the valiant Huon, brought to  
him such powerfull rescue, that in lesse space than an houre  
they had sent thirty to sleepe with their forefathers. The  
pagans seeing this, fled from their violence, and they mar-  
ched to the battell: whither as soone as they were come,  
they cried with one voice, Archristned dogges, this is the  
domes day, and last of your glories: and then beganne to  
shew the vnspeakable wonders of their high valours, with  
such admirable deedes of armes, that the Pagans knew  
them as well by their chinahie, as if their faces had bin ba-  
red. Now hat they disperced the battell, and the Sarazens  
beganne to turne their backs: insomuch that the young  
Princes beheld and knew their father Gautier; to whom  
they came, and falling on their faces, adored him as they  
earth-god, and second meane of creation. When Gauti-  
er saw his sonnes, his vnspeakable ioy would not let him  
speake, onely silence was his best embassadour of boundles  
contentment. When Huon saw this equall contention of  
Natures purest loue, he brake their passions with these  
words: My isds, banish these slow salutes, and  
thinke on these deuotres. To armes the pa-  
gans ere, their deaths must be our glo-  
ries: that done, we shall haue  
time to discourse of pas-  
sed fortunes.



CHAP

196  
The first part of



CHAP. XXXII.

1 How the Pagans were ouerthrowne, and the Christians went and conuerted Damascus. 2 How *Meruine* went after to Babilon, where *Mermont* and the other Pagans for feare of him, fained to receiue baptisme. 3 Then how he went to Mequa and Ierusalem, and conuerted them to Christianitie.



**A**t this speech of Huons, the foure brethren departed from their father, and thrust themselves into the battell: leauing vndying leggers of their ever-living renolune: Yet in the heat of the conflict there was a pagan called Gryffoy, of wonderfull great valour, and worthy every way, except for that way, which should gouerne all wayes, all the exquisite titles of a compleat man at armes. This Pagan well taught by pzoofe the greatnesse of the Christians spirites, with a battle-axe which he brandished in his hand, he stroke a Christian, called Adrian, so mighty a blow, that he chined him to the breast: and after him, another, and an other, till he had laid ten breathlesse vnder him. Bertran giuing ayme to this slaughter, grew so impatient to behold his countrymens effusions, that turning his sword aloft, he came and assailed Gryffoy with so mighty a stroke crosse the helme, that cutting away his plume, he entred more than an inch into his breuer: and with the blow so astonished the pagan, that at that instant he had cut off his head, if an infinit number of pagans had not inuironed

197  
the historie of *Meruine*.

uironed him, and assailed Bertran with numberles blows, and desperate resolutions: insomuch that they forced him to recoile for his safety. Then came Huon, and diuers other Christians, who retained Bertran, and that in a lucky houre: for then was the battell most sharpe and doubtfull: there might you haue seene many knights on euery side ouerturned, horses wounded, and men at their wittes end: some flying, some dying, and some amazed. The gentle knight *Meruine*, this while on the other side of the field, approued his valour to be strange and vntresistable: for he lost not a blow, in which death had no interest: so resolute were his proceedings, that now the pagans were at the conclusion of their glories, and had beene wholly discomfited, if the valiant king Gorbant, in that very houre had not arrived with an armie, which by the eyes account could not be lesse than a hundred thousand: king Gorbant marched before his army, mounted vpon the beast *Montehaut*, which was valued before all the horses in *Wainme*: and like to lightning gaue a charge vpon our Christians, breaking their ranks, and dispersing their battels, so as in lesse then an houre the Christians had almost lost the hope of their good fortunes. for Gorbant ere he brake his lance, brake the neckes of by Christians: and with the strange valour he was adozned, so gallantly behaued himselfe, that the common sort of Christians were not able to indure him, but beganne to fle. But *Meruine* ashamed to see their dishonours, demaunded a reason for their flight. To whom one of them, whose name was Vincent, made answere. My Lord, there is newly arrived some Gogoz diuell, in the habite of a Pagan, whose force is so vntresistable, and his blowes so huge and insupportable, that from his handes issueth nothing but our deaths and destructions. I pray the said *Meruine*, with all speed conduct me to the partie. Not for a kingdome my Lord (said Vincent) for he is altogether

## The first part of

gether invincible, and mine eyes shall die if they behold him. At these words Meruine would not stay, but thrust him selfe amongst the Pagans to finde out Gorbant, who was then in the pzenie, and had newly encountered with knight Drohes, whom he beheld respectuely, and the rather, for the beauty of the gallant steed Marcheull, so that he saide vnto him: Boy, descend from that worthy horse whereon thou art mounted, lest while I chastise thy folly, I wound the horse, with whose comeliness I am highly delighted. Drohes hearing himselfe so basely intitled, with a reuengefull furie loyned himselfe to the Pagan, and stricke him thwart the helme with all the puissance he was able, yet made the Pagan moue no more than an oake or a mountaine: in requitall whereof Gorbant repayed him so heauy an interest, that the blow slipping from his beauer, descended vpon the horse, and cut his head from his shoulders so that the good beast Marcheull fell vnto the ground in a moment. Drohes more astonished with wonder than with feare, lightly raised himselfe againe, & drawing his sword, said: O God, this pagan is undoubtedly strong, who hath slaine my horse, but if I die vneuenged, let my knight hood forsake me. This said, he ranne against the Pagan, led by a tempestuous fury, but was prevented for striking, by meanes of Monthaut, who with the thundering noise of the horses feet, came running thither: and also at the same time came Gaultier, and sundry other Christians, who with all their powers assailed Gorbant, which with so excellent resolution defended himselfe, that the stoutest strained curtesie to approach him: yet notwithstanding, in that time Drohes had so gallantly bozne himselfe, that he had now recovered another most famous horse, vpon which being mounted, he came to assaile Gorbant, that even then had brought to the ground all that incountred him, giuing such vigour vnto the dead spirites of the Pagans, that the christi

## the historie of Meruine.

christians were almost amazedly vanquishd. During this homage, Meruine was on the other side of the field, where he appoynded his diuine excellencie of valour vpon king Bandus and his army: whose numbers being numberles, stroke the beholders into admiration: whereas alas the christians were but xxv. thousand at the beginning, and now but ij. thousand at the conclusion. At which Meruine grieved not a little, being neuer to returne, if either he got not a crown for victorie, or a tomb for buriall. When doubling strength vpon strength, he so lion-like ranged among his enemies, that euen as the corne befoze the shearers sickle, so fell the pagans one vpon an other, dead and discomfited: not to dwell long in this discourse, so immortall was his valour that the pagans were halfe dead with the astonishment of this glory.

In the end, as he ranged to and fro, he arrived in the place where Marcheull lay slaine: which when he sawe, and knowing him both by his largenes and beauty, he immediately imagined Drohes had there written the last end of his lifes Legend, so that not able to suppress sorrowe growne in his breast, Giant-like almightie he cried out, alas, alas, art thou gone my loue, art thou dead my champion: be my life caried, and heere banish the praise of my knight hood, if I tyrant-like reuenge not this infinite unhappinesse. This said, like vnto a peale of thunder, or to a stormy tempest in the middest of winter, he ranne amongst the Pagans, euen from one side of the field vnto the other, and where he espied the greatest number, thither flew his greatest furie, the which he dispersed, so like vnto a forsaken flocke, that being at their mittes end, they knew not which way to turne them. In the highest of this tumult, Meruine espied Bertran to be dismounted from his horse, who being on fote, maintained a more then knightly combat against Gryffoy, and an hundred other Pagans,



## The first part of

Pagans, to whom also he halloved this encouragement, Beauty of thy fathers house, this day shall be thine ownes festiuall. Take courage, take courage faire Prince: for the Pagans lie distraught and vanquished. These cordiall speeches so liuely vttered, inspired Bertran with such new spirittes, that bearing himselfe against a Pagan, he strooke horse and man dead to the ground without word speaking. The next to him he likewise dismounted, and arresting his horse, leapt into the saddle, effecting wonders in the pagans destructions: who like kids from the wolfe ranue fearefull at the sight of Meruine, seeking by running, the staine of Honour, to saue that which should maintaine hono<sup>r</sup>. Meruine, like himselfe passed from ranche to ranche, and neuer staid till he met with king Bandus: to whom he gaue a blow, that he cleft his shield to his fist, and made it fall to the ground: which the king fearefull to recouer (death being a greater feare) betooke himselfe to flight also. Princely Meruine passed along, to find out Gorbant (the onely excellent amongst his enemies) bowing vpon him to lay the burthen of his wrath. And as he was searching, he encountered Thierry the sonne of Bouchier: vnto whom he said, Faire yong knight, knowst thou if neare hercabout, be that famous pagan, who this day had beene our vengeance and halfe destruction. O, if thou canst, shew him me, and make me happy. Follow me, said Therrie, and then they went together, making Death their seruant smothe their way to the place where Gorbant was, who had that day bene the ruine of the Christians. No sooner was Meruines eyes fastned vpon him, but boyling with rage, he thrust forward to strike him: but the Pagan turning himselfe from the blow like the falling of a mountaine, it fell vpon the gentle knight Therrie (whose ouer haiste valour bare him twixt them,) with such and so great infortunacie, that it ouerthrew the man, yea and claue the horse into two pieces: which

## the historic of Meruine.

which to Meruine was no small grieffe, who grew madde to reuenge his owne murther: but Gorbant by that wittnesse, knowing his pitifulle omnipotentie, and seeing his army flee from him on euery side, thrust his spurs against the sides of Monthaut, and in a moment was fled from the presence of Meruine, who all alone stood wondering at his flight, and his own mischances. The pagan made his flight towards Damascus, his burning heart desirous to haue possession of the beautifull Guyda, in whom he had placed all his affection, whom hee finding, after many embayres, he mounted her on his horse, and bare her to his ships. Guyda not repelling much his inforcements, because as then she was offended with Bertran, both because he had most unkindly left her, and was also one of the sonnes that had slaine her father, and the rest of her royall kinred. Thus fled king Gorbant, who met with Bandus, Gryffoy, Grifoner, and with ten thousand Pagans, all which, to saue their liues, were fled to the sea side, vnto whom Gorbant cried, Away princes, away, for he that is tardy in flight, shall be first and swiftest in his death. At this speech, feare lent wings to their heels, and they all imbarcking themselves, gaue their safeties to the mercy of the sea. Those which remained behind, the Christians put to the sword. When the chase was finished, our Christian Princes went towards Damascus to assault it, but the Citizens issuing from the portes, brought the keyes, and with submission deliuered them to their mercies, so that Meruine, Gantier, and the rest of the Christians entred, who by means of that battell were not above 200. After they had repased themselves a while, Gantier called vnto him his foure sonnes, and said: Princes, know you to whom the offerings of your honour is due, or who it is that from the dayes of your unhappiness hath restored you? beholde, it is this princely and heroike Meruine, the sonne of your renowned vncle duke

## The first part of

Oger, and then he discoursed at large to them the wonders of his prowess, the taking of Charles, the overthrow of the twelve peeres, and al their imprisonments. To be short, he ran through all the chronicle of Meruines heroicall actions, and how Charles discontentedly was returned into France for the hate of Huon. Huon hearing that word, as rackt with his owne infortune, he said: **O** God, when shal the houre come to bind me in perfitt peace with that famous emperor? Huon hauing thus said, he, Gautier, & the soure brethren did honoꝝ to Meruine, who returned them praise for praise, thanks for thanks, vowing to aide them against their enemies. This was the ioy vnspokeable among the Christians, making houres like minutes vanish by they pleasures. Next morning, Meruine caused all the citizens of Damascus to be christned, and whose refused, to be put to the sword. This done, he caused all the countrey adioyning, to come in, and be baptized: whereto all the nobles accorded. These things finished, Meruine called Florion, and said: Cousin, for thy beauties sake, I giue thee this cittie of Damascus, and the whole realme about it, accept it kindly, as I giue it willingly: and then he made all the nobles and citizens swear homage and fealtie to his Crowne: and for a gard to his person, left him those 200. Christians, which the sword had preserued, mustering for himselfe out of the citie and countrey two thousand that hardly before had boꝝn armes.

2 After that nights repast in the citie, Meruine, Gautier, and the other princes departed from Damascus, and marched to a village two leagues from Babilon, where remained Mermont. Gaudisse, who by many intelligences knew al the famous deeds of Meruin, and how he was then come to besiege them, of which they stood in feare, called a counsell together, where they disputed what way was best

for

## the historie of Meruine.

for their safeties: Princes said Mermont, our arguments must be brieue, and our resolutions speedy, for otherwise we shall lose our inheritances with our disputations, and our liues by slouthfulness, for well we know Meruine is wise and inuincible: for my owne part, to mee hee did the greatest indignity, though I were the first that made mountanous his honoꝝ, for he hath slaine my men, baptized my daughter, yea, and will espouse her, if heauens preuent not my disgraces: yet so I know him replenished with true fortitude, that it is impossible to withstand him, if treason be not an agent of our deliuey. This true god Gotham, who was newly arriued in that city, it behoues vs to search out any mean for the restitution of our God and religion. The meane god Mermont, I haue already inuented, and we will all be reuenged so, that habes vnborne shall speake of his miserie, and this it is: we will all hang forth the ensignes of peace, and submissiuely yeld to his pleasure, bow at his feet, and flatter him with fained obedience: we will conclude against our religion, and take vpon vs that they call Christianitie: and that he may the lesse mistrust vs, shalbe proclaimed through the city, our conuersion: what will of this issue, shalbe his ruine. The pagans applauded this resolution, so they arose, and hauing effected what they would, took the keys of the city, and marched forth with great ioy towards Meruine, who so soone as he sawe Mermont and thother, he turned to Gautier and said: Behold with what ioy the pagans appꝛoch vs, bearing in theyꝝ handes witness of peace: How blessed is this conquest that is without effusion, and how glad am I they are so easily conuerted: Alas his innocency thought not of the treason they had inuented. By this they were come eyther to other, whilest the pagans falling vpon their knees before Meruine cried, Welcome, **O** ten times happily welcome is Meruine, the sonne of inuincible Oger into this countrey. Then bespake

**O** 2

Mer-

## The first part of

Mermont : A he most wise, most strong, and valiant Prince, living in this of the immortall world; beholde, we fall downe before thee, ready to receive and acknowledge thy lawe and religion: every one most desirous of that celestiall happinesse, who already have renounced Iupiter, Apollo, and Mahomet, under whose shadowes we have bin miserably conducted. When Meruine heard these words, he was joyfully contented, more than at any time before he had bin, thinking that came from sincerity, which indeed was nothing but treachery: wherefore embracing euerie seuerall prince in his armes, seuerally he said to Mermont: neuer did your Highnes your selfe so glorious reputation, as in believing in the immortall God immaculate Christ Iesus. And thus you have made me the blessed workeman of this high dignitie, henceforth, as I haue euer bin, holde me for your owne knight and true subiect. Many other ceremonies was betwene them: and then they marched on to Babylon, whose walls were replete with ioy, triumphs, and banquetting. Then was a solempne festinall held, and the Temples most sumptuously adorne. Then was Mermont and all the other pagan Kings baptized, who unwillingly went willingly to the sacrament, comforted onely with treason and false infidelitie.

3 When all the kings and citizens in Babylon were baptized, Meruine went thence to Syria, where in an hours space he caused all the country to be baptized. Which done, he went to Jerusalem, where easily he accorded all the citizens: for albeit they were conquered, yet they had not forsaken christian religion only doubtfull at the first, not knowing Meruins conuersion they fained to adoze Mahomet, but knowing his will, they sone cast away that base believing. These things thus effected, the gentle Meruine returned to Babylon, & made all the country bordering there about

## the historie of Meruine.

about become Christians: and whatsoeuer before time he had grafted in hell, taking paganisme: for ioy whereof the Christians made many holy daies, singing hymnes in his honour, protesting him to be the renownedst that ere was borne of a mother. But on the contrary part, Mermont lay working his imaginations, how to worke vengeance on him whom the heavens so exceedingly loued.



## CHAP. XXXIII.

How by treason *Mermont* brought *Meruine* to *Minor*.  
2 How *Gantier* after the departure of *Meruine* went with all his army to *Montment*, where he found *Mathaburna*, to whom he tolde how her father was become a christian. 3 How *Mermont* spake to *Butor* to imprison *Meruine*.



It hapned after Easter, that on a certain day king Mermont resolved to worke mischief on Meruine: and calling him to him, so blindfold his eyes, he said: Sonne, it is not knowne to me that affections twixt thee & my daughter, the which is an vsuall ioy to my imaginations: wherefore

## The first part of

wherefoze fith no better god can make better my happines,  
 I besech the let me know the day of thy espousalls, a day,  
 than which nothing is moze desired. My soueraigne king,  
 said Meruine, let the day be at your Highnes disposing:  
 and if it so seme pleasing, let vs to morrow rather than to  
 day passe to that desired coniunction. Willingly (qd Mer-  
 uine: yet befoze, of necessitie we must go to Minor vnto  
 the Quene my sister whom by a soleinne oath I haue gi-  
 uen assurance, that I will my selfe in person come to inuite  
 her to these gorgeous nuptials, because my daughter hath  
 euer bin most deare in her regarde and estimation: as for  
 your army, that way is. Gautier conduct befoze to Pont-  
 ment, and take order for all preparation woorthy in so great  
 a solemnity. Well hath your Maiestie said (quoth Mer-  
 uine) let euery thing be so disposed, and in the morning  
 they and we will take our seuerall iournies. Willingly qd  
 Mermont, imagining with himselfe to bring Meruine to a  
 place whence he should neuer be restored. After this Mer-  
 uine called Gautier, to whom he told his resolutions, in-  
 treating him to conuey his army to Pontment, his soule  
 to his Ladie and Mistris, and his happinesse into her bo-  
 some. Gautier at the first was amazed, and besought him  
 not to bee too much too trusty: and Drohes tolde him hee  
 was suspicious of some euill, vnder this extreame familia-  
 rity. But Meruine, who adiudged euery thought by his  
 owne thinking, perswaded them otherwise, insomuch that  
 Gautier, his wife, his sons, Huon and Drohes, together  
 with the army, imbarcked themselves for Pontment: and  
 Mermont, Meruine, and a troop of traiterous confederats  
 likewise took shipping for Pinoz, fortune being so fauou-  
 rable to mischance, that in short time they came to their wi-  
 shed landing.

Then mounting vpon their hoxses, they took the way  
 that

## the historie of Meruine.

that led to the city, in which we will leaue them and return  
 to Gautier, and the other christians, who doubtfull of the  
 mischieses that folloved, made such haste, both by land and  
 sea in their iourney, that in short time they came to Pont-  
 ment, where they found the miracle of Nature Mathabur-  
 na, who reioyced at their comming. But when her eyes  
 were not halowed with the sight of Meruine, her ioy con-  
 uerted to feares, and she demaunded of Gautier, where hir  
 loue, her life and substance remained: forthwith Gautier  
 reported how her royall father was baptized, and consented  
 to her espousalls: to which end, he and Meruine were gone  
 to Pinoz, to fetch her aunt to be a glory to the festiuall.  
 When Mathaburna heard this, that her father was bap-  
 tized, she praised God: but in that he had carried her loue to  
 Pinoz, thence issued doubts, feare and suspicions: and too  
 is me, it was not without strong reason, for the place was  
 dreadful and impregnable, the description wherof follovs,  
 as is set downe in stories. Pinoz, as antient Chronicles do  
 testifie, from whence this historie is deriued, is very strong-  
 ly situate: It hath at the foure corners foure most high  
 rockes or promontories, of which, one exceedeth all the o-  
 ther in height and hugeness, from whence descendeth a  
 mightie riuer named Dye, most wonderfull deepe, rough,  
 and contagious, it is guarded vpon each side with a cou-  
 ple of rockes, betwene which euery one must passe to the  
 citie, by a narrow way but five fote in breadth at the ex-  
 tremity, neither is there any way save that onely: the hi-  
 story saith, that in the time of king Pharao, these rockes and  
 this riuer were made by Magike art, and this city named  
 Pinoz founded as a thing impregnable: for it hath befoze  
 the entraunce foure ports or passages strongly garded, the  
 first is Auster, and it hath a Pagan named Auroufe, sell a  
 powerfull continually to defend and keepe it.ouer against  
 it is an other of the same strength, defended by one euen as

## The first part of

strong and sufficient. The third is of a more terrible fashion than these: for the gates are of yron, and next it a tower, whose height seems to touch the heavens. After one hath passed that gate, whose name is Tombare: they enter into Rhinor, a beautifull citie, washed upon euery side with the river Dbe. Mermont and Meruine, by this time were passed through the first port, who was much abashed to behold so strange a passage, and such workes of wonderfull resistance, demanding diuers questions of their hugeness: in the end they incountred with Auroufe, who knowing Mermont since the byying of his sister into those parts, let him passe in peace, and Meruin also. Thence they came to the second gate called Baucair: which when Meruine saw, he demaunded what diuell of diuelish waies that was, and when they should come to the city; Faire son (qd Mermont) you are abashed at these entrances: yet be content, and we shall easily overpasse them. Then they went till they came to Tombar the last port, whose ghastly proportion made Meruine wonder more than before: and demaunded what fury of hell had exalted that Tower to threaten heaven, sure it must needs fall, it cannot long indure. Yet (said Meruine) for that the masonry is both strong and exquisite: and the rockes of each side as supporters do maintaine it. By my soule (said Meruine) this is a vilainous situation: for I see not any way to issue or enter but this only. 'Tis true qd Mermont. Neither is there any creature whatsoeuer, that enters within this portcullis, that can repasse without the leaue of king Butor, or Gaia-my his sister. This said, they came to the yron gate, thorow which they passed, al the porters doing them great reuerence. Thus farre hauing gone, they came into the fairest and honourable city: which to behold, Meruine mightily reioyced, because till then he went in worse than starre-light. A certaine pagan went before to king Butor, telling him

## the historie of Meruine.

him the approach of Mermont. wherefore he arose to go meet him, but his son Marant would not but withdrawing himselfe into a private chamber, sat musing what occasion should drawe thither his uncle, one while he thought he was come to take vengeance vpon him for the treason he had committed against Meruine at Pontment: for which Drohes had slaine Calix in combat, as was before written: other whiles he did imagine other occurrentes: but the traitor Mermont, as false as himselfe was faultie, hadde not one thought so nere a kinne to honestie for only his coming was to doe endamage to Meruine, because he adored the true god, and renounced their false prophet Mahomet.

3 Now was Mermont come into the court euen to the kings pallace, where he found Butor and others of his Barons that were come forth to greet him. Kingly was their encounter on both sides, and much ceremonious the largeness of their accomplishings. Then came the queene, being sister to Mermont, betwene whom were strait and dore embraces: with her was also her daughter, one of beauties best superlatiues, named Singlay: to her was Mermont kinde and full of obseruance. Gratulations finished, to the testimony of welcome, entered, and the pallace rung with clamours of delights and contentment. Supper by this time was ready and royally serued, where full bowles and rich arcates adorned entertainment. When supper was ended and musick came in and the gallantes of the court betooke them to dawning, amongst them Meruine taking Singlay, danned with her a stately measure: during which heavenly motion, Mermont, Butor, and the queene, held a solempne (though damnable) counsell, about the ruine of the euer to be regarded Meruine, Mermont auowing the occasion of his coming, to be for nothing, but to beholde his better destruction: and thence he dilated his byying vp, and adventures,

## The first part of

a adventures, his conquestes, triumphes: and lastly, his backsliding to Mahomet, whom before he had adored, withal affirming his baliance to boundles, and not to be resisted, that he would some subvert the whole estate of their religion. Wherefore good king and my brother, said Mermont) it not behoueth (to whom Mahomet hath given power of con- trolement) to imprison him and kepe him safe from further defacing of his temple: s. But if by any meanes he wil again be converted to our faction: then assure thee, so strange is his resolution, that we shall be monarches both of France and all Christendome, with most easie adventures. All this while Meruin was dauncing without thought of insidit: courting most honourably the beautiful Singlay, whose heart with his excellencie was euen then made a receptacle of loues brightest fire, and she was inflamed with his love: so much preuailed the gift Galliana had giue him at his first hearing. Thus we will leaue to speake of them, and pursue the discourse of Mermont and Butor.



### CHAP. XXXIII.

1. Huon Meruin was most traiterously imprisoned, and the description therof. 2. How by the persuation of Mermont. Butor went with 100000. Pagans to Montment. 3. How Minea aduertised Gautier and the other Christians.



When Butor had vnderstande the uttermost of Mermonts intreaties, hee replied, my deare brother, touching the actions of this bassall, be you as guardlesse, as I am fearelesse: for this night when he is laide to his rest, & wearinesse shall

## the historie of Meruine.

shall summon sleep vpon his eyelids, with a band of men he shall be strongly assailed, bound and conueied into a care-keeping dungeon, which sometime was founded by a conturer diuel, and diuels commander, named Mutasier, where he remained 200. yeares as I haue heard credibly reported, because he sought to supplant the wise Merline, and frame the world to his owne liking, into this vast place of misery for vengeance Merlin damned him: in which there is nothing but horror, feare and desolation, the bottomlesse riuer Orbe making his current ouer the rounse of the wofull mansion: into this, if once the bassall come, there is no redemption, nor hath any creature power of deliuerance: for so Merlin enchanted it, who bound the diuelish Mutasier beyond the power of all other contriuation: till such time, that by bloody bow, and execrable protestation he swore euer to beat his best and commandement, not daring to wrong body or soule, without his authoritie. And then was Mutasier, enlarged, and euer after made free from that dungeon. Into this place shall this Meruine be conueyed: neither will I rest till I see it fallie brought to passe and finished. After all reuels were ended, forches were brought to conuey the princes to their lodgings: so enery one seuerally departed: and Meruine was brought into a most sumptuous chamber. where after he was laid, and had lockt vp his eyelids with a sweete slumber, thirtie Sarazens entred his lodging, and armed not so much with courage, as the flap. death-like sprinkled vpon him, at once assailed him, and bound him hard and fast, and blindfolded his eyes. At which Meruin awaking was mightily amazed, but not knowing any remedie, was patient forcibly. Then began the bassalls of shame to remile him, saying: Trayfour thou shalt curse the time that euer thou renouced Mahomet, or bathed thy sword in the blood of a pagan: for hence springs thy ruine, and their relieuerie. Then came Butor, who caused him to bee cast into the fore-mentioned Dungeon, where



## The first part of

where he was chained by the handes and fettes, and receiued his iudgement, that he should neuer be free from that calamitie, till he renounced the eternall God of the Christians. To which he made answer: *Forsooke, and no kings, my God will I neuer forsake for affliction: neither shall my life endure to thinke wearisome these torments which I endure for my Saviour, whose loue I will not leaue for all the worlds triumphs, my soule being deare for these deare oppressions.* At this Butor departed, leauing Meruine accompanied with none but sorrowe onely, with whome hee consoled the space of five yeeres in extreme miserie. Now was the gift giuen by Gratiana at his birth fully accomplished, and hee pent in that prison where teares were pittifull though incessant: after many bemoanings he made his prayers vnto God, & besought him to haue mercy on his afflictions. Then came the deuill Mautasier, and transforming himselfe into many likenesses, tempted him with damnable protestations, promising if he would renounce his baptisme, to redeeme him from his wofulnesse. But his faith resolued was euer immouable, so that Mautasier seeing his perseuerance, left to expostulate with more temptation. Where we will leaue to speake more of him, or his wretchednes, and discourse a little of Morgua his mother, of Meruina his godmother, & Galiana, that princeliest fairies that gouerned in Faeria, whose grieue abounded for the imprisonment of Meruine, inueying most mightily against Gratiana, whose gift made him subiect to this misfortune. After many complaints Morgua sayd to the other ladies: *Princesses, you vnderstand the wretchednes of my sonnes case, euen for vertues sake consent to sweeten some houre of his bitterness, with delight which I haue deuised.* The three will take ech of vs an instrument of musicke, and go into his dungeon (the cloister of carefullnes) euery day an houre, at such time as Mautasier shall be absent, and with some chanson of delicacie minister toy among his sorowes,

## the historie of Meruine.

sorowes, concealing our selues from his eyes, onely inriching his eares with melodie. To this the Ladies gaue a free consent: so that doing accordingly, they entred vnsane into the prison. At whose appoach, a most strange light spred thzough the dungen, in so ample maner, as it there had bin an hundred torches burning. At which diuine action, Meruine was wonderfully amazed: Amazed only to see that he saw nothing. Instantly after the light, the ffaeries began to play heauenly notes (the mourning aire of celestiaall musicke) that it was impossible for sorow to abide where such sacred tunes were recorded: and he in whom languor protested to haue tenure of fee-simple, proued the plea false: and that at all he had in him no interest. After they had thus played, and Meruine had shakt handes with extremitie, they returned to their owne habitation; not forgetting euery day thus inuisibly to visite him, to the high amazement of his sences.

2 But againe to returne to the traiterous king Mer-mont: He bawnced that he came to king Butor, and in most earnest maner intreated him to muster vpon his people: and with the greatest power he had to march with him to Spontment, for that there lay Gautier of Denmarke, his sourse sonnes, and almost all the floure of Christendome, in expectance of Meruine, whom vniawares they might ouerhye to and bring to finall destruction. To this Butor agreed (for ill by ill is easily tempted:) and forthwith commaunded Commissions to be sent abroad, for the gathering together of his power. When there was assembled to the number of an 100000, he armed them and departed from Spinoz, travelling so restlessly both by land and by sea, that in twentie dayes he came to Brandis, and by the will of God, the author of happie fortune, the two false meaning kinges lodged in the house of Minea, where they held a solempne and tedious

## The first part of

tedious councell howe they might enter Montment, and in despite of Meruine put to su oꝝ Gautier, and the rest of the Christians. All which disputations came to the eares of Mynea, who drawing aside the Loꝝ Chamberlaine of king Mermonts household, in humble manner intreated of his loꝝ shippe, to know where, oꝝ what was become of the most famous Meruine. Adam (says the noble man) he is inclosed in a place from whence hee shall neuer finde deliuerance. And then (as if he were with child of those troubles) he discoursed all the estate of infortunate Meruine, both the reuocation of his first religion, his true parents, and kingly pedigree, his conquests and vnluckie betraying, and withall, how the most principall of his aliance were gathered together at Montment. expecting the espousals betwene him and Berea, and how the king his maister, and Butor, meant to present them with a sudden and vnluckt foꝝ slaughter.

3 When Minea, not without sighes, had heard him comment of these actions, shee smiled, least her lokes should be blabbes of her intentions: and then taking leaue, departed from him, and went to her chamber, where immediately she indited a letter, that contained what her eares had receiued: and deliuering it to a most trustie messenger, gaue him especial charge to beare it to Montment, vnto Barbin the merchant. All which the messenger effected, not ceasing till he came vnto the kings pallace in Montment, where finding Barbin, hee sayd: Venerent sir, to you I am sent, from the vertuous Ladie Minea, that so intirely loneth Meruine, and from her present these lines to your iudgement. When Mathaburna heard him name Meruin, she started, and inquired what tidings. To whom Barbin made no reple, but deliuered the letter to Gautier, who read it: which containeth this that followeth.

To

## the historie of Meruine.

### To the Princes of Christendome, health,



Now (excellent Lordes) from me vncomfortable Ladie, that in vaine we expect the returne of most absolute Meruine, whom hencefoorth I feare againe you shall neuer see, the griefe whereof is burdenous to my weary soule. And further, be aduertised, that it behoueth you to stand vpon your best guard; for that foorthwith you shall be infinitely assailed by an hundred thousand Pagans, conducted by Mermont, and Butor of Tabarie, who solemnely haue sworne your death on their religious Alchiron: looke then to your selues, and loue her that in dangered her life to do you seruices.

Minea of Brandis.

When Gautier had read the contents of this letter, than at that instant he was nere more vehemently perplexed, tearing his garments, and making despaire and wrath one intire bodie: but better to be resolute, he asked the messenger if certainly those tidings of miserie were true oꝝ no. Was my good Loꝝ, replied he, and the mightie host is euen now at Brandis. When arose Iacob and saide; Princesse I am a witness of the incomparable loue the Lady Minea bare to exquisite Meruine: wherefoꝝe I knowe shee writes nothing but truthees fearefulness. When beganne euery one to sorowe foꝝ Meruin: but

## The first part of

but farre above all and beyond conceit, were Mathaburnas lamentations, who wringing her handes, bzeaking the golden threades of her celestiaall haire, and the sacred vestures, that shrouded the paradise of her features, thus cried: O sorrow. immozfall sorrow, what shall I demanda: miserie, or death: both are too little. True God, in whom my faith so lately is grounded, give counsaile to my woes, for my heart is lost: O moze my life, nay most my spirite, nay a, bome all that, the most swete, most wise and, most louely creature of the world. Marke heauens what I now before you, if his loue faile, my loue shall haue ending: for but him, not any shall harbour in my conceites: if he die, I die: if he liue, he shall finde me such as he left me. Thus tormented she her selfe: but alas, such are her hard starres, that before she see him, she shall be compelled to die, or denie her religion, which indeede she did: yet it was but womans faintnesse, as heere after shall be at large declared.

## FINIS



# MERVINE;

*The second part of*

That most famous,  
worthie, and auncient Mother of  
*all Histories, the exquisite Historie of*  
Prince Meruine, the son of Oger the Dane,  
who conquered Ierusalem, Babylon, and diuerse o-  
ther Cisties from the Pagans, with many me-  
morable accidents of wondrous  
consequence.

*Qui sera sera.*



AT LONDON

Printed by Ralph Blower and Valentine Sims.

1612.



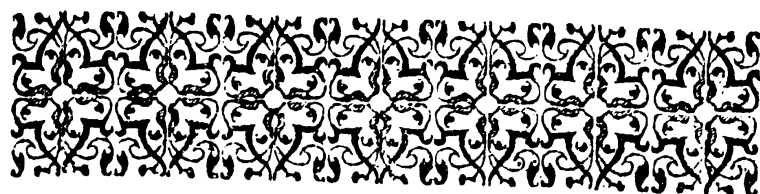
# The Printer to the Reader.



**I**T is a common custom among Writers and Translators (in a well penned prologue, iust like an old Song, whose burthen goes to, (I beseech ye beare with vs) to sollicite their Readers for so much fauour as to vse good words, and haue patience, to omit defects, censure mildly, & so forth. Now I acquainted

*To the Reader.*

quainted with none of these vaines  
for excuse, and indeede thinking  
them all in vaine, (in the Tran-  
slators absence) I keepe the forme  
of an Epistle, though follow not the  
fashion: onely intreate those that  
delight in Sories, to looke on the  
delights in Meruine. Which if  
they vouchsafe for my pro-  
fit, I will venture more  
for their plea-  
sures.



# The Table of the

## second Part.



How Mermont, Butor, and the Pagans ima-  
gining to enter vnawares within Montment,  
were inclosed by the Christians. 2 Of their dis-  
comfiture, and the great battell wherein Ber-  
tran did wonders. Chap. 1.

Gautier the Dane with 20000. followed Butor and Mer-  
mont to Minor: 2 of the skirmishes and taking of Nubia,  
Turquants death. 3 Bertrons policie of surprizing of Mi-  
nor. Chap. 2.

Bertran passed all the gates, and Drohes with him also:  
2 of the prowesses they shewed against the pagans: 3 how they  
were taken prisoners; and put to the keeping of the faire  
Singlay. Chap. 3.

Gautier raysed his Siege from Minor, and came to Nubia.  
where hee repayed his Armie: 2 how from thence hee came  
to Luternia, where hee found Iacob, who discoursed the for-  
tunes of Montment: 3 how Gautier went before Montment,  
and tooke it againe by meanes of Iacob. Chap. 4.

Of the gallant life that Bertran and Drohes led in Mi-  
nor: 2 of the Tourney which was proclaimed for the loue of  
Singlay: 3 of the private wonders Bertran did. Chap. 5.

Marant accused his sister Singlay: 2 how Bertran made  
the pagans beleene he would renounce Christianitie: 3 how  
P 3 hc

## The Table.

he undertooke to combat against Marant. Chap. 6.

Bertran and Drohes (under the pretence of paganism) brought fortie thousand pagans before Montment: 2 how the most part of them were there confounded and put to the sword. chap. 7

An Ambassadour came to Gautier, who brought him word, that the Emperour Charlemaine had destroyed all his country of Denmarke: 2 how Drohes went to deliver Meruine: and how Gautier arrived at Maiaunce. chap. 8

Of the great battell which was betwixt the Emperour and Gautier, in which Charlemaine was taken prisoner: 2 how Loys the sonne of Charles came with a great power against Maiaunce to revenge his father. chap. 9

Barant (surnamed the Cruell) departed from Montment with three hundred thousand Souldiers, and passed the Seas towards Maiaunce: 2 how Charles and Gautier made a peace, and ioyned against the Pagans. chap. 10

Bertran and his brethren, Loys and the other Christians issued upon the pagans: 2 the deaths of all the famous Christians except Loys: 3 of the battell betwixt Barant the Cruell, and Bertran of Denmarke. chap. 11

Loys came to Maiaunce and reported the woful estate of the Christians, and the sorrowe Gautier made for his sonnes, 2 Singlayes sorrowe, and message Barant sent to Charles; together with the answer: 3 how Barant slew one of the messengers. chap. 12

The Christians gave battell to the pagans, in which turne the good King Gautier was slaine, and his hoste overthrowne: 2 Charlemaine is forced to retire, and issues out the second time, 3 The taking of Loys, and Duke Naymes prisoners. chap. 13

Drohes and Adain traiailed so long in unfrequented places, till they found out the true meanes for Meruines deliverie: 2 how Drohes combated with a Griffon for his love

## The Table.

love Adain.

Drohes spake to Robaster touching the deliverie of Meruine: 2 of Malabeon of Luron Robasters father that gave counsell in the action. chap. 14

Robaster deceived king Butor: 2 how Meruine was delivered out of prison, and went to the pallace where he slew Butor, his queene, and divers other pagans: 3 and of the great battell he maintained. chap. 15

Meruine Robaster, and Drohes arrived in a wood amongst robbers: 2 of the dangers they were in: 3 how Malabeon ayded them: 4 how they slew the theenes. chap. 16

Meruine and Drohes went to Brandis, and converted the Countrey: 2 how they came before Montment, where (in the Battaille) Drohes was taken, and brought into the Citie: 3 how Mathaburna (before the pagans) menaced him. chap. 17

The city of Montment was taken by the meanes of Mathaburna: 2 The deliverie of Drohes out of prison, and other accidents. chap. 18

Barant challenged combat of Charles himselfe alone against three or foue: 2 how he overcame all the five. chap. 19

Meruine incountred Baham the sonne of Belmarine with 10000. pagans who were foraging, who were all conquered except three: 2 how Baham renounced Mahomet: 3 how the three that escaped reported the action unto Barant, who slew one of them for bringing such euill newes. chap. 20

Barants hundred thousand were overthrowne by Meruine: 2 how Bertran then came with all his host, except three hundred, and marched against the Christians. chap. 21

The single Combat betwixt Meruine and Barant, and of Charles and the other Christians, and the overthrow of the pagans. chap. 22

Meruine married Mathaburna: 2 And of the great solemnitic at Maiaunce for ioy thereof. chap. 23

chap. 24



## The Table.

Mutafier deceived the Fairie Gratiana, and begotte of her a monster named Orke, who had three heads : 2 And of other accidents. chap. 25.

The king Turniquant of Oriam assembled a great number of his people, and went in ayde of the Orke : 2 how hee destroyed all Normandie and Brittain : 3 and of other occurrents. chap. 26.

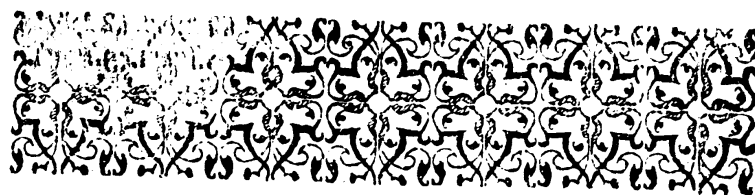
King Charles had intelligence of the King of Englands coming : 4 of their assault on both sides : 3 how Meruine came, who had reconquered againe all that the Orke had wonne : 4 how Mathaburna gaue charge, that no man should speake of the warres before Paris : 5 how an Angell appeared to Meruine. chap. 27.

Meruin undertooke Combat against the Orke : 2 of the Fight, and the Orkes death, which brought rest to the Christians. chap. 28.

Meruine tooke leaue of Charles and departed : 2 how he went to Ierusalem, and thence was conueyed into Fairie. chap. 29.



## the historie of Meruine.



### The second part of

The most ancient famous mo her  
of Histories, the exquisite Historie of  
Prince Meruine, the son of Oger the Dane,  
who conquered Ierusalem, Babylon, and diuerse o-  
ther Cities from the Pagans, with many me-  
morable accidents of wondrous  
consequence.

#### CHAP. I.

How Mermont, Butor, and the Pagans imagining to enter vnawares within Montiment, were inclosed by the Christians : 2 Of their discomfiture, and the great battell wherein Bertran did wonders.



Autier hauing receued these tidings (the happie armor by the which they were preserued from a shamefull death) gaue the messenger in guerdon of his paines, a cuppe of golde, desiring him to recommend the perfection of his seruices, to the most kind and louing Lady Minnea, whom hee would honour and adore : and after other complements, dispatched him, and departed. Butor and Mermont, the waking Dragons of impietie by this time were

## The second part of

were departed from Ezandis, and now by sea were come to the port of Lutetia, two leagues from Pontment, the which the christians armed themselves to encounter them, having intelligence by their espialles that passed to and fro of their neare arrivall: and Bertran coming to his father, besought his maiesty to deliver him a regiment of the best soldiers, whom with himself he would lay in ambushment in the woods. Bontbras till the pagans were passed by, and then at such time as the maine army should charge them in the faces, he behind would equall the encounter, and not doubt but to put all to the sword in a moment: his counsell was held currant, and consented unto. Now came the pagans marching with silent carefulnes, thinking halfe in a slumber to surprize the citie, but they were prevented, for Gautier met them with a well ordered battell: the proportion consisting of three battallions, the first conducted by Guyon, containing five thousand, the second by Huon of Burdeaur, being five thousand, and the last by himselfe also five thousand, so that the maine was fifteen thousand, besides ten thousand that lay obscured with Bertran. As the pagans passed by the wood, Bertran took a perfit view of them, and smiling, he saide unto Drohes who was his companion in that stratagem, Behold with what hast these pagans pass to their misery, see, see Drohes, dost thou see that gallant beast the foremost is mounted on? by him that gave me life, this day I will give him thee for a present, a seate worthier of thy seate than an infidelious recreant. At these words Drohes looking carefully, sawe Butor mounted on the bzaue mare Mordant, sometimes the delight of Meruine, which with grieve made him stand as if he had bene thunder-strucke, till rage appeasing sorrow he saide; No armes, to armes, prince Bertran, let me die if I doe stay any longer, and see a traitour in triumph ride on the gallant Mordant, worthie none but her master invincible

## the history of Meruine.

invincible Meruine. This saide they mounted upon their horses, and sounding a Cornet, which was a signall to Gautier of their coming, issued out of the woods, and charged the rearward of the pagans thorow and thorow, which Butor beholding, commanded an alarum, and saide, Courage gallant resolutions, and be not abashed for this handfull of christians, whose pride, not provesse makes them desperate; and at this they turned upon their enemies, where one might have scene Bertran beare honour from every other creature, and coming to him that rode on the gallant horse he had promised Drohes, with the first blowe he smote him dead from his saddle, then taking the steede delivered him to Drohes, saying, My promise this day is performed, and my word justified: at that Drohes with humble thanks dismounted, and mounted on his new gift, then they two thrust themselves among the pagans, Death like a gentleman vther passing before them, giving to the battell, a feareful, and miserable beginning.

2 Gautier, that on their faces shoulde, now on their backs was inforced to charge them, in which shooke Huon shewed his provesse to be most invincible, in that might it selfe wanted might to resist him, he slew infinites, and left innumerable wounded amongst the rest he slew the nephew to king Gautier, whose death whilst his uncle pursued to revenge, he made forfait for his owne life. Dreadfull, and somewhat doubtfull was the battell a long time, because the pagans were an hundred thousand, and the christians, but five and twentie thousand, who notwithstanding by their wisdomes (the best weapons in warfare) in the end became conquerours. Marvellous this day were the actes of Bertran, making Conquest in love with her selfe, because hee loved her. Guyon his brother was not short of infinit praises, who in the hart of the battell shewed himselfe lord of all hearts,

## the second part of

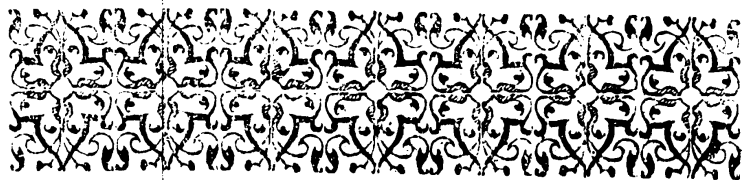
heartes, and encountering a kinsman of Butors, he slew him, at the sight whereof a whole band of Sarazens assailed him crying, thou diest this day, no valor shall release thee, and then rushing all with one furie, they bare him from his horse and toke him prisoner: but as they were intending to present him to king Butor, Bertran that then was commen into the strength of the battell, and by the tumults of the pagans, suspecting they had tane some prisoner, all enraged and grieued he turned to the preease, making euery hinderer of his way a companion to his graue, till hee saue them who led his brother Guyon bound in honours dishonourable setters: which when his eyes affirmed as true witness, led by a vertuous lunacie, he slew in among them, and strake him that held his brother such a blow, that hee claued him to the breast, after him, another, and another, til Guyon was at libertie, then giuing him an excellent sword (the present of delight) they two brothers beganne a strong battell against fiftie Pagans. Guyon in reuenge of his wrong cloathing his sword in the heart blood of the Pagans. By this time came passing by them the Seneschall of Iabary, whom as Bertran was about to encounter, he saide to preuent him: Wey, desist, and let me passe by thee, for I will adiourne thine ill fortune, till I haue slaine him who hath killed my brother, and then if thy life be weary I will end thy breathing. Pagan, saide Bertran, thou and thine intents are so farre asunder, that I must needs talke with you before your passe so goodly a iourney, and then turning aloft his sword, hee assailed the Seneschall with such delicate vertue, that in an instant he sent him to sleepe with his great great great grandfathers father, then arresting his horse, he gaue him to his brother Guyon, who mounted thereon in the battell did most maruelous actions, crying, Honour for heauen and Denmarke, which wordes gaue life to their souldiers, and reuiued the halfe dying wounded,

## the history of Meruine.

deed, so that the Pagans vnable to resist any longer, betooke themselves to flight, and were utterly discomfited: which when Butor beheld, and comparing his huge hoste with their slender traine, he called Mermont and saide, My lord of Montment, I see it is impossible by fortitude to regaine your city, so highly are the Christians enraged and so miserable the chaunces of our euill fortunes. It is true, it is very true, answered Mermont, the Sunne-shine of our glorie is wained, therefore let vs flie, till Time pferre better aduentures. This being spoken, they betooke themselves to flight towards the sea coast, which their army beholding, like distraught men flew here, and there, and euery where to saue their liues, whilest Bertran, his brothers, Gautier, and Huon follow the chase, putting to the sword all that were ouertaken so that of an hundred thousand that were at the beginning of the flight, there escaped but foure hundred, who with the kings entred into their shippes, and betooke themselves to the Sea, railing and curling the great courages of the Christians, who after the chase ended returned to the place of battell, where it was admirable to beholde the fine multitudes, who lay one vpon another swimming in their alone bloods, whose current was mighty, like to a flowing riuer: amongst the Pagans was found vnspeakeable riches, which gathered together, the Conquerors returned victoriously and triumphantly into Montment, hauing lost of their owne army but only ten thousand, they were royally receiued of Mathaburna, who all that day had prayed for the rare successe of their good fortune, because thees feared if the Pagans had preuailed, either her life or happy dayes should vndoubtedly haue quailed. Gautier by certaine prisoners he had taken, vnderstode all the manner of Meruines imprisonment in Pinoz, whither Butor and Mermont were fled, wherefore he protested before God and his holy saints to

## The second part of

to follow them, to which end he sent proclamations round about the realme of Montment, to summon all the princes thereof in his aide, and the rescue of the most worthy Meruine, whose loue was so infinite in those parts, that presently there was numbred twenty thousand absolute appointed knights knowne most valiantly couragious, which with exceeding joy Gautier with himselfe embarked, taking also with him diuers Pagan prisoners to conduct him the way to that receptacle of hozroz, that Academie of misfortune, damnable Minor.



## CHAP. II.

- 1 How Gautier the Dane with twenty thousand followed Butor and Mermont to Minor.
- 2 Of the skirmishes and taking of Nubia, and Turquants death,
- 3 Bertrams policie for surprizing of Minor.



Aut'er the Dane, his foure sonnes, Huon of Bardeaux, Drohes, and with them twenty thousand redoubted men at armes, being aboard their ships, hoysed vp sailes, and knitting all their hearts in one thought, protested in the sight of God to pursue Butor so incessantly, that if he took but a breathing rest in any place, they would undertake him and bid him new battell so on they sailed til they came by a goodly cite called Nubia, whose governoz was king Turquant, who at that instant had left the towne to conduct

## the historie of Meruine.

conduct and conuey Butor on his way, to whom he was allied by a knot of affinity, Mermont and the other pagans being passed by a weeke before.

2 When Gautier understood whose towne it was, and vnto whom it appertained, hee immediately landed his men, and vowed to assaile it, the which hee did, taking it with small or no losse to himselfe, but infinit to his enemy, for he put man woman and child to the sword, that refused to be baptized. Which done, he drew out of the new baptized, a regiment of the best reputed, and left behind a garrison of his owne souldiers to fortifie and keepe the Citie, and then departed on his way towards Pinoz: in which expedition he was so speedy, that he attained a wood but six leagues from thence: where, as his army was reposing, they might beholde the king of Nubia returning from the conduct of Butor, and with him five hundred souldiers, whom when he saw, they swore, vlesse they were Christians, they should neuer escape them. Which a citizen of Nubia hearing, saide, My Lord, it is Turquant our late king, that euen now is returning homeward from Pinoz: At that word Gautier set his men in order to charge him. Whilst Turquant surveying them fetcht a deepe sigh, and said, Princes, this day I leaue we shall espouse our euill fortunes, for I see men prepared to giue vs battell, yet are their nations and colours vknowne to vs: yet, what, or whosoeuer they are, wee must and will be our defenders. These words were spoken so faintly, that his armie like men halfe dying, cried for a truce, saying, they were but reedes, and vnable to indure the stormes of so great an army. But as they were in speaking, Gautier set vpon them, and flew the most part, the rest flying about the fields here and there for succour, which they found no where: the sight whereof was so irkesome to king Turquant, that in a mad rage

232  
The second part of

rage he strake a Christian, even in the presence of Bertran, such a mighty blow, that he fell dead at his feet. Which when the vertuous prince beheld, he assailed the pagan so courageously, that with the first blow he divided the union betwixt his head and shoulders: then forthwith were the poore remnant of the pagans taken prisoners, who for their liues safetie, promised to receive their soules safetie, I mean baptisme. Then demaunded Gautier, where they had left king Butor and Mermont, and they tolde him in Pinoz, preparing an invincible army to returne withall to Pontment. By the health of my soule said Bertran, Ile blocke up that way, and, if I live, least my selfe in his pallace at Pinoz. Alas swete sonne (said Gautier) how shall wee possibly be so happy, when the entrance of our passage is but five fote broad, and that most dangerous? Deare father, answered the Prince, esteeme not fearefull descriptions, for I have invented how and which way, to make both our selves commanders of the towne, and princes of their destructions: and thus it is.

3 I will arme my selfe in the armour of this dead king: and mounted on his horse, spread out his now unfortunate colours, and with such like company as he was attended with, Ile march towards the towne, into which I know I shall enter easily, because they will imagine me to be the king of Pubia: which I will no sooner have effected, but I will gard the gates with such carefull resolution, that famoused, so that in all the haste it was put in practise, and five hundred Christians of the best respect were armed both your Highnes and your army shal have easie passage. This stratagem was much commended, and his wisdom with the Pagans armours, amongst whom was Gautier, Huon, and Drohes. When they were come within thre leagues of Pinoz, Gautier left the grose summe of his ar-

me,

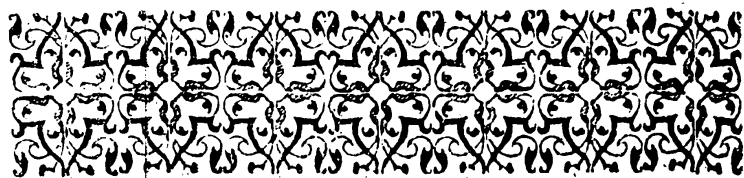
233  
the historie of Meruine.

me, and with the five hundred marched till they were passed through the first port of the citie, which was governed by Aroulle, who taking Bertran that marched on the head of the troope for the king of Pubia, saide: My Lord, will your Maestie returne againe? And Bertran answered, he would, for he went but only to speake with the king Butor his kinsman, promising him at his returne, a gift should for ever make him rich: the pagan gaue him humble thanks with doglike reuerence, and so let him passe. And when his army was gone by, he turned to Aroulle and drawing his sword, said: Traitor, this is my treasure, and here com's the reward I promised, and with that he sticke him with such vertue, that well might haue clest a rocke of Marble: but to the pagan it did no hurt at all, because he was clothed in the hide of a serpent, which sometimes was the armour of invincible Robaster, who now lived a Hermit in the woods there adioyning, where he continued ever since he forsooke the faire Guerin of Pontglaiue at such time as most famous Charlemaine came besage Vienna, which by faire Guerins meanes he conquered, for hate whereof Robaster would haue slaine him: but that Guerin guarded him from mischief, for grieve whereof he was so enraged against her, that he swore neuer hereafter to doe her service, and so led by discontentment, came into those woods, and there building an hermitage, lived, and was fostered by his father Malabeon, casting away his serpents skinne, as intending neuer more to be seene in battell: yet he miscomceined, for he must be the ayder of prince Meruine, as you haue heard before, when shalbe the will of the heauens. But letting these digressions passe, we will returne to Bertran, who after the first blowe, the pagan toke a bar of yron, and with it gaue him such a requitall, that he made him reele, and almost fall from his horse, had not Drohes upheld him, to the no little shame of Bertrons remembrance, who calling

againe

234  
the second part of

againe his strengths together, gaue the Sarazin such a blow that he bowed one of his knees to the ground in submission, yet his body vnwounded could no way be tainted. Drohes beholding this, charged the pagan, and brake his lance, but did not hurt him: Huon did almost, but as little preuailed, to their wonder, and his greater pride. Bertran at this amazed, dismounted himselfe, and closed with the pagan: whome by cleane strength he threw downe to the ground backward: then alighted Drohes, and lifting vp the head of the serpent, with his sword made a passage through his body, by which his soul fled downward to eternal darknes.



CHAP. III.

How Bertran passed all the gates, and Drohes with him also, 2 Of the prowesses they shewed against the Pagans, 3 How they were taken prisoners; and put to the keeping of the faire *Singlay*.



When the pagan Aroulle was slaine (a charitable: deede for Christentome) Bertran threw him into the river Orbe, and then marched on the narrow way till hee came to the second porte, which he likewise passed, killing the garde thereof, and throwing them into the river, but when Gautier saw with considerate eyes, the straitnesse and daunger of those passages, he perswaded the Princes to retire, saying, Honour lost his honour by daring beyond the

235  
the historie of Meruine

the conceite of power: those waies in which none hardly coulde goe, but endangered, were tell tales of their destructions, therefore whilst time was, wished them to vse the time of their deliuerance. My gracious father saide Bertran, I beseech you bee not so suspitious, for if my selfe alone, and but terme with me passe, of my life the Colone shall be surprized. It is too great a masterie saide the king, therefore be councelled and returne. For shame my gracious father (saide he) let vs not, hauing gone thus farre, returne scared with imagination, the cittie will take mee for the King of Pubia, and that shadowe will defend vs. At this both Drohes and the rest cried, forward yong prince, this day we will be thy followers, and then they passed to the last gate, at which Bertran knocked desiring entrance, saying it was shame by day to keepe their Cittie thus restrained: and for his owne part, ere his Cittie of Pubia should be feared, he would hazard tenne thousand daungers. When the Porter heard Bertran, he went by vnto a loope-hole, and seeing the christians so well ordered, saide to himselfe, there shall no more enter but the king of Pubia himselfe till I haue aduertised King Butor my lord and maister, and then descending, he opened the Portall, desiring Bertran to enter: who saide, Willaine, why dost thou not open the gates for my traine to followe mee? Noble king of Pubia (saide the Porter) be not displeased, for my deede is my Kings commaundement, which broken, my life is forfeited, neither may I suffer any to passe, be he of his nearest linage, but if it please your Maiestie I will aduertise his Highnesse and bring you answer. Doe saide Bertran, and tell his Highnesse I am returned to discourse of some private things I forgate at our departure: at this the porter closed the gates, and went to the pallace, where he found Mermont, Gontor and Butor his soueraigne, to whome he declared the backe returne of the King of Pubia.



## The second part of

bia and his traine, and his desire of entrance. Of my soule (said Butor) he hath incountred with Gautier and is thus chaf'd backe againe go let him enter, but first summon all my men at armes, to be in readines to pzeuent pale destiny, and let but one besides himselfe onely haue passage in. At this awayment the porter, told Bertran the Kings decree, notwithstanding offering him to passe, hauing before appoynted certaine souldiers aloft to let downe the portcullis when the King and one other were gone by, Bertran and Drohes alone entred and then the pzen gates were closed, which had smal contentment in Bertran, who drawing his sword gaue the porter such a blow, that he claue him doونه to the teath.

Those aloft seeing their companion slaine, they said not a worde, but fortified the Gates, with all that was in their power, so that Bertran and Drohes now were lockt vp in the towne, for whom the christians sorrowed exceedingly, but they most valiant in the most extremitie, trotted by the stretes most couragiously, Bertran saying to Drohes, come, let vs to the Kings pallace if none gaine stand vs, if any doe, be our swordes his buttall, for so shall we either saue our honours, or escape daunger. This saide, with their swordes naked in their handes, they passed towards the pallace, sending all they met, either to hellos heauen: which scene, was payson to King Butor, who now commanded all his men at armes to assaile them, which they did with an entire furie: but Bertran and Drohes turning their backs to a wall adioyning to the pallace gates encouraged one another to embrace no mercie, but their death, and that to be bought at an infinite balew, and withal, so defended themselves by offending their enemies, that the proudest stood in awe, and durst not approach them: in this skirmish Bertran slue Terabem, after him the cham-

berlaine

## the historie of Meruine

berlaine to Butor, in like manner a third, a fourth, till the number infinitely multiplied: Drohes was not shot, but every way equalled his actions, whilst Mermont in wonder saide, Wa Mahomet, this is not the king Subia, for Nature hath not lent him so almightie a spiritte, rather they are some devils, or diuelliish enemies. At this came Butor amongst his men and saide, Princes and my countrymen, here shall my loue die, neither will I henceforth count of you if you deliuer me not these two dead or imprisoned. Scarce were these wordes fled from his lippes, Gontor with a lance in his hand ranne against Bertran, but missing him, slue his horse vnder him, so that falling to the ground, he immediately arose againe with his sword in his hand, and stroke a pagan dead vnder him. At this time the Sarazins so multiplied, that Drohes horse was killed also: and then standing against the wall, they maintained a fearefull sore combat like two foaming boares against a kennell of houndes long hunted. Cruell was the fight beyond measure, so that the pagans were amazed, yet had not God in pittie beheld them, the two princes had there ended their liues, not praises. So hideous was the noyse the pagans made about them, that the Quene and her faire daughter Singlay came to behold it, who seeing the not to be conquered resolution of the two christians spirittes most highly esteemed them: the Quene saide, Faire daughter, behold these two incomparable creatures, worthy this day to be immortally renowned, was euer scene so few pzeuaile against so many?

Adam (replied Singlay) it is the King of Subia that sees these wonders of knightood. As true (sayde the Quene) for which I am ashamed that thy father & his host should thus pteiles assaile him: would God he were in my chamber, to the end he might deferre his euill fortune, and renew his peace thus unhappily broken. Thus

## The second part of

discourged the Ladies of the Christians who had now slain so many pagans, that not any could come nere them for the dead bodies, till Mermont cried, *hie towards, hie*, how long shall two thus mightily preuaile against vs: and then with his sword in his hand comming to assayle them, Bertran incountered him with such a blowe that he bent him on his knees, and had withall slaine him, had he not retyrred backward.

The battaile alreadie had continued an hower and a halfe, which vered Butor: who sware he neuer saw so much magnanimitie in an host of 20000. as in those two single persons; and then calling Mermont he said: *My Lord*, these two will destroy my Citie if I finde not remedie, counsaile me, for my care excedeth. Your Maiestie (saide Mermont) must assemble together an Armie of your men, who (laying weapons aside) must rashly desperately oppen them, and even with the confusion of force overthrow excellencie, for otherwise (as you haue well scene) they are invincible.

This instantly was put in practise, and compassing Drohes about (like the ouer-flowe of manie waters) they boare him to the earth, and tooke away from him all meanes of resistance. But Bertran so couragiously withstood them, that whoso toucht him, neuer after had sence of touching. Infinites he slew and wounded; at length retiring by degrees, he reconered a payre of stappes, that ascended up into a chamber, by which he went: and entering into the chamber, protested to kepe it: and whosoever entred should pay a liues forsaite. There remained Bertran peaceably for a little time: the whilest that Drohes was brought to the Pallace, where he was disarmed: whom Mermont at the first sight knew exceeding well, and said: *Drohes*, now thou beholdest thy mischief, and life hath no longer indurance: yet we intreate thee, tell vs what knight is he that

## the historie of Meruine.

that beareth the Armes of Publia, for whatsoever he bee, his life is forsaite for his euill doings. Trayterous King Mermont (saide Drohes) thou hast adiudged what best to thy selfe appertaineth, who hauing receiued holy Baptisme in the house of the Diuinitie, falsly forswore thy owne Royaltie, baser than the basest abiect vnder heauen. At those reuilings, Mermont cried, away with him, and cut off his head, vnles he make knowne his confederate in this mischief. When Drohes saw there was no meane left him, but either to acknowledge Bertran or denie himselfe, hee said, *Stay*, and I will name him vnto you. When raising his voyce, that euery one might vnderstand him, hee said: *Princes*, it is the most wise and absolute valiant Bertran the sonne of Gautier, whose conquests stretch far beyond these Clymates, and whose death the infants vnborne hereafter shall bewaile if he miscarrie. When Butor had heard his words, hee commaunded him to bee strongly imprisoned: which was done. Then the Kings consulting together, Mermont saide: *My Lord of Pinois*, now remaineth vnder your arrest Prince Bertran, so famous for his valure, and renowned for the descent of his royall pedigree: it behoues your maiestie to be most circumspect, because at this instant you haue in thral the triumvirate of vertue, the iij. famous floures of Knighthood meaning Meruine, Bertran and Drohes. These words when the beautifull Singlay heard, shee whipered vnto her owne thoughts, and sware by Mahomet, that if her power were powerful, there should no euill befall prince Bertran, more than the burden of her best lone, because his valure was more than euer her eyes had scene befoze that instant time. Whilst thus she was talking to her thoughts, all the princes and Barons went out of the pallace, gathering all the force that they could together to assaile Bertran, who hauing barricadoed and fortified the doores of the Chamber,

## the second part of

went with his sword to defend the windows : where the first that scaled them , he sent with a blow dead to the earth. Which Butor beholding, and grieved to behold, commaunded to fetch faggots , and to burne the house , chusing rather losse of wealth than will : the which was performed in an instant, the sight whereof brought the wittes of Bertran to astonishment.

3 But ere the flame took any effect , Singlay fell at her fathers feete , and besought the obtaining of a reasonable petition : wherefo the king consenting, she said : When my Lord, spare this noble Christian, and if to me hee will submit his person , let mee be his gardian, and I doubt not but easily make him adoe Mahomet. Daughter, said the king, thou art gracious in my sight, and thy suite is granted : and if it be possible, bzing him to honour the shrine of our Prophet. Joy would not let the virgin stay to be ceremonious in thanks , but she went to Bertran , and perswaded him to lay away his armes, and yield to her, who had undertaken for his safety : shewing the danger otherwise of his fortune , and the pittifull regard of fire when it prevailed : adding to her wordes private teares , the wittesses of her secret good meaning . When as Bertran had beheld Singlay , and surceied her beauty, vertue, and maiestically carriage, when he had noted the gracious aspects of her eyes , and the loue-inficing pitie of her countenance, immediately he was enamoured with her perfections , and with honourable swateness returned her this aunswere. Madame , so sacred is the beaultie of thine heavenly eyes, that even me and my heart thou hast taken prisoner : well maiest thou commaund me, whom thou hast enthralled, and would God ( were the time so gracious ) that not here but in France I might doe you service : but sacred Madame, though my case be desperate , yet doe me a fauour for charitie,

## the history of Meruine.

ritie, tell me whether my companion be dead , or breathing with the liuing ? faire prince, quoth she, he liues without hurt, though without freedom, and is in my prison, where your selfe in peace shall lue . if you submit to my mercie. Bertran at this conquered with Beauties Datozie , gaue by his sword into hir siluer hand , protesting that no feare of death made him yield , but onely the commaundement of beauty : to which beaultie and her pittie he surrendered his life and fortunes . Bertran now unlaced his helmet , and put it off whose former labour had raised so chearefull a blood in his face, that Singlay esteemed him singular in euery perfection, and Loue, ready at her elbow, doubled her wounds, and redoubled her affection : wherefore she saide : Come yong prince and follow me , but I pray you speake to my father grauely and humbly ; so shall your thraldome be lesse streight , and I more able to doe you seruice. Hee consented to do what euer she would commaund him : and thus they came befoze Butor, whose first salutation was, that immediately hee should lose his head , if hee fell not downe and adored Mahomet : and Bertran intaged gaue a reply contrary to his promise , saying : The threats of the damnedst diuellish pagan in the world should not make him forsake his God , nor thinks one reuerend thought of their false man-deceiuing and diuellish protectoz . When Singlay heard him speake with this spleene of malice , she wept bitterly , fearing lest her father ( who was subiect to passion ) should subscribe his will to her Loues funerall : which to preuent , she came and desired her father to leaue argument , and to referre him to her, whom she doubted not but quickly to change from his puritie , and make him a religious Sarazen. Daughter said the king, I agree, but be you watchfull lest hee escape : for wee haue had too extreame trial of his valure. With virgin reuerence she thanked his Maiestie , and forthwith carried Bertran vnto her prison,

## The second part of

prison, where Drohes was hugely perplexed with tormentings, and bound hand and foot with fetters: but sone she took them off, and hauing them both in her custody, like a bondslau to her thral, swetened their seruitude with her seruice. But letting them passe, we will speake of Gautier, who all this while was before Minor, continuing a siege against it the space of iij. yeares: but all was to bootlesse purpose, for hee lost many and gained nothing, the city was so impregnable. Wherefore holding a Councell, it was thought expedient to raise the siege, and returne backe vnto Montment, which they did, burning with fire before they went, the foure straight passages of Minor: and that was all the reuenge they had for iij. yeares trouble. Great was the haile Gautier made to come to Montment, where he had left his vertuous wife Claretta and Mathaburna: but when he came, hee found all his hopes ouerturned: for in his absence the cruel king Gorbant had bin there, taken the towne, put Claretta to death, and Mathaburna too, had not saint womanish feare made her forsake her God, and fall once againe before Mahomet. Beside, she did one other deede of great ilnes, that after was a torment to her: and that was by the means of Mordant, she trode vpon the Crucifixe and the Image of the virgin Mary: for which with this curse she was punished, That she should commit high treason against her son Orient, which she did: for when his wife was deliuered of seuen sons, she made them away, and perswaded her son she had brought forth seuen dogges; for which the Ladies life was hazarded, till God the reuealer of trueth, making the trueth knowne, Mathaburna was burned deseruingly, as you may reade in the historie of Godfrey of Bullen. But leauing those latter deedes, we will againe returne to our purpose.

CHAP.

## the history of Meruine.



### CHAP. IIII.

1 How *Gautier* raised his siege from *Minor*, and came to *Nubia*, where he repaired his army: 2 how from thence hee came to *Luternia*, where hee found *Iacob*, who discoursed the fortunes of *Montment*; 3 How *Gautier* went before *Montment*, and retooke it againe by meanes of *Iacob*.



*Gautier* and his Armie went before *Minor*, and marched to *Nubia*, where he selected out ten thousand choyce men to repayre his losses. At which time (with great humbleness) *Huon* of *Burdeaux* took his leaue of the King, and departed to the great grieve of all the companie: and of him we will speake nothing more at this instant.

2 The King at that same time departed from *Nubia*, and came to *Luternia*, where he reposed himselfe the space of foure dayes: during which time *Iacob* the *Marchaunt* came vnto him and saluting him with a most piteous and fearefull countenance, saide: Sacred Lord of a holie Lineage, what shall become of vs most miserable creatures, with the valiant *Meruine* is not home returned? Alas, alas my Lord, Fortune hath doubled her fortunes vpon vs: for in these last two yeares of your absence, the fatall King *Gorbant* of *Samaria* (who was ouerthrowne before *Damascus*) and *Bandus*, came and layde Siege before *Montment*,

244  
The second Part of

Montment, haue taken the Cittie, put your Highnesse to death, and conuerted fearefull Mathaburna to her former religion. When Gautier felt these thunderboltes strike vpon his soule, and the death of Claretta named, both he and his Sonnes fell into a great agonie of discontentment: bowing to God and their soules a deprenement for that monstrous murder; and so forthwith marched towards Montment. But Iacob (staying behinde) assembled together foure hundred Christians, whom he conducted after Gautier with such hast, that he ouertooke him befoze he had fully got sight of Montment; which instantly they had entred without resistance, had not a certayne Pagan espied them: who running into the citie, gaue king Gorbant warning of their approach. He (vpon the first notice) mustered all his barons together, and issued out to meete the Christians, who then were within a league of the towne walls.

3 The Pagans being ordered in battell, said amongst themselves: Alas, alas, these Christians are come to their funeralles: for sith Meruine is dead, it is impossible for them euer againe to see a day of conquest. They were to the number of an hundred thousand, and thus quartered: Griffoy bare the ensigne of Mahomet, and had thirtie thousand; King Bandus had other thirtie thousand, and Criffoner with a regiment to second him; Gorbant with the rest went befoze. The Christians had ordered themselves, though not so huge, yet full as strongly: and thus Gautier, after encouragements to his sonnes, put spurres to his horse, and gaue the first charge on the Pagans, and the first he incountred he bare dead to the ground. the second he cut off by the head, after him an other, and another, and desisting til he fel by his sword befoze him. At this began a clamorous noise (greater than thunder from hea-  
uen,)

245  
the history of Meruine.

uen,) and the battell was mightily confused. Gorbant if his armes had bene excellently imployed, his vertue in valure had inherited a little better than excellent.

But letting his deed passe, we will speake of Iacob, who following Gautier with foure hundred Christians, and seeing the fearefulnesse and hugenesse of the battell, said vnto his souldiers; Gentlemen, this day it behoueth vs to be most circumspect what we take in hand, you do see the rare mightines of the battell, and the equalitie of puissance: let vs then aduise our selues what way is best for our generall profit, which (in my conceipt) is this, Whilist the two armies are thus equally busied, we will assault the towne now vtterly vndefended, and making our entrance there, in, put man, woman, and child to the sword, that will not fall downe and adoze the name of Christ Iesus. To this (with clamours) they all agreed, and forthwith entred the towne which was left vngarded, and beganne to put to the sword all with whom they incountred. But the fearefull people sone rendred to mercie, and accepted a second baptism. When Iacob went to the castle of Turgon with his followers, where he found Gnyda and Barrant her little sonne, surnamed the Cruell, and Berea: to whom Iacob said, Madame, great and infinite are the mischiefes that hang houerling ouer thy head, if so sone thou hast forgotten prince Meruine, and renounced the Christian true lawe of saluation. Ha Iacob (said Mathaburna with a weeping face) chide me not, for in my heart I adoze nothing but that true God of my saluation: what else I haue done, this life (which onely I loue but for his loue) hath with carefulnesse drawne me hereto. You make me proud quoth Iacob, with these words: know then, I haue taken (with these my followers) both the towne and this castle: wherefoze I will leaue two hundred to guard you, and with the rest returne to the great battell.

This

## The second Part of

This said, he took his leave, and (after safe order taken for the Towne and Castle) he returned to the tumult, where he shewed himselfe to be a most resolved and courageous gentleman, whose resolution when Gautier sawe, he commended exceedingly, with promise of great honours. My Lord, saide Iacob, my beginning hath bene better than my proceeding, for I haue taken both the citie, and Turgon. Wherefore if you doubt your successe, you may make your retraite therein, for it is your owne assured. When Gautier heard this he daunced for ioy, and in that place created him knight, kissing his cheek, and praying for his endless good fortunes. Iacob so proud with these honours, that the first pagan that he met he sent dead to the ground, and then rushing into the heart of the army, made wondrous destructions: which king Gorbant beholding, enraged he ranne against him, and gaue him such a blow, that he felled him to the earth: by means whereof the good Iacob was taken prisoner, and now came the battell to the extreamest hazard, for the Pagans being an hundred thousand, and the Christians but twelue thousand, the greater number ppenailed, wherefore Gautier commaunded a retreat to be sounded, and so retired into the citie: at the sight whereof Gorbant toze his haire and was madly enraged, not leauing to assault the towne on each side, but in vaine, for in his despight it was strongly maintained. When as armes and fury was laid at rest, Gautier went to the palace, where reposing himselfe he made inquirie for Iacob, but not any could tell of him or his fortune. Good God said he: shall we lose that good knight? is it possible that vertue should so sone vanish? and with that he shed teares for affection. This while Guyon went to Guyda, and taking her by the hand, said, Faire Lady, how comes your fortune to hale you into this coast? and whose is this infant you beare with you? Ah Guyon said she, it is my son: but

## the history of Meruine.

but I pray you, how doth your brother Bertran? He was mightily false to me at Damascus, when leauing me alone he esteemed more his sword, than mine honour, for hatefull reuenge whereof I instantly married king Gorbant his greatest enemy. Thus she discouraged her adventures to Guyon, whilst her husband and Griffoy without the city, made tearing their haire for their losses. After some consultations held, they sent for Iacob, and tolde him that if he would go to Montment, and persuaue Gautier to send him forth of the city his wife and young son, he would deliuer all the christian prisoners that were that day taken. Iacob glad of these words (for he mightily feared death) said, willingly I will performe thy desire, so I may haue sufficient pledge for the trueth of thy promise. When Gorbant called Bandus, Griffoy, and Grifoner, and sent them for hostages of his word: so they came into Montment, and finding Gautier in the palace, Iacob deliuered the message of Gorbant, which was most welcome to Gautier, who deliuered to Iacob, Guyda, and Barant, and detaind the pledges for his returne, who coming to Gorbant with a comely reuerence, deliuered them to their lord, who on thother part deliuered vnto him all the Christians that were prisoners, whom he brought triumphantly into the citie, and enfranchised the hostages, who solemnely sware by Mahomet, neuer to raise their tents til they had once againe made themselves commaunders of the Citie: but their vowes were witnesses against them, for Gautier night and day so souldier-like defended the towne, that all their assaults proued utterly frustrate: and so we will leaue a while to speake more of them, and returne to Bertran and Drohes, whom we left imprisoned at Pinoz, and had so continued thre yeres, during which space they were by the beautifull Singlay both regarded, fauoured and esteemed, haniug their desires accomplished as sone as they could desire,



## The second part of

desire, so mightily did the loue Bertran, and so willing she was her will should make it manifest, onely their escape that could not be inuented, so great was the enuie of the nation against them.



### CHAP. V.

Of the gallant life that *Bertran* and *Drohes* led in Minor. 2 Of the Tourney which was proclaimed for the loue of *Singlay*, 3 Of the priuate wonders *Bertran* did.



**I**n youfly, and euen in the height of contentment liued *Bertran* and *Drohes* prisoners in the cite *Pinoz*, seruiceably attended on by *Singlay*, and a Lady of hers named *Adain*, whose secrecie exceeded the priuatest coniecture. *Singlay* was the loue of *Bertran*, and *Adain* the loue of *Drohes*, for whose sakes they effected whatsoever could be desired. In this same time there arrived at *Pinoz* an Ambassadour from *Montment*, who reported to *Mermont*, the taking of his city by *Gorbant*, and the losse of it againe to *Gautier* and his iij. sons, which when he vnderstood, he went to *Butor*, and held a counsell how they might recouer it: and in the end agreed to craue aid of all the pagan kings at that time suruiuing; which they did, and gained infinites, amongst which came one gallant Gentleman the sonne of king *Belmarine* of the age of eightene yeares,

## the historie of Meruine.

yeares, who brought with him eightene thousand, and had to name *Baham*, exceeding wise, and highly renowned for deedes of armes, and seates of renowned chualrie, he was mightily inamoured with the beauty of *Singlay*, and demanded her in marriage, but she neglected his suite, hauing no other thought, but what she borrowed from the most excellent *Bertran*. But *Baham* not omitting any thing that might inflame the coldnesse of her affection, caused a solemne tourneament to bee proclaimed befoze the chamber of his heartes mistresse the fairest *Singlay*, to the end that shee might beholde his prowesse. Whither resorted many redouted pagans to the iusts that were in the hoz of *Singlay*, the whilest *Marant* her euer hating brother tormented his thoughtes, with busying them to find out the reason, why she disloined a man of so good a perfection: and in the end concluded, that of necessitie shee either loued some pagan prince, or some christian, for shee was a woman, and women will loue, and no doubt but shee was in loue. With that *Bertran* entred into his mind, who then was his sisters prisoner: so that hee swoze by *Mahomet* it was so, and no otherwise: wherefore vpon the day of the tourneament the traitour priuately hid himselfe in his sisters chamber, not seen of any one.

2 Euen now were all the Pagans armed that came to that gallant sport of honour, and all the Ladies flocked to the windowes, to the end they might beholde the adventures, amongst whom *Singlay* would not consozt her selfe, but saide, for that time her chamber should be her scaffold thither she went, and thither she brought *Bertran* and *Drohes*, to behold and laugh at what her selfe derided: no sooner was *Bertran* in her chamber, but taking *Singlay* in his armes, he cast her vpon a rich embzodered cotch, where he made loue rich with the richest of lones pleasures, and saidee

Goddess that guidest lones world in my bosome, let the combat of our affections equall or surpasse the pagans conflict, for we are his knights and his absolute champions, they without, but shadowes of foolish ceremonies. This said, he lockt her in his armes, and with kisses and those delights that exceed kisses, wooed till they both were conquered. Drohes on the other side was not behind with his triumph, making Adain blush and sweare she was by lones power conquered. Alas, alas, at this while they little imagined the traitour Marant to be in her chamber, who like a dumbe mischiefe lay and noted all that passed between them. Now hauing done dalliance the Ladies went to the windowes to behold the iusts, and the two knights behinde them, crying ay me to others vertues, till such time that a Herault at armes ranne crying vp and downe the field that Belmarine Baham had vanquished all commers, and to haue no equall in the deedes of knight hood. When Singlay had heard the king at armes make this proclamation, she smiling said to Bertran, Woke what a gallant prince I haue refused for your loue, drawing vpon me the wrath of my father for neglecting his offer, whose equall for chualie liues not betwixt this and Brandis. Bertran to this speech made no reply, but the aide of Adain, who for Drohes loue would hazard any thing, he withdrew himselfe, priuately gotte armour, and an excellent horse, on the which being mounted, he trotted to the place where the iusts were solemnized: whose first approach Singlay severely noted, and called to Bertran, but Adain told her he was gone to his solitary chamber a little troubled in heart, intending for some houres to giue repose to his vnquiet: at that Singlay turned her sweete speech to Drohes and said, See faire knight what a comely champion is newly entered the Lists, beleue me, this person promisseth wonders, but his bad furniture saith hee shoulde be prize in vertue, beleue me

me, I maruell whence he came. Adam (said Adain) that best knew the aduventure, the foulest Buscle hath the richest pearle, and a Diamond set in yron, is more precious than a perle in golde with the curiouslest workmanship, the pouerty of his Armes may couer a vertuous spirit, and hee may proue more redoubted than the best in the assemblee, therefore doe not blame, but attend his fortune. Neither do I, (saide Singlay) yet giue me leaue to smile at the attempt, for his bad furnished estate must needs cause laughter.

3 As they were thus talking Baham of Belmarine set forth himselfe to the iusts, but would not runne against Bertran, because the bandes of his furniture was an assurance (as he thought) of no defence, and his death no prize of honour: yet notwithstanding Bertran thrust himselfe forward: which Boham seeing said to his companion, there is no remedy but I must encounter yond silly halfe armed creature, wherefore I will onely ouerthrow him from his horse, and that shall be his penance. Which saide, he put spurres to his beast, and Bertran on the other side mette him with such an encounter, that lighting vpon Bahams breast with his launce, he ouerthrew horse and man to the ground backward; at which the Ladies laughed exceedingly, and Singlay seeing the blow, laughed much more than any other, and calling Drohes said, Tell me sweete knight how shall I take this to see a poore halfe armed villaine ouerthrow my loue, hee that hath protested these Armes in mine honour? Adam (said Drohes) hee is a villaine that villainously executeth any thing, but this poore bassall hath done it with such vertue, that of force he must be a Gentleman: and surely hee that with such poore accomplishments brings to passe such wonders, what would he doe were hee royally adorned in compleat perfection? This true, tis true said

252  
The secor d part of

(saide Adain) who drawing Drohes aside, reported to him, that it was Bertran and the occasion of the aduenture: at which Drohes changed colour and was somewhat grieued, so that coming to Singlay he humbly desired her that he might be armed, that if any mischaunce should befall them, that he might be able to defend her, she instantly consented, and he was armed, bowing if any crosse chaunce befel Bertran, he would be his partaker. Bertran by this time had ouerthzowne thre Kings, and Baham that was remounted, whome Bertran twice had ouerthzowne, swoze by Mahomet the third time to trie his successe against the poze armed creature: which doing, Bertran ouerthzew him with such vehemencie, that with the fall he brake one of his legges asunder, leaning him on the ground dead to al mens imaginations, so that the Heraulds with one voyce cryed the poze armed knight is the most valiantest knight in the world.

When Singlay heard this honourable exclamation, she desired Adain to call Bertran to behold the poze knight: she replied that he was at his rest, and it would offend him to be disturbed. Some whilest every one was busied about Baham, Bertran departed out of the listes vnperceyued of any one but onely Adain, who went vnto him and helped to vnarme him, and brought him to Singlay, who fearefull of his health, asked him how he fared. Madame saide he better than befoze. I am glad (saide she) but I am soze you were not here, where you might haue seene a man all in rusty broken halfe-arming armour, that hath bozne away the prize, and wounded Prince Baham. How Madame (saide she) wounded Prince Baham your Ladiships loue: What, hee with whome not any may compare? A miracle! By my life (saide she) it is most true, Baham was thrice most villainously ouerthzowne. Madame (saide hee) the royall habite maketh not the rich man,

253  
the historie of Meruine.

nor rich Armes a valiant knight: and those that openest shew the light of countenance, sel dome haue the sunne of Sprite. This doe I speake to shew, that an vnlikeli man vertuous, is worthier than an adozned dull spirited. After manie other speeches vttered, they rose and went vnto the prison, and the traitorous Marant, when he saue his time issued out of the chamber, and reported those things which after returned to such mischiese vpon himselfe, that it was the ende of all his glozie.



CHAP. VI.

- 1 How Marant accused his sister Singlay, 2 How Bertran made the Pagans beleue hee would renounce christianitie, 3 How he vndertooke to combate against Marant.



Marant was no soner come from his sisters chamber, but he went to the pallace where al the pagan Princes were, and after humble reuerence done to King Butor his father, he toke him aside, and discoursed al that had passed betwixt his sister & Bertran, of Drohes and Adain, and the whole occurrents of that dayes action. Marant saide the king, shall I assure my selfe this is true thou reportest? With that he swoze by an infinite

## the second part of

number of oathes, that it was most true; and in the midst of his protestations Adain passed by that way, and heard him; which bred no little sorrow in her soule, who coming to Singlay, tolde her, that both they and their loves were no lesse than dead, for all their actions were knowne to the King her father, by her cruell brother damnable Marant. Singlay at the first was vehemently pensive, but in the end, taking resolution to her, grew carelesse, and gave her encouragement, saying, I have advised my selfe of a meane for our deliuey, I will presently goe to my bed, and with tormenting agony complaine my selfe and say, that my brother Marant would needs make wacke of mine honour and desloue mee, which for that I would not consent unto. I will affirme he hath soe wounded, and shamefully intreated me; and to make it the more credible, I will all to be soile my face with blood, and you also shall doe the like, affirming, that because you came to my succour, therefore he inflicted this extreame misery. Madame (said Adain) better cannot be invented. Then Singlay (taking a strong threu bound her fingers and prickt them, making abundance of blood issue forth, with which she stained the excellencie of Nature, putting in practise all her determination. And then she sent Adain to theyr Loves to aduertise them thereof; charging them, that if the pagann did examine them, they should saine to denye their Christian Religion. Adain did all her commaundement, and the knights consented: then she returned to Singlay, who lay in her bed all bloodie, faining those infinite gestures of sorrow, that euen sorrow himselfe was decreased with her languor. Adain seconded and kept the burden to her distemperature, making so iust a concord, that no eye could discern their dissimulation. By this time King Butor (incensed by Marants speeches) had called the Duene Mother, and told her of all what hee had euer heard; de-

stirring

## the historie of Meruize

stirring her to goe vnto her Daughter and trie her, and returne her answer. The Duene (sighing at these speeches) went to the yong Ladies chamber, whom she found almost franticke with sorrow, and brought almost to talke idly with the tediousnes of weeping: when she beheld her, she wandred, and desired (without fiction) to know the true cause of her torment. Oa Madame (said she) the cause let me conceale, for it will mad both you and my father: Alas, alas, one of the neerest of my kinne is the wounder of my fortune. At this, the Duene grew more desirous, and commaunded her to report the truth without feare. Madame (said Singlay) be not then offended, and I will speak what to none (but your selfe, I durst speake: and then she reported from poynt to poynt as before shee was determined, How her Brother Marant had enforced her, and slaine her honour, at such time as the Iustices were held by Baham, and at his departure swoze by all the Gods, that if wee exclaimed, his sword should make vs for euer speaking. To you Madame haue I opened the wound of my shame, for Gods sake be carefull: and good Larie Mother with all speede sende mee Calyph the Arch-flamine to confesse me, for death (I know) is my portion, and I desire to be purified, though not unstained: now as she thus spake, there flew headlong from her heart such profound heart-wounding sighes, that the chamber echoed her lamentations. The Duene (calling to minde the absence of Marant at the Triumph) instantly gave credite to her speech, and swoze he should dearily rue his villanie: wherefore going to the King, shee omitted nothing, but doubled her reports with most vehement perswasions of likelihood. The King seemed hardly to beleue, that nature to it false would be so monstrous, and therefore went with Mermont to her chamber and beheld her; where shee consoled so many teares with so manie sighings, as was able to pierce a

## The second part of

toall of Adamant: yet the King charged her of counterfeiting falsehood, and that her deceit was but to smother the villanies she practised with the Christians. At these words she pouzed a flood of teares from her eyes, and bade his Maiestie think as he pleased: but Mahomet (in whom she affected) knew her innocence. At this the kings departed, and sent for Marant, whome they accused of this high treason against kind and nature. But he with vehement oaths denied it, offering to combat against an host of men that durst accuse him; auerring beside his former accusation to be true, for his eyes had beheld their villanie: and that also he desired to maintaine by sword or combat in the presence of all his Princes and Barons. This resolution was commented, yet was he committed to prison, till Singlay was examined: who being sent for once more before the King, was charged of her former guile: and demanded why she entertained the Christians into her private chamber? To which she replied, Deare father, it was your Maiesties pleasure that they should be in my guard, to see if I could perswade them to renounce their opinions, and become obedient sustainers of our Lawe: to which end I often sent for them, and argued in private, and have now fully effected your Highnesse will, and brought them utterly to denie Christianitie.

2 Butor (whom these speeches made more then well pleased) expelled wrath from his countenance, and said; Faire Daughter, if thou hast done thus, thou hast wonne my loue for euer. Then forthwith he sent tenne Knights to fetch Bertran and Drohes before him, which they did: and as they went, at euerie protestation they made, they call Mahomet their God to witnes, and the pagans hearing them, shouted for ioy of their conuersion. When they came into the Pallace before King Butor, they fell on their knees,

## the history of Meruine.

knees, and Bertran first said; Mahomet our great god defend your Maiestie: know then sacred King, that I am come a reporter of a great myracle, which our God Mahomet wondrously hath reuealed, and thus it is: This night in a vision appeared our holy prophet Mahomet vnto me, and in this manner spake; Bertran, I do greatly reioyce in thy conuersion, be strong in thy faith, and continue my exalter: for reward whereof, when thou risest, goe thy way vnto Butor, and say that I commaund him to giue thee in marriage his faire daughter Singlay, whom the traiterous Marast (during the time of the Rustes) most cruelly would haue raniished: and behold, that thou defend her against his traiterous practises with those same armes, with which in the Tourney I brake the leg of Baham, and ouerthrew him three severall times to the earth, because (by his pride) he aspired to enioy Singlay. Tell him also, that before I departed, I ouerthrew all whosoever set their puillance against me, whilest that the whole multitude cried: Honour to him in the broken armour. This being said, invisibly he departed: and what he gaue me in charge, I haue deliuered to your Maiestie. When Butor had heard him he said vnto Mermont: By Mahomet Bertran hath said most true, for it could be no other but Mahomet that this day so wonderfully prevailed; let all things be as hee will, for it is our great gods pleasure, who (I know) is incensed against Baham and Marant.

3 When calling Bertran, hee asked him if hee would combat for his daughters innocencie? Most willingly said he, and chiefly when my God commaundeth, who will be a rocke of defence in my iust quarrell. This said, the king went to his daughter, and embracing her, he bade her reuine her spirits, for she should haue justice, and if her

## The second Part of

brother were faulty, he should die like a traitor: for he preferred might before justice. When was Marant brought forth, who utterly denied the crime wherewith hee was accused, desiring no other proofe but his sword and Justice. The place of battell immediately was appointed, and they commaunded to be armed: wherefore Bertran besought the king, that he might haue his armes and sword deliuered him, which was done to Bertrams exceeding good contentment, who in his private soule made a solempne prayer to the true God of life to aide him, and not to be offended at his disguising, seeing that with Infidels faith is least to be regarded. Now when hee was at all points prepared, Drohes said; Courage Prince Bertran, for two such as Marant this day shall not preuaile against thee: he is perfectly knowne a traitor, and his treason against Meruine is yet a testimony: let that be thy hearts quarrell, and that shall giue thee honour with victorie. This true, tis true, said Bertran, and I haue writ it on the table of my memorie. When mounted he on his horse, and Drohes deliuered him his lance: then he trotted to the Lisses, where he found Marant armed at all points, and expecting his coming. At whose approach Butor descended, and asked if their causes were iust, or no? And they both answered they were. When the trumpets sounded, and they charged each other; Marant brake his lance, but Bertrams blow came with such force, that he strake him from his horse to the ground backward: then, hauing finished his carere, he turned with his sword in his hand against Marant, who as yet was not risen, and said: What Marant, wilt thou indure any more of this battell? No, said Marant, who then was newly risen: yet I pray thee heare what I shall say. Speake quickly then said Bertran, and I shall attend thee. Prince Bertran, said Marant, I pray thee euen for mine honours sake, saie thou hast seene our God Mahomet, and that

## the history of Meruine.

that he commaundeth a truce betwene vs, and thou shalt haue both my life and power at thy commaundement: then will I make thy peace with the King my father, thou shalt espouse my sister, and I will liue and die for euer thy vassalle. As I liue, and by Mahomet, quoth Bertran, most willingly I will, if thou wilt so farre preuaile with thy father, that he will deliuer Prince Meruine from his monstrous misfortune. Alas answered Marant, it is utterly impossible, for the prison wherein he liues is such yea and so strange, as there is not any so subtil or fortunate, that can approach it, vntill they speake with his keeper, who is no man but an azie diuell, with whom onely my father hath conference touching his imprisonment. When Bertran heard him say thus, he whispered to himselfe: By heauen these pagans are all diuelles, therefore I will not take one of them to mercy: whereupon lifting vp his sword, and thinking to dispatch the traitor, he staied his hand and descended from his horse, lest Marant should slay him vnder him, and Marant in the meane space, got the hunchcon of a lance, thinking therewith to thrust him thorow: but he failed by means of Bertrams returne, who with his sword gaue him such a blowe, that hee felled him to the ground, and then leaping vpon him, he disarmed his head from his shoulders: so that his soule forsooke her unhallowed mansion: and in that same moment, both it and his body were miraculously borne thence into heil to the fearful terror of all the beholders, who concluded him to be execrable and damned. This finished, Butor came and embraced Bertran, gaue him Singlay to wife, doing him all the honoz possible: Mermont did as much, and all the other Pagan princes, making a festiuall for his conuersion in religion. Great banquets were made, and Bertran was set at the Table next to the king, who boasted, that now there was not a kingdome in christendome which hee would



## The second part of

would not conquer. When kissing his daughter, he blessed the time of her generation saying: Now she should be the Emperesse of the world, for her husband with twenty thousand gallants he would give him, should presently goe conquer France. So he was proude to heare those speeches, yet neither in shew nor in words would expresse it; but protested, that if it had not bin Mahomets commaundement, he neuer would haue married. Then was Caliph the flame called for, who incontinently married them, according to the old prophane customes of Mahomet.



### CHAP. VII.

- 1 How *Bertran* and *Drohes* (vnder the pretence of Paganisme) brought forthie thousand Pagans before Montment; 2 How the most part of them were there confounded and put to the sword.



Thus (vnder the beile of infidelitie) *Bertran* and *Drohes* abused the Pagans, who verely imagined, that they had renounced Christ Iesus: but it fell out farre otherwise, as you shall vnderstand. When *Bertran* had espoused *Singlay*, doubt not of the Royall solemnities, which continued for the space of eight dayes: at the end whereof, *Butor* deliuered to him forthie thousand resolute men at armes, and desired him (with all expedition) to goe aide the mightie king

## the history of Meruine.

king *Gorbant*, who had for thre yeares laied siege against Montment, but could not pzenaile. To this he willingly condescended, swearing withall, that he and *Drohes* also would exalt Mahomet, where yet neuer any God was adored: but my Lord, quoth he, I humbly beseech you before I goe, let me see the prisoner Meruine, and on my life I will also conuert him againe to our true religion. My sonne quoth *Butor*, desire it not, for it is altogether impossible, because, if I doe graunt, it is my death; in that I haue promised so much to the diuell *Mutafier*, who daily administred vnto him, and effecteth what is fit for his being. Then said *Bertran*, I will no more desire it: so mustering by his men, he departed from *Shinoz*, *Singlay*, *Adain*, *Drohes* and *Mermont* going with him, hoping of that which was without hope, I meane to regaine his citie. So continuall was their march, that now they are come to *Wandis*, where they rested themselves that night, in which *Drohes* asked *Bertran*, what course they should take to destroy those dogges, those unbelieuing infidels: Instantly said *Bertran*, I know not, but we will priuately giue my father notice, and hee shall come to our succour. When *Adain* heard them who was next to king *Gorbant*, he said: Princes write your Letters, and vpon my soule I will safely deliuer them, and in this maner: Know that king *Gorbant* is mine vnkle, and I euer haue bin right deare in his sight: to whom I will declare that I am sent in priuat to vnderstand the state of the christians in Montment, and how that you are comming by sea to succor him. I know he will beleue me, and (without contradiction) let me passe carelesse of any thing. When more, I will perswade him to march forth to meeke and receiue you: which done, I will passe into Montment, deliuer your letters to your father, and make my returne (with all speede) backe againe. They all highly commended the stratagem and

## The second Part of

and dispatched her away onely with one Attendant, who was a Pagan. All whatsoeuer she promised she performed, and abused Gorbant with false toy, went vnto Gautier, deliuered the letters, and was royally receiued. When did Gautier goe with his three sonnes to counsaile, and thus concluded; That they would lend to Gorbant, and saigne to deliuer vp the towne, on condition that they might haue leaue quietly to passe into Fraunce: making him belieue their poverty was so great, they could no longer indure warres furie: which when he vnderstandes, he will fall to his regardlesse humour. When shall Bertran and Drohes cause great Feasts and Banquets to be made: during whose Cupps and Triumphs we will with all our powers issue forth; and if fortune fauour vs, make an end of our bad fortunes. This agreed vpon; they deliuered it to Adain, who taking her leaue departed. In the meane space, Gautier dispatcht other letters to Gorbant, who had then (with all the royall triumph could bee inuented) receiued Bertran, Drohes, and the other Pagans. At which feast, Guyda toke her sonne Barant aside, and saide; Deare sonne wilt thou not accuse me, and I will tell thee a secret: which saue to thy selfe, shall neuer be knowne to any creature liuing. By Mahomet Mother (saide the youth) I will not. Then know, said she, that this famous prince Bertran, whose sunne-light staineth all the gallants about him, he euen he, and not Gorbant, is thy father; he begot thee of me at Damascus, long ere I sawe king Gorbant: and for leauing me in that estate, I toke displeasure, and wedded as thou seest. Madame (saide Barant) he is a villain, and hath done most damnably: but if he belieue not in Mahomet our God; ere long time I will be his murderer, because he shall not scandall me with the name of a bastard. Turning these speeches Adain came and saluted king Gorbant: after her Gautiers Ambassadour, who presented

## the history of Meruine.

presented his Lords letters. Which when Gorbant had read, he cried, Pagans reioyce, for befoze two dayes he compassed, we will be commaunders of the citie: Gautier offers to deliuer it, so he may safely returne into France, but it is not our pleasure, for neither he, nor any of his adherents shall escape unpunished. Thus did king Gorbant boast, who little knew the news that Adain brought, who priuately deliuered a letter vnto Bertran from his father: which when he had read, he shewd it to Drohes, then they two agreed to arme themselves vnder their dublets, which they did, and then went into king Gorbants tent, desiring, that for the happines of the news there might be a festiual proclaimed, and solempne banquets and Iubilies made through all the campe, with proclamation, that for that day no man, on paine of death, should put on an armour, or weare a sword, but consecrate all his deeds with mirth to Mahomet. Gorbant thought this motion conuenient, and forthwith sent his edicts and proclamations abroad, which were fulfilled.

2 Gautier the holy Dane all this while was within Pontment preparing his host in a readinesse, onely staying the returne of an espiall, whom hee had sent to bring him word when the Pagans were set at dinner: Long it was not but he came and had him in the name of God issue forth, for the Pagans were all set and triumphing, careless of all manner of daunger whatsoeuer. This being saide, Gautier left the citie, hauing in his army but onely tenne thousand souldiers, which was all his remainder, and made so great haste, that they entred the Pagan campe, to the dismay of their aduersaries. Gautier with his sword naked entred into Gorbants tent, and came close to the table where Bertran sate, who when he beheld his fathers armes, ouerthrew the table, and catching a battle axe in his

## The second part of

his hand which was there, he stricke king Gorbant such a blow betwixt the necke and the shoulders, that he diuided his head from his body. At which sight all the pagans were amazed, but Griffoner of Damascus cried, Bertran this day, by treason, will be our destruction: and then taking Barant and his sister, he fled away with twenty attendants, whom we will leaue to their flight, and returne to the battell, which begunne in Gorbants tent, and so generally throught all the campe, in which scarce a Pagan or Sarazen suruined: mighty was the resolution of Bertran, and glorious to behold his valure, whom none durst incounter, and from whom none escaped. Mermont, who before time had lost his hand, seeing this vnmoueable miserie, cried, Woe and alas we are all betrayed, ha louely Singlay, thou and this Adain are mistresses of our sorrow. Now by the heauenly virgin, quoth Singlay, thou hast but thine owne deseruing, for by treason thou betrayedst vertue, and, than thy selfe there is not a greater traitour: remember it is now twelue yeares since thou diddest mocke Ch�istianitie, to which I am conuerted, and most falsly betrayedst the most exquisite Meruine vnto a tormenting hell that hath no ending, recozd that mischiefe, and confesse what thou deseruest. As she was thus speaking, Bertran rushed in vpon Mermont, and saide: Willaine, now shall thy life render me account for the losse of the two ldes pargon, excellent Meruine, and then with his ay he claue him to the shoulders. Griffon this space accompanied with many Pagans, fled to the sea for safety. Whilest the Ch�istians ranging in their tents put all to the sword that remained. In brieft, in this battell was slaine aboue an hundred thousand Pagans, & but thre and twenty ch�istians, and they of no other estate than priuate souldiers: the ch�istians also took v. hundred prisoners, so that of all the heathen army scaped but foure thousand, which fled away with

Guyda

## the historie of Meruine.

Guida that sorrowed most extremely for the death of Gorbant her lord and husband, and had no contentment but the escape of her yong sonne, who sware in his infancie by Mahomet, that the time should come he would be reuenged of Bertran, both for this, and his mothers antient abuses, which indeed came to passe, for he liued to be both the death of his father, and all his famous vnckles. But let that passe til after opportunity of discourse: now it fell out, that after this discomfiture, the Ch�istians did returne to the Pagans pavillions, where they found infinite riches, which were so equally diuided, that the poorest souldier got the title of a rich Merchant. After this they went into the city, and made great feasts and triumphs then in euery manner was Singlay, Adain, and all the other prisoners baptized, and Gautier took an oath to pursue his enemies, even to the walles of Damascus, but he failed, as you shall see in the next chapter.

## CHAP. VIII.

- 1 How an Ambassadour came to Gautier, who brought him word, that the Emperour *Charlemaine* had destroyed all his country of Denmarke: 2 How *Drohes* went to deliuer *Meruine*: and how *Gautier* arrived at Maiance.



In the first part of this history ye may remember, how discontentedly *Charlemaine* departed from *Meruine* and *Gautier*, for the hate of *Huon of Burdeau*, whom *Gautier* then amongst his sons maintained, and how he noted in despite of *Gautier*, to make all Maiance and

Denmarke.

266  
the second part of

Denmarke lament that euer they knew him. Which indeed he did, so mighty was the malice then reigning in him. Wherefore the noble men of that country dispatched an ambassadour vnto Gautier, to giue him to vnderstand of their troubles, who arriuing at Montment, and comming into the pallace where he found his king, he fell vpon his knees, and after such holy reuerence as belongs to his estate said: O y sacred and emperiall soueraigne, know that the nobilitie of France by me salute thy Highnesse, and giue thee to vnderstand, that the great Charles of France, in despitte hath ruined thy countrey, and banished from thy court all thy royall countrymen: wherefore by me they intreate your Maiestie, with speede to returne and stanch the wounds yet freshly bleeding else hereafter it will be too late, and thou utterly dispossessed of a kingdome. When Gautier had heard this message, he rowzed himselfe, and with a frowning gesture replied, As I breathe, I will not sleep out this iniurie, but come with such an hoste as shal make Charles dearely repent it: and then he caused proclamation to be made through all the citie, that enery souldier on paine of death should in the morning be ready to be imbarked for France, which was performed; then he called Iacob, giuing vnto him the gouernement of the city and sad Mathaburn, a leauing a sufficient garrison. and taking an oath for his trust and fealtie.

2 To be brieue, every one in the morning was ready to depart, but only Drohes, who refused, and said to Gautier, that he had vowed neuer to manage other action, or embrace one quiet thought till he had found the meane for Meruins deliuerie. Which when his loue Adain heard, she said, she also in that would be his companion. But he gainesayde her, saying the paine would be too mighty. But she would not be refused, though he indaged truely, for she was slaine by

267  
the historie of Meruine

by Griffoy. as you shall heare in the story. Gautier seeing their resolues, gaue them leaue, & so departing from them imbarked himselfe, to whom the winde was so prosperous that he arriued in safety neare to France, where he found Dion of Pantuell his neare kinsman, who though he had laine long sick, most ioyfully receiued both him and his sonnes, declaring what euill Charles had done since his comming: all which Bertran bowed, or to mend or to reuenge. Then summoned they all their friends and kintred to their ayde, amounting to the number of twentie thousand, all of the line of Oger, which with those that Gautier had brought, made the army thirty thousand and better, then duke Dardain aduised them to send ambassadozs to Charlemaine, to request restitution for the wrongs before passed, which if he refused, then to pursue them with reuenge euen vnto the Loure in Paris. To this aduise they accorded: yet Bertran would not leaue, but marched day and night til he came within the sight of the French army, executing as he went all whom he found traitorous or false to their country, intending to raise the siege which Charlemaine held before the castle of Pantuell: but a traitour of France vnderstanding it, went before, and aduertised the Emperour: which as soone as he vnderstode, he called the duke of Dampmartin Naymes, and the rest of his nobilitie to counsell, in which consultation, duke Naymes perswaded all peaceable conditions, laying before their eyes the profit of their concord, and the ruine of christendome by their fatall warrefare, withall, telling the emperour, that the most of his owne barons were descended from Gautiers pedigree, and in nature would aid him before he should miticity. Charles grew enraged at his words, and swore by the God of paradise to put all those to a shameful death that offered to sturre their fate before two moneths were expired, or aided him not to lay waste that fatall countrey.

## The second part of

Thus spake Charlemaine, but the good Duke Naymes left not his persuasions, till there was a truce taken for ij. yeares: during which time sprang a new warrefare that wounded all chriſtendome, by Barant ſurnamed the Cruell (whom Bertran begot of Guyda) now 5. yeares old, and by the pagans, that croſſed the ſeas, came into Chriſtendome: of which Barant made a piteous ſlaughter houſe, in that none was able to indure his force, as you ſhall heare hereafter. In the mean ſpace we wil to our former occurrents



### CHAP. IX.

- 1 Of the great battell which was betweene the Emperour and Gautier, in which Charlemaine was taken prisoner: 2 How Loys the ſonne of Charles came with a great power againſt Maiance to reuenge his father.



Yet two yeares expired, for which the truce was aſore taken, betwixt the good emperour Charles and Gautier; by the meanes of traiterous conſpiratozs, which were about the Emperour new ſeds of diſcontentment were ſowne, and he commaunded all his barons to attend him to Maiance, of which Gautier was aduertised, who deſtred all his friends, to be heedfull of their euils. Now departed the emperoz from Paris, bowing neuer to returne into France, if he brought not Gautier and his ſons to their funerall, and ſome arrived within two leagues of Maiance.

## the hiftorie of Meruine.

Which when Gautier by his eſpialles vnderſtoode he muſtred his friends, and marched to meete his enemies, whoſe power was diuided into tenne bataillions: and when hee was commen within ſight of them, after ſpeeches of encouragement, brauely they charged ech other, and came to handy blowes, Crueltie & Terroz comming from heil to learne moze miſery than had bin ſene in former ages: great was the reſolution of Charles that day, who ſlew tenne in a breathing moment, none eſcaping whom his ſwozd bleſſed, Gautier on the other ſide was not behind for true magnanimitie, neither Bertran or any of his brethren, who like mad men made haucke of all with whom they incountered, anon Bertran met with the emperour, and with a battle are which he bare he ſtroke him ſuch a blow on his helmet that he ſeld him from his horſe, and that with ſuch heauy vertue, that for all the gold of the earth he was not able to riſe to regaine libertie, but force perforce was taken priſoner: which the Duke of Britaine ſeing, he cried, Courage great king, and thou ſhalt ſone be redeemed, with that hee and all the ſlours of France aſſailed Bertran, who ſo brauely defended himſelfe, that in that conflict hee ſlew the Duke of Britaine. Many times was the Emperour remounted and vnmounted, ſo infinite couragious were the ſoure brethren. Gautier their father in an other part of the field made many horſes maiſterleſſe, and many maiſters ſenleſſe, ſo fortunate was his ſwozd, and ſo lucky his reſolution: this battell continued exceeing long, chriſtians againſt chriſtians, ſelfe laſt againſt ſelfe laſt, and colours againſt colours. The King of England, who came in the ayde of Denmarke that day did wonderous deedes of knight-hood. But king Charlemaine frantike to ſee his loſſe, ranged here and there till hee mette with Thierrie, the ſonne of Gautier, whom with Joyous his good ſwozd hee ſue at the firſt incounter. Bertran lion-like aſ-

3  
frighten

## the second part of

frighted the amazed flockes of the French men befoze him, onelie to finde Charles, and no other; whome so soone as euer he encountered, he felled from his horse with a blowe, and there presently had slaine him, if his father who was alwayes exceeding wise had not withheld him, saying, it was a sin most capitall, to slay the bruest champion in the world, or touch the blood of the holy annointed. Wherefoze taking him prisoner, with a strong gard they conueied him to Gaiance. The Frenchmen no sooner saw their king surprized, but they betooke themselves to flight. At which Gautier reioyced, and disoained to pursue them, but forthwith went to Gaiance, where he made processions and triumphs for his victorie, and the taking of the famous Emperour Charlemaine; to whom (being befoze him) he saide, Sacred and high esteemed king of France; in what fail are the wrongs which I have indured by you, and iustly hath the King of Kings inflicted this deserued shame on your dishonour, both for these iniust actions, and for exiling (without cause, the iewels of thy kingdome from their native countries: Know therfore, thou shalt neuer escape from this thraldome till thou hast made me a sufficient restitution, and wept thy wrongs from thy soules bitterness. By my Crowne, sayd Charles, I will neuer doe it, and if thou dost not deliuer me, thou art iniust, because thou art sworn my liege man and subiect. As thus they were arguing an esquier entred into the hall, his eyes blabbed with weeping, who turning himselfe to Gautier, tolde him of the death of Thierrie, which Bertran no sooner heard but heauing by his battell are, he thought, and had slaine King Charles, but his father catching him in his armes, withheld him, saying; fie sonne, fie, why seekst thou to kill the good Emperour, or to staine thine honour by killing in cold blood? Thy brothers death was the chance of war, and his graue is honourable, where thus to kill the Empe-

rou

## the historie of Meruine

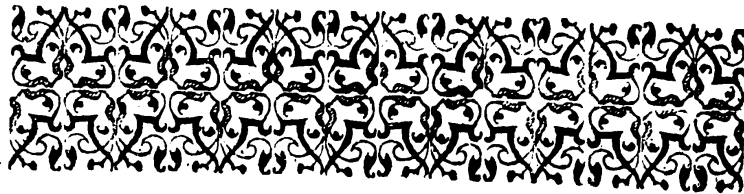
rou were ignominious and slaughterous. Yet this I doe protest, I will imprison him during his life, if better perswasion counsell me not to the contrary. This being said, King Charles was inclosed in a strong tower, and with him soure and twentie other prisoners. Which done, Gautier caused Thierrie to be solemnely interred and all the rest that were slaine with him in the battaille; the whilest Duke Naymes and those that escaped by flight, repaired home to their owne countries.

2 The Duke Naymes as soone as he entred into Paris, repozed to Loys (the Sonne of Charlemaine) the imprisonment of his Father; who (from the torment of his angrie spirite) protested to dye, or reuenge his fathers dishonorable indignitie. To which ende, he dispatcht his Commaunds through all the Citties of France, and mustered an Army to the number of an hundred and fifty thousand resolu'd Souldiers, with which he departed from Paris and came to Depe, where he toke shipping and made for Denmarke. Where we will leaue him, and speake a little of Barant (surnamed the Cruell) who by this time was growen so mightie, that not any Horse had abilitie to sustaine him; and yet the tyrannie of his mind did exceed the monstrousnes of his bodie, for he caused his owne Mother to be beheaded, because (in a discontented humo) hee cald him Ballard; at which inhumane slaughter, many repined, but he slew them eaerie one that did but giue a shew of displeasance; so that through his terro, all the Pagans became obedient to his will. With a great Armie of men he went befoze Montment, and won it both by assaill and diuelish art: for the same night that he slew his mother, the damned fiend Murasier appeared vnto him, and made a covenant with him, that he should neuer (for any thing whatsoeuer) renounce the law of Mahomet; to which hee willingly



272  
The second part of

lingly agreed : for ioy whereof, Mutafier triumphed and said he should be the destruction of all Chriſtendome, promiſing that he should neuer die by the hand of any man ha- uing been nurſed by the milke of a woman. This promise made Barant proud : for he imagined that there could not be any infant brought vp without the milke of a woman ; wherefore hee held and reputed himſelfe euer inuincible. When Barant the Cruell had taken Montment, hee put Iacob to death, and all thoſe that truſted in the true God of all things, whom Mathaburna again denied, as ye ſhal heare hereafter.



CHAP. X.

- 1 How *Barant*, ſurnamed the Cruell, departed from Montment with three hundred thouſand ſouldiers, and paſſed the Sea towards Maiance: 2 how *Charls* and *Gautier* made a peace, and ioyued againſt the Pagans.



When Barant had brought all Montment to his ſubiectiō, he went to the Palace, where he found the moſt beautifull Mathaburna, and demaunded of her, whether ſhe would adoe Mahomet or no. My good Lord (ſaide ſhe) I neuer reſuſed him, for he hath alwayes bene deare in my heart, and his temple haue I reſerued in my boſome.

When

273  
the history of Meruine.

When Barant beheld with what a comely grace her ſpeeches were deliuered, and noted the excellling beautie, that reflecting from one eye to another, he became mightily enamored & in loue with her fauor ; ſo that not able to ſmother his deſires, bluntly (like a will-wining mower) hee ſaid; Madame, your excellencies make me wonder, that neuer before beloued there was ſuch a thing as admirati- on : in briefe, I loue you, and if you will let mee eſpouſe you, I will make you Queene of France, and giue you the World for a Dowrie. My Lord (ſaid ſhe) I hum- bly thanke you, but no Eſpouſalls ſhall bee ſo welcome to mee, as the Conqueſt of France, and the death of Charles who hath been the ruine of ſo manie of my kindred ; and on whom inceſſantly I pray for ſome ſtrange vengeance to fall, ſo inceſſant is the hate I beare him. Faire Madame (ſaid Barant) you are exceeding wiſe: and here I promiſe you before Mahomet, whom I cal to witneſs of my Word, within this ſhort ſpace, I will either giue him into your owne hands to take vengeance of him, or dye in attempt- ing your pleaſure. I beſeech you my Lord doe ſo, ſayd Mathaburna : whoſe heart was cleane of a cantrarie o- pinion, wiſhing rather to him and his confederates worſe torments than Hell fier, before that Charles (in thought) ſhould bee diſcontented. Thus ſhee whiſpered to her ſelfe, and then ſpeaking aloude, ſaide ; Yet haue I one other ſute to your Lordſhippe, which is, if you can finde out a knight whoſe name is Meruine, bring him to mee, that I may reuenge my ſelfe of a notable wrong hee hath done me : and then will I not onely be your Loue, but your haſſall, and you ſhall wholly diſpoſe of mee. Thys Re- queſt he ſwoze vpon his life to perſorme. As theſe ſpeeches were uttered ; there came into their preſence a Sarazen ſmith of Denmarke, who for feare had receaued Bap- tiſme, that falling on his knees, reported to Barant all the

274

## The second Part of

the great battaile, and the successe which passed betwixt Charles and Gautier, and of the Emperours imprisonment: telling him, that if his Highnesse were in France, there was no let, but that at his pleasure he might conquer the whole Nation, with ciuill Dissention had broken the newes of their Concord. At these words, Barant was so much oneried, that regardlesse of any manner of thing, he would needs kisse Mathaburna: but she repulsed him, saying; No man vnder heauen should touch her, vntill she were espoused, according to Mahomets lawe. This disdain did very much irage him, so that through his passion, he had stricken her, if a Lord of his counsaile had not withholden him, whom he right highly esteemed: which Lord chid him for his rashnesse, in offering to kill her whom his heart so much loued, and one of so wise and diuine be-  
 honour. Amend my Lord quoth he your fault, and for very shame aske pardon. At these words Barant went vnto her, and demanded if she would forgive him. Pea my lord quoth she, when you bring Charles and Meruine to be my prisoners. Thanks gentle Lady replied he, and forthwith he caused a trumpet to be sounded, and summoning his army, departed towards Gaiaunce, where by the aide of diuels and furies he arrived at the port tenne leagues from the city: where he beganne to sacke, burne and destroy all the Countrey as hee went, shewing himselfe a monstrous diuelish tyrant, and no man. The poore Countrey men that sawe their houses burning, and their wiues and children dying, ranne to Gautier, and told him of the hideous raine which the Pagans made in the Countrey, laying it waste like a forsaken wilbernesse, their number being greater than any eie could account. These amazing words raised the blood from Gautiers heart into his eyes, and thence distilled in dropes of salt water, so that tormented with sodaine feare, he called for his Lords and went to counsaile:

275

## the history of Meruine.

counsaile: during which consult, arrived befoze the Citie, Prince Loys of France, and his French army, who did pitch their pauillions close to the walles, being at that time ignorant of the pagans commings.

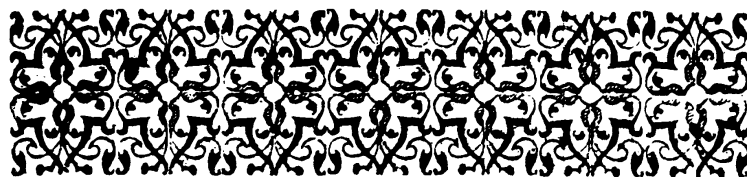
2 It was thought most conuenient by Gautiers counsaile, that the Emperour Charles should be deliuered, that with his aide he might helpe to beate backe the Pagans: which was performed. And Gautier with honey-dipped words intreated the Emperours fauor, saying; he thought the heauens were displeased with their disagreements, for that within those dayes) there were arrived in his kingdom about three hundred thousand Pagans, who had already conquered Bequa, Jerusalem, Babylon, and all those Countries before time, by Meruine so famously conquered: and that now his fortune was in the ballance of Mischaunce or Honor. When Charles had heard his words and marked his humblenes, then pittie expelling all rancor from his breast, embraced Gautier and his sonnes, and took a solemn oath of perpetuall amity: for the which all the city rung with clamours, and euery one triumphed about measure. This done, Charles walking on the citie walles, sawe from the battlements, the tents of the braue French men: which knowing, he saide vnto Gautier; I beleeue that Loys my sonne is in yonder army: for if I be not deceiued, I see the shining of his colours. It is most true saide Gautier, and I am very glad of his comming, for his aide is a welcome hope to our doubtfull aduenture against these damned Pagans, whose Generall is none other but a mortall diuell, as far from pittie as pietie, and both to him utterly vnacquainted. When Charles calling for his horse, accompanied with the Counte of Dampmar-  
 tin, and the Counte of Anioy, he rode forth to his sonnes tents, where after voyall entertainment, he declared the  
 peace

## The second part of

peace that was concluded, the reasons, and the generall good that should thereby be gotten. Then he, his son, duke Naymes, and the rest, returned into the city, whom Gautier and his sonnes met in most solempne order, and conducted through the streets, every one doing honoz to Charlemaine: and so brought him to the pallace, where with unspeakeable ioy they reposed. After them the whole army marched, and were receiued and lodged in the Citie. Then the Kings and Princes went to counsaile touching their weighty warres affaires: in which it was concluded, that the towne should be victualled and manned for many yeares, so the tediousnesse of siege should not preuaile against them. Also it was agreeed, that Prince Loys and Bertran with twenty thousand should lie in an ambush, that when the Pagans had pitched their Tents before the towne, they in the dead of the night should assaile them; and either ouerthrow or disseuer the army. All they conceived fit, they put in practise: and the ambush was laid in a great wood, by which of force the Pagans must passe, who about high noone, came marching in such inuincible troops that the wayes hardly could containe them. In the last ranke of all marched a king whose name was Gamart of Pontuarne, and king of Iuerne the great: with him marched a gentleman of his country, who was almost all naked, and the king himselfe had his head and feet bare. These carried in their hands boughs which they vsed in battel, and no other weapons: their strength is their swiftnes, for they runne faster than hares when greyhounds pursue them.

CHAP.

## the history of Meruine.



### CHAP. XI.

How *Bertran*, his Brethren, *Loys* and the other Christians issued vpon the Pagans: 2 the deaths of all the famous Christians except *Loys*; 3 of the Battaile betwixt *Barant* the cruel, and of *Bertran* of *Denmark*.



After this naked nation was march'd by, (which were the reerward of the battaile) the Christians mounted on horseback, Prince Bertran being the first, who (holding his battle are in his hand, charged the Iuernois, and in a breath space put them all to the sword, except those which (to the amazement of the Christians) ranne not, but flew to Barant, and cryed; Turne thee Prince, turne thee, for the Christians are amongst vs. At this, Barant turning, commaunded to sound Alarum, and with an host of Elephants (whose very weight made the earth tremble) answered the charge of his enemies. Now were the Christians and the Pagans mingled together, and beganne a Battaile huge, fearefull, and wondrous uncertaine. Famous Prince Bertran (like a Tyger in a flocke) made hanocke of the Pagans, and (at the first incounter) slew a kinsman of Bahams, whose legges he brake at the knees. Three other Pagans at one instant charged prince Loys and unhorsed him; who being nimble, rose againe, and miraculously defended himselfe with his sword: yet had hee ben

## The second Part of

been taken Prisoner, but that the Countie Dampmartin rusht in to his Rescue, ouerthrowing thre pagans at one blow. Bertran beholding this tumult, brake the Ranks that stood before him, and came to Loys; yet the Pagans were so abundantly infinite, that they kild his horse vnder him: at which though he greened, yet was he not abashed, but coming to Loys, bad him bee of good courage, for he would not leane him till he saw him newly remounted. At these words (with his eye) hee slew a pagan, and taking his horse (in despite of his Enemies) mounted Loys. When increased the fiercenesse of the Battaille, where the pagans dyed so fast, that the ground was covered with their bodie: at which, Barant (named the Cruell) chateu most wonderfully, and protested to burie himselfe there, if he buried not this dishonour in the glorie of the Christians.

With this hee deuised his Armie, and inclosed his Enemies round about on euery side: whose hearts (lift vp to heauen) cried to their Diuine helper for succour; being but a fishpond to the great Ocean of their Aduersaries. Guyon and Florion (missing Bertran) raunged about, and found him on fote with the Count Dampmartin and prince Loys: to whom they said, that all their liues were forsaite, and there was no way to saue their honours but death, being now inclosed on euery side. Which when Loys heard, he said; Ha Charles, this day shalt thou bee Souldier and comfortlesse. But Bertran (into whom feare was afraid to enter) encouraged him, and said; Why prince thou art well mounted, feare not then, for this day we will be Conquerors: with that he slew another Pagan King who prest nere him, and vpon his horse mounted the Count of Dampmartin, saying he would furnish himselfe presently, which hee did by the death of another Pagan. When he desired his Brothers, not to forsake, but followe him

## the history of Meruine.

him, for that day he would be such a lustie Warrior, that Conquest should not chuse but wedde with him. They swoze to doe his desire, and then the battaille was more deasfull than euer it was: for by this time the Christians had slaine thirtie thousand of the best approued Sarazens, at which sight Barant grew mad, and rayloe both against his Pen, Mahomet, and Iupiter.

2 This done, hee flew like a Tempest amongst the Christians, and ouerthrew all with whom he encountred: an hundred he brought dead to the ground without respite. from whose sight the Christians fled as from the diuell, calling on God, and blessing themselves with prayer and crosses. Pitious was the sight to behold, for they could see no way but into danger. so strongly they were inclosed; in somuch, that of twentie thousand which they were in the beginning, now there remained but ten thousand, and they unable to endure Battaille, so vnrrecoverable was the proweesse of Barant. Which bloodie confusion when Bertran sawe, his manly heart relented, and honorable teares issued from his neuer before so stained Cheauer. Loys was much more heartely soze, and millions of times wisht himselfe within the Walls of Paris: wherefore he said to Bertran; Ha Prince, this is our downefall, and here must all our names take their buriall: O, knew my royall Father our misfortune, I know we should in a trice be rescued. Why Prince (replied Bertran) will you goe to him, and see if you can procure it? Willingly (said Loys) if it were possible to passe. No passe, said Bertran? why plucke by thy spirits and doe but onely follow me, and I will make the way easie enough for thee: which indeede hee did, putting all the Pagans to death that were obstacles or lets in his way. When hee was got through the hoste, and put Loys into the wood he said, faire prince, commend my soules loue to

## The second part of

to the emperor Charles, my father, and the faire vnsof-  
nate Singlay my wife, and tell them, this day I haue bound  
my selfe, either to see the utter ruine of paganism, or to  
die in defending our most sincere and holy religion. Faire  
prince (answered Loys) I will doe thy message, but I  
had much rather thou wouldest goe with me, because this  
day the field is no field but a slaughterhouse. Not to be dei-  
fied (said Bertran) will I forsake my brothers, and so ta-  
king leave, Loys departed towards the citie, and he againe  
to the battell, raging vpp and downe till he found his  
brethren, who were most mightily oppressed, till by his pro-  
messe he redeemed them: which no sooner was done, but  
Barant the Cruell, with Entrant the good sword of prince  
Meruine in his hand, which the deuill Muta fier had deli-  
uered him, and with which (in that moment) he had slaine  
tenne noble christians, came and opposed himselfe against  
Bertran, who with his battell axe gaue him such a blowe  
on the helmet, and with such power, that slipping downe,  
cut the horse necke in sunder, bringing Barant ashamed to  
the earth, who before neuer had felt a blowe of such puis-  
saunce, so that calling to Bertran he said, I beseech thee  
christian, tell me what thou art, whose vertue I wonder at.  
My name (said Bertran) was neuer hid for feare of any  
pagan, know then, men call me Bertran of Donmarke:  
when Barant heard this, he knew he was his father, where-  
fore he commanded all his souldiers to retire from him, be-  
cause he would with him trie fortune in single combat.  
Which when his men had done, Barant said, Prince Ber-  
tran, you remember your imprisonment at Damascus,  
your loue to Guyda my mother, whom traiterously you  
forsooke and left with childe of me who am your soune: and  
you can not forget your vowes: now shall all they, nor your  
valour auaille to deliuer you from death, unless you doe fall  
downe and adore our great God Mahomet. When Ber-  
tran

## the historie of Meruine.

tran had heard him, and being enraged with so vile amo-  
tion, he saide: Thou art not my sonne, neither will  
I euer acknowledge the begetting of so prophane a De-  
uill: and with that lifting vp his axe, he strooke him a  
maruellous great blowe, which beganne the fearefull combat  
betwixt the father and the sonne, in which was shewed the  
wonders of resolution; whome in that fight wee will leane,  
and speake a little of the other christians who were all slaine  
save thre and twenty, which yet suruiued, though mighti-  
ly wounded. Guyon amongst the rest was deadly wounded  
by Barant, yet injured as if he had bene immortal, till  
the blood falling into his eyes deprived him of his sight, yet  
notwithstanding, he would not leaue fighting, but strake  
here and there, killing all that came neare him: in the end,  
he assailed his brother Florion with such a mercilesse blow  
that he feld him downe to the earth, who in falling cried, Ah  
brother Guyon, thou hast slaine me whilst I regarded not  
thy fury: woe and alas cried Guyon, what haue I done?  
swete brother forgive me, for the blood of my woundes  
hath closed vp mine eyes, and I did not nor could not be-  
hold thee, my selfe am likewise wounded to the death, and  
mine houres are shortning. This he saide, yet would not  
leaue fighting whilst he had breath to breathe a minute, but  
sate firmly on his horse till there was left alieue but tenne  
Christians: then came a pagan and ranne his lance thro-  
w to Florions body, who said, Now is my death certaine,  
yet will I not die vnreuedged, and with that strooke the  
pagan that he claue him to the girdle, saying, Thus di-  
eth the sonne of Gautier, himselfe by himselfe reuedged:  
then fell he downe, there being at that houre but fixe bre-  
thren christians, whose names were these: Guyon that had  
his eares wound upon him, and his sight forsaken; Flo-  
rion that likewise was at his last breathing; the Count  
Dampmartin; the Duke Dardaine; the Duke of An-  
tois;

## the second part of

to; and Bertran that then with his sonne Barant was combating, the former sive indured long, but in the end, they were all dispatched, so that of twenty thousands there was left but only one, and that was unfortunate Bertran.

3 Admirable was his and Barants combat, all the army admiring their resolutions, and vowing amongst themselves never to part them till thone of them had left his life: very variable was fortune betwixt them, the sonne now triumphing at the fathers decaying, and the father immediately smiling at the sons misfortune: so long lasted this battell, and so much unnatural was the conflict, that the day ashamed, forsooke the heavens; then rained the pagans and setcht torches, and made such fire works, that the night was as bright as the sun-shine, halfe of which they spent in dreadfull and doubtfull wars: the sonne offering the father mercy, if he would adore Mahomet, the father proffering to the sonne forgiveness, if he would renounce blasphemous Mahomet: but both of them being of contrary resolutions, they fell afresh to their fearfull and fatall combat: and Barant vowed if he conquered his father, that he would make himselfe monarch of all the whole world. As he was thus protesting, Bertran gave him a blowe on the head, which brought both his knees to the ground: but starting up suddenly againe, he sent it backe with such a violent requital, as mightily vexed and enraged Bertran, that thinking at one stroke to finish the conflict, he gathered al his strength together, and strooke him so, that he lay on his backe in peeces, so that left without defence, he closed with Barant, whom by his strength he overthrew; but the pagans ranne in and pulled Bertran so, that Barant got upon him, and gave him diuers mortall blowes. Then Barant pulling on his helmet he saide, Father, now be wise, for this is the last moment, in which your life is forfeited, if you will not

adore

## the historie of Meruine

adore Mahomet, and renounce that God which ever thou hast esteemed. Traitor said Bertran, and thou bastard son of a defiled curtezan, thinkest thou death can make me deny my Saviour? thou art deceiued, thou art deceiued. When Barant saw his constancie, he drew forth his dagger and stabbed his father foure times, who cried, thou onely great God of Israel and Saviour of the world, forgive mine errors, and receiue my soule into thy bosome, with that Barant stricke him through the heart, and so he departed this life. Then stood up Barant and saide to his army, Behold princes, now ought you highly to esteeme me that haue slain my mother and my father, to the end I might make mighty your religion, therefore take up this dead body and beare it with me, to kill the heart of old Gautier with consuming sorow.



## CHAP. XII.

- 1 How Loys came to Maiance and reported the wofull estate of the Christians, and the sorrow Gautier made for his sonnes.
- 2 Singlazes sorrow, and the message Barant sent to Charles, together with the answer.
- 3 How Barant slew one of the messengers.



The young prince Loys, who in the battell had receiued many great wounds, was now returned to Maiance, and with a very heavy countenance (the first report of misfortune) came vnto the Kings pallace, where he did



## The second part of

finde the Emperour Charles his father, who looking on his sad looks, asked what was become of the christian army: for (said he) thy looks are heavy and uncomfortable. Was true my lord (said he) and that would hold me longer, but falling to the ground, he swooned: at which Charles cried out with amazement, whereby Gautier and his nobles came forth, who recovered Loys, and laid him on a bed, who calling his father and the rest about him, declared al what had passed in the battell during the time he tarried, and how the whole army of twenty thousand were slaine by the pagans, O peace yong prince (said Gautier) kill me not with thy wordes, flatter my death a little, and say not that all my sonnes are slaine. My Lord (said Loys) doubt not but they are al slaine, or before I left them, we were all inclosed round about, so as it was impossible for any to escape, onely my selfe had fortune, which fortune, I begd from Bertrans sword, who with very much danger to himselfe betwed my way before me.

2 Gautier hearing this, tore his garments, rent his haire, and wringing his hands, made such piteous and lamentable lamentation, that the aire resounded with his outcries, and all that sawe him, became partners of his heaviness. Yet a great degree above the degree of his perfit woe ascended the immortall afflictions of the most excellent Singlay, Bertrans unhappy wife, whose teares are impossible to be described, and to whose woe none can finde an equall epytheton. O heauens (said she) O time, O hard hearted providence, wherein haue I offended, that to my life is adiudged an endlesse torment? Speake, speake you adamantine destinies, why haue you robbed the world of her renowne, and me of my glozie? O that I had time enough to rail on you, or that by railing the time of your powers might be expired. Ah miserable wretch that I am, left all  
forlozue

## the historie of Meruine

forlozue and desolate, who now shall sustaine mine anguish, or pittie my mournings? Alas, none but Death: come then gentle Death, I meane not the slow footed death which attend the footsteps of nature, but the grim Death, sodayne death, the page to untoward mischiete, come thou and be my comfort, thou which hast Thoughts wings, come quickly, and be not tardy, or thus in despight will I pull thee into my bosome; and with that taking a knife which hung at her girdle, she had stabbed her selfe to the heart, but that a squier of Bertrans standing by did holde her, chiding her desperace thoughts, and perswading a more temperate resolution: shee seeing her will broken, swooned, and re-swooned, so that by the helpe of the Ladies, she was conveyed into her chamber, where she reposed. Cenerally ran this sorowes ouer all France, and euery one wept the losse of the princes. During these dayes of mourning, the porters that guarded the gates: the cittie grew amazed, for on a soaine they sawe a numberlesse hoste of Pagans begitt the towne round about, and pitch their pavillions in the face of the Citie: the newes whereof they forthwith carried to the sad king, which hardly was deliuered, but word was brought there were two Turkes royally mounted, who craved accesse to deliuer a message from their mightie Lord Barant the Cruel: they had entrance granted, and were brought to the pallace before Charlemaine, Gautier, Naymes, and the twelve Peeres of France, where after some proude reuerence one of the Turkes thus spake, To the King Charles of Fraunce my Lord and Paister prince Barant the Cruell sendeth this message, If thou like a notarie bare footed, thy handes bound, and a corde about thy necke, accompanied with Gautier in like manner, come and fall downe before him, submitting your selues to his mercie, and renounce the God whom you worship, that then your peace shall continue; otherwise, he doth with ne-

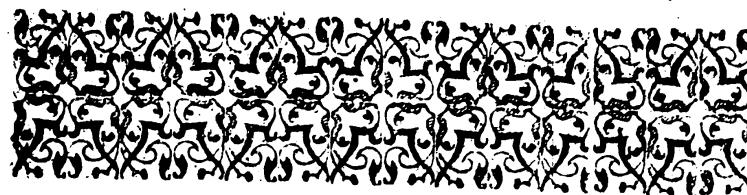
## The second part of

uer to depart from this country till hee haue made it more waste than Gruntland, or the frozen mountaines in Scythia. Pagan (answered Charles when hee had heard the message) if thy Lord doe that, I shall be soie, but tell him from me, that to morrowe I will giue him battell, and feare not, but before night to make him runne headlong into the Sea for his safetie. This is all, and this deliuer.

3 At this the pagans departed, and came to their Lord Barant, who seeing them, asked if Charles would accomplish his pleasure; As answered one of them, but woteth to morrowe to giue you battell, and in the greatest scoone that may be esteemeth your Highnesse threating; as for the lawe of Mahomet hee saide it was damned, and hee esteemed it baser than the basest earth he trod on. Villains (saide Barant) hearest thou him renke our religion, and biddest not kill him? By Mahomet thou shalt pay for thy cowardise, and at that worde hee strake him dead to the ground with his punyarde. The other Ambassadour seeing this, ranne amongst the Pagans and hidde himselfe, swearing if hee escaped now, neuer againe to goe on any messages of Barants. Now by this time began the day to put on the nights apparell, and they went to their restes till the next morning, at what time they arose and armed themselves to receiue battell. Charlemaine on the other side was as mightily troubled, who by the sound of trumpet gathered his army together, and marching out of the towne, hee diuided his hoste into five battallions, euerie one containing at least twentie thousand knightes and wardes.

CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



## CHAP. XIII.

1 How the Christians gaue battell to the Pagans, in which turmoile the good King *Gautier* was slaine, and his hoste ouerthrowne, 2 *Charlemaine* is forced to retire, and issues out the second time, 3 The taking of *Loys*, and Duke *Naymes* prisoners.



When Charlemaine was commen into the place of battell, aduised by the duke of Naimes, hee sent tenne thousand of his souldiers backe to defend the cittie, for feare of some secret stratagem, and then sounding all his trumpets, and making a fearefull noyse, they gaue a braue charge on their enemies, crying, Saint Denis, and our right this day: and in that first onset they slue of the pagans almost an hundred thousand; but they so infinitely abounded, that the christians beganne to stand amazed at their numbers. But Gautier, who looked for nothing but for reuenge for his lonnes deaths, stayed not at any thing, but meeting with a king whose name was Bruant. strooke him dead to the earth; after him, another, and another, and then out drawing his faire bright sword (his launce being broken) hee cutte off king Danemons head, and then rushing desperately into the prease, hee put to death all that encountred him. This while was the good king Charles amongst the pagans, where he killed king Feragu, and di-

II 4

uers

## the second part of

ners others of famous estimation, but in the end he was inclosed round on euery side, where he defended himselfe miraculously: yet notwithstanding, if it had not bene for the Duke Naymes and diuers other gallants of France, their king perforce had bene either slaine or taken, who seeing their succors, renewed new spirittes, and fought like a god of Conquest. Barant the Cruell was not this while idle, but slew the Christians by two and two together, so that the most resolved in the army durst not abide him, but beganne to conuert retrait to plaine flying. Which Gautier with griepe beholding, demaunded a reason for theyr faintnesse: to whom a French man made answer, there was a diuell in the Pagan host, whose furie was not possible to be indured. Gautier desiring to see him, the French man with pure feare brought him to behold him, to whom Gautier cried, Traitor, stay, and giue my sword account for thy murders, and so saying, he stricke him vpon the headpiece so strongly, that the blow glauncing hurt Barant in the thigh; at which the tyrant (being highly enraged) turned and saide: Villaine, thou hast hurt me, but thy life shall be my plaister, and at that word lifting aloft his sword, he cut off one of Gautiers hands and the sword that was grasped in it: which when the good king sawe, spurring his horse, he ouerthrew both Barant and his horse to the earth; in which meane space, a Pagan continuing behinde him, gaue the Christian king such a blow on the helmet, that he claue him to the chape, and he fell dootone dead without motion. Then beganne the Christians to die here and there about the field for safety, at which confusion, Charlemaine sighed, and after many holy prayers against himselfe amongst his enemies, more desperately than before: of his army was not left alive but five thousand, and the most of those flying, and abashlag: the which duke Naymes perceiving, he perswaded the Empe-

rom

## the history of Meruine.

rouer to let a retrait be sounded: which as he was intending to haue done, one brought to him word that Gautier was slaine, so that both grieved and enraged, he flew vpon the king of Cartaria, who but then had slaine a Christian, and with the first stroke claue him to the collar.

2 The dying battell at this seemed to recover, but yet could it not continue, so weake were the ouer-mastered christians: wherefore the sunne having gotten the middle point of the heauens, Charles made a retraite by sounded, and returned into the citie: which Barant beholding, he presently caused engines to be made, with which he cast into the city Bertran at all points so armed as he was when he liued: the sight of whom, renewed afresh both the griepe of Charles, and the rest of the Citie. This done, with the same engine, he did cast huge stones and rocks into the towne, killing diuers of the Burgers as they walked in the stretes: whereupon the rest went to the Emperour, and tolde him, they had rather issue forth, and die fighting, than liue in this danger of continuall fearing, and so they then threw what huge stones by engins were hourly thowne vpon them. Friends quoth Charles, all your willes shall be satisfied. And with that, he issued with all the power of the city the second time: and first assailing the engine, they tore them in pieces to the earth, and put all these to the sword that vied them; and then making towards the army, they ouerthrew their Tents, and cast downe their pavilions, putting a very great number of pagans to death in a moment. Now entred Charles into the Tent of the king of Danubia, whom he slew, and passed on with exceeding great triumph, until the Pagans making an hideous crie, raysed vp all the Campe: who flocking about the Christians, beganne an intollerable battell. In this scirre was king Charles ouerthowne, and had bene taken

## The second part of

taken but for duke Naymes once againe, who in despite of the Pagans, remounted his Soueraigne, and tolde him there was no other way for safety but flight: vnto which Charles did accorde, and thereupon retreated towardes the City.

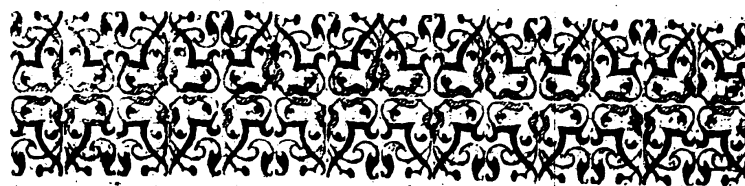
3 But befoze he could regaine the gates, his Sonne Loys, Naymes, and diuerse other Christians were taken prisoners: which when he understood, he would haue turned againe to their rescue, but his Nobles would not suffer him; because they prized his life as a holie relique: and for that cause force perforce they brought him to the pallace, the most discontented King then liuing, whilst the Pagans themselves carried Loys and the rest to Barant the Cruell: who taking a Roy my view of them, first asked duke Naymes what he was. My Lord quoth he, my name is Tristram, a Burgesse of this City, this is my Sonne, these other are my kinsmen, all at thy mercy. Yet if ransom may deliuer vs, I will giue to you an hundred tunne of wine, and an hundred Quarters of wheate, all which I haue ready in my house in Balance, of which King Charles hath no notice; so; and if he had, he would seaze it, and leaue me nothing. Barant was glad of this offer, because his victualles were spent, and he had reinfozced two hundred thousand Pagans, so that he accepted the ransom: yet did the Duke desire hostage for the performace of their deliuerie, which he had: and then went he to the Citie to Charles, whose sorrow smiled to behold him, and tolde him what was done, which the Emperour highly commended, and forthwith caused the ransom to be deliuered: which when Barant had receiued, he sent Loys and also the rest home to the Citie, whom Charles with very great joy of heart receiued, and sent backe the Pagan hostages.

But

## the history of Meruine.

¶ But it happened (presently after) that there fell such a wondrous famine in the citie, that they were enforced to eate theyr hozles, and other Beasts of the vilest loathsomenesse: and in the end, (by extreme scarcitie) they grewe into such lamentable neede and miserable povertie, that they had surely deliuered vp the Towne to Barant, had not God (of his infinite mercie) miraculously sent princely Meruine to be their Ayddour. Of whom I would speake, but that first I must write of Drohes; who (as you haue heard) departed from Montment, accompanied onely with his Loue Adain, and swore neuer to lend rest to his labours, till he had found meanes for Meruines deliuerie, whom in all the world he esteemed most deare: of which he gave sufficient testimonie, as you shall heare in the Historie.

### Chap. XIII.



1 How Drohes and Adain traualled so long in vnfrequented places, till they found out the true meanes for Meruines deliuerie: 2 How Drohes combated with a Griffon for his Loue Adain.



Drohes and Adaine (after they were departed from Montment) clad themselves like Pilgrimes, and in that humble manner on foot beganne their wearie iourney, to finde out means for the euer esteemed Meruines deliuerie.

## The second Part of

rie. So long they trauelled, till they came into a vast vn-  
inhabited Wood, where repaired a certaine Hermit (as  
was before declared) to Drohes; with whom he desired to  
speake. So long they wandred in the Wood, till at last  
they came to a delicate fountaine, where they sat downe  
to repose, and (with such simple viands as they carried a-  
bout them) they brake their fasts: in the midst whereof  
came vnto them three Villaines, who continually vsed to  
rob all those which passed by that way. The first of whom  
said to Drohes, Is this thy Wife thou carriest by & downe  
this Countrey? She is, said Drohes. And whither in-  
tend you to goe with her, quoth the other? Sir (said Dro-  
hes) to Saint Katherine, where our Journey shall haue  
his ending. By heauen (replied the first againe) I know  
thou art full of gold, which thy deuotion hath got from cha-  
ritable giuers; there is no other remedie but we must be  
thy partners: and, with that, offering to strike, Drohes  
role lightly by, and with his palmers staffe gaue him such  
a blow, that he sprinkled his bzaines about the field. The  
other two (seeing their companion slaine) assailed Drohes,  
who wonderfully defended himselfe. In the ende, Adaine  
with her Palmers cudgel, strake one of them behinde, so  
that she felled him to the earth: and Drohes strue the o-  
ther. When turning himselfe to Adaine, he longingly im-  
bzaced her and praised her feminine resolution; of which  
at that instant euen as he was speaking, he perceiued him  
whom Adaine had stricken to reuiue againe: wherefore tak-  
ing him, he sayd; Villaine, thy death is certaine, vlesse  
thou tellest me truely what countrey this is, and whether  
thou hast any more consorts of this damned qualitie? He  
(whom feare of death did terrifie) thus answered; Good  
Sir, the verie truth is, we are full fistie in all, who are  
gouerned vnder our captaine Raoul, sometimes of Rol-  
quilon: who (banished from France) brought vs into these  
parts,

## the history of Meruine.

parts, where we liue onely by rapine and the spoyle of pas-  
sengers. Then tell me said Drohes, which is my readiest  
way to finde out the Heremite that continueth in this  
wildernesse. Sir answered the villaine, you must keepe  
along this way till you come to a great rocke, then turn-  
ing vpon your right hand towards it, you shall find out the  
Hermitage. This said, Drohes tolde him thest was not  
pardonable, and with that beat out his bzaines with a cud-  
gell, and then went and found out the hermitage, and knoc-  
ked at the doze, till the ancient Hermit comming forth,  
demaunded what he would: Right reuerend and graue  
Sir quoth Drohes, we are Christian Pilgrims. When  
the Hermit heard they were Christians, he louingly em-  
bzaced them, and bade them welcome, because that he ne-  
uer had seene Christian in that place before, asking them,  
whither their iourney boze them. Good Sir answered Dro-  
hes, our steppes are vncertaine, for I trauell to finde out  
some meanes for the deliuey of the onely excellent creature  
of the world, incomparable Meruine, who traiterously is  
imprisoned at Paris, vnder the guard of a diuell: and for  
that cause am I come to thee (diuine man) to learne meanes  
for his restitution, because Experience hath made thee to  
be wise in all things, especially in matters of heue great  
secret. It is true, quoth the Hermit, yet in this I can  
say nothing at all, but I will, and if thou be so pleased,  
send thee vnto a place where (as I doe beuilly imagine)  
thou shalt vnderstand any thing: and thus it is, Thou  
must goe into Iuda, and inquire for the Hermit of that  
Countrey, and to him tell thy desire, and he will gladly  
resolue thee; for he is a great Clarke, a great Prophet, and  
a man of great excellencie. Drohes gaue him many thanks,  
and then (taking his leane) went towards Iuda: whither  
by his trauell he soon arrived, and came into the Forrest  
where the Hermit liued; wherein as he wandered, he was  
set



## The second Part of

set vpon by two cruell and rauenous Beares, but in the end he slew them, so great was his courage and resolution. And then they trauelled forward untill they had found the Hermite; who (being set in the portall of his Hermitage) Drohes reverently saluted. The Hermite requited his salutation, demanding whither they trauelled: To you quoth Drohes, who are the wonder of this age for diuine wisdom: and this (reuerend sir) is the verticall cause of our wandering; The onely accomplished man of all the world, and he whose presence was my life, rare Meruin my companion, hath most treacherously bene imprisoned in Prison now about fives yeares, and onely garded by a fiend of hell, whom no mortall strength can vanquish: now my desire is to know some meanes for his deliuerie, without whose redemption my life shall consume in sorrow. Pilgrime (said the Hermite) I vnderstand all that thou seekest; wherefore, for thy loues sake, which I find to be so perfect, I will doe mine indeuour: stay here then till my returne, and thou shalt haue thy seeking. Then went the Hermite into his study, and beganne to coniuere, till a spirit appeared vnto him, and demanded his will. Tell me quoth the Hermite, where is Prince Meruine prisoner: and by what meanes may he be deliuered? He which will haue him restored answered the spirite, must goe into the Ile of Dozdon, where dwelleth an Hermite named Robaster, tis hee that must deliuer him: for it was predestinate to Meruine in his Birth, that he should be imprisoned, till he were deliuered by a man whose mother died before he was bozne, and that is Robaster. More of this I cannot, nor I will not report vnto thee: and then the spirit departed with such a tempest, that all the corners of the spacious Earth trembled.

Then came the hermit to Drohes, and tolde him what he had vnderstood by Magicke, giuing him withall this

caneat,

## the history of Meruine.

caneate, that when he came into that Ile, he should be well and sufficiently armed, for that there was therein a Griffon, an invincible monster, whose hugeness was incomparable, and who had power to flye swifter than an Eagle, who suffered not anie to come into that Ile, but he destroyed them.

Graue father (sayd Drohes) I most humbly thanke you, and will from henceforth (for this vnspeakable and incomparable good turne) be both your knight and your Beadlesman. Then taking his leaue, hee and Adain departed towards the Ile of Dozdon, and at length came to a great Riuer that descended into Wybe, which passeth by to Prison, being Butors chiefe Citie, where the Princely Meruin lay so treacherously imprisoned. Over this streame (for their passage money) hee and Adain were conuayed, and thence came to a little Village, where (during the time of their small repose) hee caused a new Palmers staffe to be made for him of great Barres of yron, with pykes halfe a fote in length: and then (being readie to depart) he said to Adain; Thou art too exceeding vehement thus to pursue my footsteps, I beseech thee (at my intreatie) stay heere till my returne. But he by no meanes would consent, saying; in all things he would be partner of his fortune: then they departed together, and came into the Ile of Dozdon.

2 Into which they had scarcely entered ere they discovered a Griffon, who no sooner had set his eyes vpon them, but hee came towards them: and first thinking to take Drohes, Drohes with his staffe gaue him such a mighty blowe as might haue felled a Lion, but hee esteemed it not: then Drohes (with one of the pikes) strooke him thorough the fote, that hee cryed extremely; yet notwithstanding,

standing,



## The second part of

standing, againe he came against him, thinking to sle away with him; but standing in awe of his staffe, would not, but mounting aloft, fell vpon Drohes like a mountaine, and with his gripes wounded him so that he fell to the earth, and lay in a swoond, till Adain cried; *Arise my Lord,* for the monster returneth. At these words Drohes awaked, and holding the point of his staffe ouer his head, the Giffon durst not assaile him. Wherefore Drohes thinking in houering to kil him, he strucke so vehemently, that missing, his staffe entred more than two fot into the very ground, as by no means he could get it out againe. Which the Giffon seeing, descended to haue bozne him away: but Drohes held the staffe so fast in his hand that he could not. Adain beholding her Lord in that danger, strucke the Giffon on the wing such a blow, that leauing Drohes, he returned to Adain, and seazing vpon her, boze her through the ayre: but as the storie saith, ere hee descended to the ground she was dead, so grienously did his tallans gripe her to the heart.



## CHAP. XV.

1 How Drohes spake to Robaster touching the deliuerie of *Meruine*: 2 Of *Malabeon* of *Luton* Robasters father that gaue counsell in the action.



The monstrous Giffon when hee saue in his sight Adain dead, hee presently deuoured her, for whose losse Drohes sorrowed extreamely, and mingled with his moanes many swoonings, and many bitter lamentations.

## the history of Meruine.

tations. During which, Robaster comming by, and hearing him make great moane, now for Adaine, then for Meruine; he toke compassion of his woes, and went and saluted him, saying: god sir, I haue heard your outries, in which you exclaime for the losse of a wife, and a perfect friend; be comforted man, for destiny is unremoueable. When Drohes heard Robaster hee lifted vp his head, and with humble reuerence he demanded of him his name. My name quoth he is Robaster, who hath bin the death of many Pagans, yea and of many Christians also, for which, now doth my soule indure a mortall penance. Drohes hearing this, amongst his woes reioyced and saide, *O* Robaster, thou art the Starre which hast led me hither, and in thee is the power of all my ioy and happinesse. Then Robaster taking him vp, for he was verie sore wounded, he presently led him to his hermitage, where Malabeon his father was, and cured him: but Malabeon went inuisibly, for such was his power, and onely he was seene to his sonne, and to none other. When time of repast came, they sate downe to meate, and Drohes smelling a delicate perfume, demaunded what it was, and Robaster tolde him, that they were certaine rare waters the which he kept in his chamber, which if he pleased, he would shew him; thence he brought him into his chamber, which resembled an earthly paradise, so rare was the exquisitenesse thereof, all being done by the art of Malabeon, the which Drohes in admiring, praised beyond all measure, and Robaster, that toke no small delight in Drohes, tolde him he should command any thing he saue, or wherein his helpe might doe him seruice, he bowed he should finde it most willing and ready. *O* quoth he, will you not heereafter goe from your promise? Not for the world quoth he, Then will I take you at your word quoth Drohes, know then that for these five yeares space, the onely glozie of the world,

298  
the second part of

worlde, the myracle and mirour of Knightthode, hath beene by corrupt and false treason, detained and kept prisoner in Gino, from which place it is utterly impossible that euer he should be deliuered, except by the handiwork of almightie God, and your good helpe, because a diuell of hell is his gardian, neare vnto whom no man dareth to approach, so cruell is his wrathfull indignation. Wherefore I humbly pray you, that in regard the life of Vertue lieth in your power, be desirous in the hearts of men, for attributing vnto her a most happy restitution. Now I pray you doe you call the knight, quoth Robaster? Wh answered Drohes, it is renowned Meruine the sonne of Oger of Denmaske, and the right beautifull and vertuous Ladie Morgua, I haue heard quoth Robaster, of one sonne of Ogers, who was slaine by Charles the sonne of Charlemaine, who was called by the name of Baldwine, but of Meruine I neuer heard before, nor of any of his actions.

2 Then spake Malabeon his father, and saide, Sonne, it is very true, that Oger begot the valiant Prince Meruine of the Fairie Lady Morgua in the fairie land, which I know right well that was present at his baptizing, as the fairie can well witnesse with me, who stole him from his mother, and for griefe thereof, knowing herselfe to be damned, suffered a diuell to beget on her a monster with thre heads, that hereafter shall bring all Christendome to a most wofull heauinesse, vntill by that famous and most thily renowned Prince Meruine he be brought vnto some shamefull end, whom it behoueth thee to deliuer, because now the date of his destiny is expired, and if he be not the sooner redeemed, all Christendome will be utterly ruined by Barant surnamed the Cruell, against whom no creature is able to indure battell, except Meruine, in whose hands

299  
the historie of Meruine

hands the tyrants life is contained: Father quoth Robaster, by what manner of meanes may I worke his deliuerance? Very easily answered Malabeon, for I will first goe alone to Gino, and waiting the comming out of Mutafer (who shall not see me) steale priuately away the keys of the prison, and then returning for thee, by the helpe of the highest Sonne deliuer him. Good father said Robaster, help vs in this holy deed. I will dispatch it and returne quoth Malabeon, before the day goe downe. Drohes hearing this, ouercome with ioy, embraced Robaster in his armes, and asked if he euer sawe his father. Yes said he, but besides my selfe, not any creature. In sundry other discourses they continued vntill Malabeon returned from Gino with the keyes, and bade them arise, for now was the time to goe and deliuer Meruine, for behold, here are Mutafer's keyes. When the two barons heard this, they leapt for ioy, and Drohes marvelled that he was so soon returned. Stand not amazed, (said Malabeon) but let vs be gone, for if Mutafer shall chaunce to returne, and finde his keyes taken away, it may be he will do the prince some iniurie. Alas said Drohes, how shall wee be able in a moment to goe more than an hundred leagues? Care not (said Malabeon) onely arme your selues and doe but follow me, which they did, and then casting pilgrims weedes ouer them, went so that no man could possibly perceiue their armors, and at the last came to the river Dabe, ouer which (by the helpe of Malabeon) they passed vpon a little planke of wood, and then came vnto the view of Minor, where Malabeon commaunded them, that as soon as they should come before Butor, that they should sayne themselves to be come from far countries, and that they should say, that Barant the Cruell had by his promise taken both Charles and the twelve peeres, assuring them that hee would stand by them, and giue aduise in euery action.

300

## The second part of

Then afterwards in the very dead of the night, at what time euery creature shall be at their rest, we will goe to the prison and set renowned Meruine at libertie befoze it be midnight. This being said, they went forward euen to the city gates, where they remained untill the next morning that the Sunne was risen, deuising within themselves with what speeches to entertaine king Butor: and when they perceiued the day began to appeare, they knocked at the gates, and desired entrance: but they answered, that without the kings Maiesties knowledge, he durst not suffer any man to enter. Then said Robaster, goe to the king and tell him, we haue brought him newes which will make his Highnesse ioyfull, and at thy returne we will giue to thee thre pieces of siluer: Thou speakest well quoth the Porter, and went his way and tolde the King, who very well remembryng the entrance of Bertran and Drohes, was euer after circumspect of euery mans entrance: wherefoze causing about thirtie of his best appointed knights to arme themselves, with them he went to the gates, and receiued in the two Pilgrims, and presently remembred Robaster, for that he had afore time slaine a monstrous Serpent which had greatly wasted his countrey, for the which king Butor has promised many a time and often to giue him what gift he would desire within compasse of any reason.

### CHAP.

301

## the history of Meruine.



### CHAP. XVI.

- 1 How Robaster deceiued king Butor. 2 How Meruine was deliuered out of prison, and went to the pallace where he slew Butor, his Queene, and diuers other pagans. 3 Of the great battell he maintained.



Most honorable was the entertainment that Butor gaue to Robaster, imagining that he was come for the gift which in time past he had promised, but it was not so, and he feasted him and Drohes (who by reason of his disguise, he knew not) sumptuously: but Robaster he would not eate any thing, but passed the time in telling of strange newes, and in the end assured him that prince Barant the cruel had taken the emperour Charles and his peers prisoners. At which tidings Butor much ioyd, thanking Robaster for his speeches, and putting his hand vnder his feet, did him vassalle-like reuerence, whereat Drohes smiled to himselfe. Thus was Butor deceiued by Robaster and by Drohes.

2 Now when the evening drew on the blackest curtins of the night, and euery one betooke themselves to their rest, the King gaue commaundement, that Robaster and his companion should bee delicately lodged, which was very iustly perfozmed: but as one as old Malabcon knew that dead slepe had arrested the thoughts of euery one, he came to the two christians saying; nowe arise if you will deliuer

302  
the second part of

Meruine, for I haue the keyes of the prison. At that word they arose and departed, the Sonne shining out the pleasantest beames of her countenance, and came to the doore of the dungeon, where staying Malabeon opened the doores, and then said, faire sonne, stay thou here till we returne, and guard this passage. I wil (said Robaster) and sweare, that if there come but 100 they shall not escape me. Then entred in Drohes and Malabeon, who heard the musike which the Fairies made thrice a day, to reuine the spirites of Meruine (as was before written:) at which Drohes wondered, until Malabeon tolde him what it was, and the occasion thereof: the musike ceasing, they went to Meruine that lay in most intolerable martiredome, who as soone as he saw Drohes, he maruelled; but Drohes ouerioyed with his sight, came to embrace him, but could not speake, so full was his heart with ouer-pressing ioy: but hauing gotten a little libertie for his tongue, saide, Thou wonder of men, behold Drohes thy true prisoner, who is come to finde meanes to deliuer thee from imprisonment. When Meruine heard him, he embraced him, and doubled kindenes vpon kindnes. Then Malabeon, by vertue of an herb he had brake off his fetters. And Meruine seeing himselfe deliuered; asked Drohes what he was that vsene talked vnto him; and Drohes at large discoursed altouching Robaster and Malabeon his father, who were indeede the true actors of his deliuerie, for without them his bondage was eternall. These speeches Malabeon brake, and tolde them they must depart, for why, the houre approached, in which Mutsier was accustomed to come vnto the prison. By my Danour (said Meruine) I would he were here, for of all the Deuills in hell, I desire to combate with him. This being saide, he arose out of the dungeon and came forth, whome as soone as Robaster sawe, he called to minde Prince Oger, and saide, Believe me princely Meruine, I was hardly perswaded that Oger had a sonne.

303  
the historie of Meruine

a sonne; but now I assure my selfe by thy countenance, for one hand is not so like an other, as you to his excellence. After this Malabeon brought Meruine into the chamber where his armour was, which he presently put on, but his sword was not there, which somewhat grieved him, but in neede of it Malabeon gaue him a mace of yron, and then they departed to the kings pallace, where they found euery one asleepe, so that they vnforbidden went to the kings bed chamber, where breaking open the doores with their sate the king awaked and offering to rise, Meruine rushed vnto him and saide; Damned traitour, and thou staine of kingdomes, behold here Meruine the sonne of Oger, whose very soule thou hast tormented, is now come to take account of thy treason, and in so saying, he strooke him with his mace such a mercurielle blowe, that in his bedde hee slue him: and Robaster at the same instant killed his Quene also. Which done, they passed from chamber to chamber, and put to death all the pagans they found of what estate soeuer. During all this fearefull night, not any creature escaped, but onely one base peasant, who running into the Cittie, gaue a generall allarum, crying, Treason to the kings sacred person. At which clamours all the towne rose vp in armes and came to the pallace, where they found the Christians, who lying amongst them begonne a dreadfull battell: and Malabeon by his excellent Arte, made such a light, that the pallace was as bright as day to the Christians, but hell-like blacke to the Pagans, who by that meanes being slaine by their enemies, slue also themselves by their ignoraunce. Drohes set forthward with desire of reuenge, was gotte into the thickest of the Pagans, but their numbers were so infinite, that all his prowesse was much too little to haue saued his life, had it not bene for Malabeon, who cried to Robaster and Meruine to succour Drohes or he was but dead. at that they turned about, and

304

## The second part of

preaching into the throng, there was not a pagan that durst abide or indure them: so that all thre joining themselves together, they made haucke of their enemies, onely one thing greatly bzed their trouble, which was the casting of scalding water out of the windowes upon them, but yet notwithstanding, they slew so many that the streets were paved with their bodies. Then came Malabeon and said, Princes, now is the time to be gone, therefore sheath your swords and retire: why quoth Meruin, or so? what canst? Because saide Malabeon, Mutasier euen now is in coming, and when he shall perceiue this slaughter, he incraged will set all the city on fire with unquenchable flames, so that we, nor any pagan shall escape the mischief. Thus forward the Christians departed, fighting all the way till they were without winoz, and without the freight passage, then retired the Pagans, but were no sooner reentred but Mutasier came, who when he missed Meruine he became madly incraged, and with the frenzie of his anger set all the City on fire, so that not a Pagan escaped from burning, but onelie one, who then was without the City, and immediately bare those sadde tidings vnto Barant the Cruell, who little or nothing esteemed the discourse. Meruine and his companions being within sight, marvelled at the hugenesse of the fire, till Malabeon calling his son, made him conduct the princes, and aid them in every thing, soz of force he must passe into the faire land, to heare a cause betwixt two of his aliance, that then were at dissention, and so he departed, and Meruine and the rest marched on their way.

CHAP.

305

## the historie of Meruine.



### CHAP. XVII.

- 1 How *Meruine*, *Robaster*, and *Drohes* ariued in a wood amongst robbers.
- 2 Of the dangers they were in,
- 3 How *Malabeon* aided them.
- 4 How they slew the theeues.



He thre Christians, after the departure of Malabeon travelled all the day without finding any house or place of harbor, in the end, they came into a thicke wood, where they travelled a long time, till in the end sitting downe vnder a chesnut tree, they saide to themselves, that vnlasse some aduventure called them forth, they would rest there all that night: but their repose was very short before r. outlaws that liued by robbing came out and espi- ed them, so that one saide to the rest, behold yond it. weary ones, on my life they are full of gold, wherefore let vs take them and carry them to our Castle, where our master Barre will be proud of them. This saide, they aduanced themselves, and saluted the Princes, who stedfastly beheld till one of the theeues said, Gentlemen you are wel found: and gallants saide Robaster, who rose withall, you are as well met, what is your pleasures? Our pleasures are, saide one outlaw, that if you haue stoze of gold, you diuide it amongst vs. We haue qd Robaster enough for our selues, and for xx. such as we be, onely we lacke lodging, which if you will be so kinde as help vs with, then commaund our purses. Gentlemen saide the thiefe, if you will follow me to a castle hard by, you shall haue that and what besides ye will.



306  
The second Part of

will desire. Why words are sweet qd Robaster, ride then before and we will follow thee. Come said the thiefe, who thought to take them prisoners. And then they passed along with the ten Outlawes and the thre Christians: and as they rode, Drohes perswaded them to be aduised, for the Villaines were not guilty of one good thought towards them. 'Tis true qd Robaster, but it is no matter, for we thre being together, were we in hell, in despite of all the diuels in hell, we would giue our selues freedom: they do thinke to haue gold, and for mine owne part (since I was bozne) I neuer boze one crosse about me. In sadnesse said Meruine, then I am thy companion, for iust so well am I stozed: but it skilleth not, for their imagination will giue vs entertainment. By my soule quoth Drohes smiling, as bare is the payment our host shall get at my hand. Thus making sport at their wants, they followed the threues to the castle Malfeaus; where alighting they ascended vp in to the hall, where hanged all the shieldes of those haplesse knights, whom in the house were murdered. Belieue me qd Meruine, this a right beautifull place, what is hee that is lord thereof? His name (said one of the Outlawes) is Barre a prince of great possessions. When came an other, saying; Gentlemen, it is the custome of this house, all lodgers here deliuer vp to me their weapons till their departure. Friend qd Meruine, not ours by any means, for we loue them so deare, that we lie with them, eate with them, walke with them, and nothing but death can part vs and them. It seemeth then saide the thiefe, you suspect some mischief. Mischiefe (said Robaster looking about) let me see him that is so hardy as not to tremble if we frowne vpon him. Why (qd a villaine againe, thinke you we are not enow to master you thre? Yes, yes. When were the castle gates lockt vp, for all the villains were entred in, and Barre their captaine vsed the princes very kindly, setting them by

307  
the history of Meruine.

his side at the table, where was stozed of all meats, yet Robaster would neither eate nor drinke any thing: wherefore Barre askt him if he did it for penance. Psea sir qd one of the thieues, it is for the good men he hath slain, and for the robberies he hath done in his life time. Robaster hearing him, snatcht vp a knife, and threw it at him, but missing the villaine, it strucke halfe a foot into a table: which Barre seeing was much grieved, and desired Robaster to be patient, and amends should be made him. Then came the vassaille, and kneeling, asked him forgiveness: which (after some ceremonies) was granted on condition he should lose one eye, for calling him murderer. Barre that then durst not deny any thing, agreed, so he lost an eye, but bould ere midnight to be reuenged. Supper ended, and the time of rest come, Barre brought them into a faire chamber, with one bed in it, saying to Robaster: You shall lodge here, and these other in another chamber not far off. Now, qd Robaster shall we be diuided: by heauen we are all one, and will not be seperated. Sir qd Barre, I haue no chamber with thre beds. Fetch it, qd Robaster. I will said Barre, who durst not denie any thing: so two beds more were brought in.

2 As soone as he was gone, Meruine locked the doores, and then beganne they to disarm themselves: which the thieues perceiued through a chinke that was in the wall of the chamber. When they were laide, they fell soundly asleepe, insomuch that they snoared. When retired all the thieues like vnto thienes indeede, being wonderously agast and fearefull, offering sometimes to turne backe againe, imagining that the princes sleep was but fained and counterfet. At the last perceiuing they slept indeede, they much the more boldly set forward, hauing all resolved amongst themselves, and each to other swozne the death of the



308  
The second part of

the Chyztians. But the damned Captaine of this wicked crue bade them first seaze the Princes weapons for their moze securenes: which accordingly they did, and then they went fure to each beddes side with their naked swordes in their hands, beeing readie to giue the dismall stroakes of their unhappinesse: had not God deliuered them strangely: and thus it was as the Hystorie repozteth.

3 Malabeon beeing in the Fayzie Land, by the will of God remembred his Sonne, and instantly hee had knowledge both of his and his companions dangers: wherefore (in a trice) charming himselfe into the Chamber, he put vnder each of their beddes an hearbe, which had this vertue, that it made them beleene both the Chamber and the bedde were on fier: then making a fearefull noyse the Knights arose. Which sodainnes so frightened the theeves, that they ran backe, leauing the armour and weapons of the Princes they had befoze stolne: who (by the seeming fier-light) discovering their danger and armes, armed themselves and toke their weapons into their hand. Then said Malabeon, quickly slay these theeves, for if God had not defended you, this night, all thzee had beene murdered.

4 When they heard the voyce of Malabeon, they did as he bade them: for in that hower they began a fierce combat because the villaines were stout and valiant: but in the end Meruine slew 25. and Robaster and Drohes the rest: so that net any escaped but onely one, who running vnder a bed, imagined to hibe himselfe from death: but Robaster perceiuing it, pursued him; and when he saw his fortune disclosed, he fell vpon his knees and craued mercte, promising to amend his life, and to shew them the goodliest hourse of the world, which he would giue for his ransome. Meruine gaue eare to those words, and said; Friend shew me that

309  
the historie of Meruine.

that beaſt which is ſo ſingular. Then they ſoure lighted a torch and went towards the ſtable, which was locked with thre lockes, all which he opened and went in: to whom he ſhewed them the hourse, that had befoze him twenty barres of yron, and behinde him as many. The hourse no ſooner ſaw the knights, but he neighed. Now quoth Meruine, Shall we come to this hourse? Sir said he, ſee you theſe holes that locke theſe barres, there was neuer yet man that had power to vndoe them. Meruine hearing this, laid his handes vpon the lockes, and they all flew open: there was also a written ſcrolle, which Meruine toke vp and read, containing this matter.

Meruine, I ſalute thee with this gift: know thou, that I am a witneſſe of thy birth, and held thee at the front in the land of Fairia: wherefore this noble hourse (which is the brother to Baucant) I giue vnto thee, whose name is Paſſant. Neither do thou change it, for he is the erquiſiteſt in enery point that ere was bred vnder heauen. He is old, but yet as good as if he were yong, becauſe his laſt daies ſeruite ſhall be as good as his firſt. Also I beſeech thee, that the firſt ſonne which thou ſhalt haue, after thy marriage, may beare my name: which doing, thou ſhalt locke my loue vnto thee, and be bleſſed from heauen.

Written by thy Godfather:  
King Orient.

Thus was the Letter written, and Meruine reioyced, who going to the hourse the hourse was proud: then Meruine eſpied his furniture, which he put on: and as hee was in trimming him, the thiele came behinde him to ſhew light to Meruine, but he could not ſo quickly paſſe by, as Paſſant

## The second Part of

fant with his hales strake him dead to the ground. At which Meruine was displeased, till Malabeon said; prince, be not offended for this, for hee was a thafe and a murderer, which Passant knowing, strake him; for his understanding is mightie, and he was bred in Fairia: misdoubt not then, for hee will serue thee princely: and heere must Robaster take leaue of thee, for he may goe no farther with thee. When Meruine embraced Robaster, and gave him infinite thanks for his deliuerance. Thus parted Malabeon and Robaster, who with all speed came backe to their Hermitage; where we will leaue them, and returne againe to Meruine and Drohes.



## CHAP. XVIII.

<sup>1</sup> How *Meruine* and *Drohes* went to *Brandis*, and conuerted the Countrey: <sup>2</sup> how they came before *Montment*, where (in the Battaille) *Drohes* was taken, and brought into the Citie: <sup>3</sup> how *Mathaburna* (before the Pagans) menaced him.

**A**fter Malabeon and Robaster were departed, Meruine and Drohes stayed in the Castle till it was bright day: at what time Meruine mounted vpon Passant, and Drohes vpon another horse; journeying till they came to *Brandis*, to the house of *Minea*, who when she beheld Meruine, & how her ioy exceeded in exceedingnes! she ran and embraced him and kiss him, and lastly, tolde him of her and her husbandes conuersion to the true faith. All which pleased him wonderfully; and hee desired her to bee most constant in her opinion, and to perswade all shee loued to the like resolution; for whose did not beloeue so, should dye the death. In briefe

## the history of Meruine.

briefe, that *Ladie* so laboured, that *Croyfant* came with 400 Christians to *Brandis*, and presented them to Meruine, who gladly gaue them all kinde acceptation. Then went Meruine to the Castle to the Count, whom they found set in the great Hall at a Table by his Countesse: to whom (after Meruine had caused a trumpet to be sounded) he said; My Lord of *Brandis*, we are come to know thy disposition, whether thou wilt adoe the true God of heauen and earth, the Saviour of the world Christ Iesus. A Saracen that stood by, hearing these words, drew forth his knife & thought to stab Meruine: but *Drohes* prevented him, and with his sword gaue him such a blow that he claue his head euen to his teeth. At this began an alarum in the hall, & on thother part, Meruines 400 Christians gaue alarum to the Citie, and put all to death that beloeued not in Christ Iesus, and bee conuerted. When the Countie *Brandis* (whose name was *Fourquer*) saw both his owne danger and his Citties deuolation, he came and kneeled downe before Meruine, promising faithfully to conuert, and be baptised. Then Meruine raysed by the Countie, sounded a retrayte, and made euery one sheath his sword, and then went into the citie, and put all to death that would not be conuerted; in the end, they all most humbly receiued Baptisme. His haine to see the more of *Brandis* & her countrey, they were all conuerted, and baptised: and in the Countrey all round about they builded Temples, Monasteries, and religious Houses, in which God continually was serued.

<sup>2</sup> Then Meruine mustered of that Countrey ten thousand, and marched towards *Montment*, and the Countie *Fourques* went with him, for he had sworn neuer to faile him in anie conflict. In foure dayes space they came to *Luternia*, and thence marched towards *Montment*, where *Mathaburna* remained; whose labouring thoughts continually

312  
The second part of

usually were with Meruine: who now had marched till he came within sight of Montment. But an Espiall (having beheld theyr Armie) went vnto the Tokone, and gaue notice especially to the fierce Pagan Brurant, whome Barant had left his Substitute; whose hugenes no horse was able to support, and his strength equalling that greatnes. To him he told, how Prince Meruine was returned with a great Band of Christians, and were hard at the cittie walls. Mathaburna hearing her Lords name resounded, her hart daunted; yet she durst not for her life discouer her ioyfullnes, but fained her selfe sad, (as she was indeed, because she durst not be merrie when she was best pleased) and sayd; Brurant, let vs be carefull lest these damned Christians enter the cittie, for this wilde Meruine is mercilesse: therefore I beseech you, let the keyes of the cittie be euery night brought vp into my chamber. Brurant agreed thereto. Then said Mathaburna, I will Brurant, that you issue out vpon the wretches, that they may not vaunt that they lodged before our cittie, and were not bidden one Skirmish. To that motion he was willing, wherefore (arming 20000) he sallied out of the gates; whom Meruine and his Armie courageously encountred, himselfe throwing ten dead to the ground before any other Christian approached. When the Pagans beheld his furie, they were amazed, and said one to another; If all the Christians be like to this, it is in vaine we strue against them. During the Battaille, Mathaburna stood on the top of Turgon to behold her Lord, whom she knew by his blows and death that followed them, and also by an olde fauor of hers which he did weare in his Helmet. The Battaille continued verie strongly, in which Meruine shewed wondrous Chualrie; Drohes, Croyfant and Fouchier not being short of any knightly resolution: but on the other side, Brurant (who was on foot) made mightie slaughter of the Christians; at which Drohes was enraged, and with a

strong

313  
the historie of Meruine.

strong lance charged vpon the Turke, but did him no hurt, at which Drohes wondered; but the Turke sent him backe such a token with his sword, that he cut away one quarter of his shield, and the head of his horse also, in so much that Drohes was faine to descend to the earth to begin a fote combat: but the Turke (who was of strange force) took him vp in his armes, and in despite of all men bore him into Montment, deliuering him into the custodie of the Pagans, and then returned againe where he sawe Meruine make a mightie slaughter of his souldiers that now were flying to seeke safetie: whom as he encountred he said, Cowards, whither will you? tourne, or ere night you shall all repent you. Sir (said one of them) death is worst, and that wee are sure of, if we turne to pondusant mightie one. Which (sayd Brurant) shew mee that Gallant. I will do that (said one of his souldiers) so you will let me come behinde you. And then he shewed him where Meruine was, to whom hee went; and offering to strike him with his axe, the horse Passant (seeing the blow) retyred, and instantly turned againe, whereby Meruine gaue the Turke such a mightie blowe, that if his sword had not broken he had there finished the Battaille: then he took the pomell and hilts, which he cast at him so vehemently, that hee brought him on his knees; and then taking his yron mace from him, with it gaue him such a blow, that he felled him to the earth.

Then came an infinite number of pagans about him, who raised him vp, and as soone as he was come to himselfe, hee cried, Let vs lie souldiers, let vs lie, for it is impossible to endure these strange blowes. Then ranne the Pagans a maine towarde the towne, and the Christians pursued them, of whom in the entraunce they slew abundance, notwithstanding yet the Sarazens got into the towne & closed vp their gates, at which Meruine was displeased, but

£

would

314  
the second part of

would haue bene much moze grieued, had he knowne that Drohes had bin taken prisoner. The christians went vnto their paultons, hauing lost but seuen hundred, and the pagans eight thousand.

3 Brurant brought to Mathaburna the Knight Drohes, with this speech, saying, Adam, behold here is one of the christians that hath bene our scourge this day: pleaseth your Ladihip to keepe him, and present him to prince Barant my Lord and Master, your royall loue: that will I not (said Mathaburna) but before to morrow in the morning dispatch him of his life, I knowe his name to be Drohes; and pleased it Mahomet, that as I haue him, I had that disloyall Meruine, who against my soule made me be baptised, I would present him to my royall loue Barant, that hee might take of him a neuer to be equalled vengeance. When the gentle Drohes heard her, he answered; What Adam, are these speeches your owne, or unkindely borrowed? I tell you, Meruine for the world would not thus unkindly forget you, but loues you as his owne saluation. Peace (said Mathaburna) speake not to me, for thou shalt know that in despite of what thou hast spoken of Meruine thou shalt be hanged. Then calling a pagan to him she commaunded him to imprison Drohes, and to bring the keys to her presently: which immediatly was done: and Drohes alone, beganne to exclaime against women, and to curse their sexe, for the inconstancie of Mathaburna.

CHAP.

315  
the historie of Meruine



CHAP. XIX.

1 How the cittie of Montment was taken by the meanes of Mathaburna, 2 The deliuey of Drohes out of prison, and other accidents.



Shall was the hope of life retained in Drohes after hee was imprisoned, and the keyes carried to the Lady, that tooze in the morning he should bee carried to the gallows. Adam (said Brurant) do your owne will for my Lord Barant at his departure commaunded me to obey you in all things. It is true, replied she, therefore see my commandments be effected, and to her selfe tooze all the good possible for the christians. Meruine by this time hauing missed Drohes, made inquirie for him, but no man could tell anye newes, wherefore he caused diligent search to be made, till a squire came and reported that Brurant had bozne him prisoner into the cittie. At which wordes Meruine tooze his haire, lamented, and fastened till Croysant came and perswaded him to be appeased: for Mathaburna being in the cittie there could no mischance befall him, for he knew that she was Lady and mistresse of the towne, and the proudest Sarazin durst not disobey her. This gaue some respite to his mones. Yet he went and threw himselfe vpon his bed, and would not be fully comforted. In the end hee fell on his knees, and made a bow to the God of heauen, that if it would please him to restore his deare friend Drohes, hee would

316  
The second part of

would neuer sleepe on bed, exchange apparrell, drinke wine, nor eate flesh, neither espouse wife, till he had passed the seas, and laine, that inaspitious stone of religion sake Barant, the ruine of christendome. This spake Meruine so effectually, that his desire was graunted (as you shall heare.) The beautifull Mathaburna whose busie thoughts were vertues agents, when all the Pagans were laid at rest, she tokethe keyes and went to Drohes whom she no sooner sawe but shee embraced, and with Joyes teares demanded how Meruine did. When Drohes had heard her he stood amazed and said, ah inconstant Lady, thou hast laine me with thy change and art vnworthy to speake of him from whom thou art chaunged. Suffice it I knowe thine intent, and my death is wellcome. Mistake mee not faire Knight, (said she) for by my past thoughts I protest he is the God of my desires, what I did, was to deceiue the Pagans, who are waking Dragons that neuer sleepe about mee; therefore I pray thee tell mee how hee fareth, and bee not offended at mee. Drohes then resolved of her trueth replied: Most gracious Adam, hee is troubled in nothing, but onely for thy want, whom aboue all thinges hee desireth, onely I doe knowe mine absence is no pleasure to him, and I doe know that hee will put his fortune in daunger for my deliuerie: therefore I pray you, good Ladie, let vs aduise how easiest he may be maister of the Citie, lest in daring to too boldely we repent his hazard.

2 All is done already, said she, therefore come forth and follow me, then shee conducted him where hee was armed, and then bade him come away with thre hundred of his best knights, and I will here attend his coming. Drohes effected all her wish, and in briebe, brought the Prince where the Lady attended; and whose had hoped their meeting, would haue marvelled, and sworne, that

317  
the historie of Meruine.

than Lome there could not be a greater godhead. He liuing in her, and she in his bosome, either embracing the other with such entirenelle of spirite, that as they had but one heart, euen so they seemed to haue but one body, untill Drohes calling Honour from Lones combate, told them they migot hereafter consume ages in their happinesse. But now it was fitter to thinke vpon the death of the pagans. His true, tis true, said Meruine, and then with all speed they entred, and Meruin desired Mathaburna to guide him to Brurants chamber, that I may confes him with this pzon mace befoze he passe to his graue. When she led him to the doze, and said, euen here he slepeth, if you can open it. That shall soone be done (said Meruine) and then with his heauy mace he gaue such a blowe, that the doze brake into many paces into the chamber. When Brurant heard the sound, he said, what deuill makes this noyse? You are deceived, said Meruine, it is a charitable chaplaine, that is come to set you the right way to your graue, if you refuse to be baptized, I had rather, said Brurant, lose my head: Whine owne mouth shall be thy iudge, said Meruine, and then heauing vppe his mace, hee slue him as he lay, which scene to Mathaburna, with a smile she asked Meruine how many he had confessed in that manner, as he passed through the countrey. A world madame sayd he, and then hee passed from chamber to chamber, and left not a breathing soule which refused to be baptized. To be briebe, there was not a pagan left, which came not craping on his knees, and begged that he might be baptized. This done, Meruine caused a most royall and triumphant chariot of gold to be made, in which he caused Mathaburna to ride and march with him through all the countrey of Surry. And when those of the towne of Aquia vnderstood of his coming, they met him with the keys of their gates three leagues from the towne. There after they had rested foure daies, he marched to Ierusalem.



## the second part of

rusalem. In briefe, after he had converted that mother of cities, he went to perforce his bowes, and visite the holie sepulchre, which also Mathaburna did. Whence went they to Babylon, which he conquered by assault, and caused all to be baptized. To be short in my discourse, in lesse space than a yeare and an halfe, he brought to the knowledge of Christian religion more than an hundred mighty cities, all which cities he held under his gouernement, and from euery one of them took the expertest souldiers to furnish by his host, so that now departing from Babylon, he returned to Montment, and then he imbarcked himselfe for France: in which iourney we will leaue him, and returne to speake of the emperour Charles, and of Barant the Cruell, who continued his siege against Gaiaunce.



## CHAP. XX.

- 1 How Barant challenged combat of Charles himselfe alone against three or fise; 2 How he ouercame all the fise.



**Y** Du may remember how Barant the Cruell kept king Charles in Gaiaunce, who was both besieged with dreadfull war and with worse famine, wanting both men to fight, and fortune to supply, being as then in the towne thirty persons, and when Barant perceiued that the French emperour durst no more giue him battell, he armed himselfe, and full of pride, hee went and

## the historie of Meruine

challenged Charlemaine to send forth three or fise of the renowned knights he had, to combat with him alone: and if they could vanquish him, then his breest should haue ending; otherwise they should be thalls to his mercy. Charlemaine at this offer stood astonished yet pondering well, he promised in seven dayes to giue him an answer: in the meane space he consulted with his barons, but neuer came to any conclusion: the last day, as they were in consultation they might heare Barant crying at the post, Where is this Charles of France? where are his champions? What, shall I be combated with, yea or no? As he spake these wordes king Charles came vpon the walles, and told him that hee should, for fise knights within were ready for the battell, onely he desired hostage for perforce of the articles: to that Barant accorded and sent into the city two noble Pagans, whom the king caused to be imprisoned: then issued out of the city armed, himselfe, duke Naymes, the Prince Loys, young Dion of Mantuell, and Andri of Holland, they all marched on foot, for the famine had not left them a horse to ride on, and being come into the listes, Barant entred mounted and armed exceeding royally, who seeing them on foot, demanded why they were not on horsebacke; answer was made by Charlemaine, That they had not an horse left aliue within the Citie. By Mahomet (saide Barant) I will not lose so much honour as to combat with men half armed, and therefore instantly sent for the best horses of his campe, and mounted them, and gaue them launces into their hands, and then sounding trumpets, they began the battell.

2 Most terrible was the first encounter, where the Christians running all together broke their ranks with such furie, that they ouerthrew both Barant and his horse together, but he quickly reconered himselfe againe, who intra



## The second part of

ged for the death of his horse, went against the christians with Entrant naked in his hand and at the first blow stroke Andri of Holland dead to the ground, which scene to Charles and the rest, all at once brauely assaulted him, but with Entrant he defended himselfe like a man of immortall resolution: intollerable was the fight on every side, and many prayers Charles made vnto heauen, but the eares of the Almighty were stopped against him, because of the ciuill dissention he caused: beganne in Denmarke. By this time Barant stroke prince Loys with huge force on the helme; but the sword turning in his hand, lost his power of doing euill, onely glauncing by his shield it fell vpon his horse, and cut his head from his body, so that Loys was forced to fall, and that so vnfortunatly, that the horse falling vpon him he was not able to rise againe for the wondrous riches: which was worse than death to Charles, when he beheld it, whose fortune was like his sonnes mischiefe, for at the next blowe he cutte off the head of his horse, but the emperour in a trice recouered his sate againe, but withall was sore wounded in one of his thighes, and that so mortally, that hee was forced to withdraw from the pzease; which to duke Naymes was worse than popson, who followed their footesteppes in miserie, being stricken from his horse, and intollerably wounded: to Dion the like euill chaunced, whose horse slaine, himselfe was taken prisoner; and with him thother three, whose wounds left no force to rule their weapons. To be brieue, they were all imprisoned in Barants tents, who triumphed at his owne glorie, which he thought worthy a godhead: but within foure dayes after newes was brought to him of Meruines army, which was then within tenne leagues of his campe.

CHAP.

## the history of Meruine.



## CHAP. XXI.

- 1 How *Meruine* incountred *Baham* the son of *Belmarine* with ten thousand pagans that were forragiug: who were all conquerd except three, 2 How *Baham* renounced *abomet*, 3 How the three that escaped reported the action vnto *Barant*, who slew one of them for bringing such euill newes.



**M**eruine (saith the historie) trauelled with so earnest desire, not taking rest, that he came within ten leagues of the host of Barant the Cruell, at what time an espiall came to him, and gaue him intelligence of an army of Pagans to the number of ten thousand that marched not farre off towards Barants campe, bearing thither about, vnto store of all manner of provision, which he no sooner did heare but he told Drohes that it behoued them to be partakers of their banquet; whereupon he marched to a wood, by which of necessity they must passe, and when they were come within a cariery thereof, Meruine gaue them a braue charge, the sobainnesse whereof amazed Baham: but being inforced by extremitie, he encouraged his followers, and requited the onset. The battell was hot for a litle space, but the intollerable blowes of Meruine too much for any man to beare, put the poore Pagans to their wittes ends, who seeking to shie mischiefe, found themselves so inclosed with mischiefe, that they were inforced to intertaine him as their best vnwelcommed companion: yet amongst all, three escaped, who with the wings of feare were carried be-

yond.

## The second Part of

yond feare; yet feare being still in their bosomes, the rest were put to the sword, onely Baham suruiued, to whom Prince Meruine offered many fauours, if hee would renounce his false god; which he utterly refused: then Meruine with his sword stroke him and felled him to the ground, and slue his horse vnder him: When flocked the Christians about him, and had slaine him, if Meruin had not borne his redeemer.

2 When Meruine had saued Baham from the multitude of swordes, hee offered him againe mercy, if hee would renounce Mahomet; Baham seeing his scote in the dore of death, and all hope fled from his knowledge, kneeled downe to Meruin and saide, wonder of knight hood, I yeeld to thee, and giue my sword which is mine honour to thy disposing, bowing henceforth to renounce Mahomet, and al false gods; in witnesse whereof my desire is to be baptized, Meruine reioyced at these wordes, and toke him to fauor.

3 By this time the three that escaped from the Christians swordes had so hasted, that they were now come to the Pagan hoste, where they found Barant the Cruel threatening Charles with death, if he would not renounce his God, and fall downe befoze Mahomet: to the which, the good emperour gaue but a little or a carelesse attention. When they were approached, they fel on their knees, one of them saying: neuer to be conquered prince and god of nations, know, wee bzing thee heauie and vnpleasant news, for Baham of Belmarin and his 10000 Followers whome thou hadst sent forth to forage about the Country, were incountred with a heroicall Christian, accompanied with an army of redoubted Chivaliers; by whom he and his Armie are all slaine and discomfited: therefore aduise your Highnesse what to do, for not anie man is able to withstand that Christian; who is vndoubtedly a diuell sent from the depth of hell, and no earthly creature

## the history of Meruine.

creature. When Barant heard this speech he roused himselfe and (full of more than lunaticke anger) with his fist he strake the messenger dead to the ground, for being the author of such bad reportings: from whence rose this Proverbe, He is euillcome that euill brings. The other two seeing their Companion dead, fledde from his presence, and concealed themselves. Gribouart his Counsaillour had chid him, for his rashnesse, and with sweete wordes layde a sleepe his anger, then were they sent for againe. and Barant askt if it were true then fellow had swozne: and they swoze by holy Mahomet it was. When grew Barants wrath so great, that he could not speake of a long time: in the end, when his wordes had libertie, (after manie outragious curlings) hee commaunded the messengers to bee imprisoned, bowing, if the news fell out contrarie, to make their deaths a liuing example. When hee caused an hundred thousand to arme themselves. and marched forth, to trie if it were iust or no King Belmarine did conduct them, bowing to reuenge (with the death of manie thousand Christians) his Sonnes misfortune. After their departure, Charlemaine and his fellowe Prisoners fell to argue of this occurrent, wondering what Christians they should be, that should undertake this wonderfull enterprize. As I haue said Naymes) I cannot gesse who it should be: onely this last night I dreamt, that the famous Duke Oger was risen againe, and come to deliuer us. When (said Charlemaine) thus too I prophetic; God hath deliuered Meruine the Sonne of that mightie one, and it is onely hee that must be our ransom. Thus talkt they as they were in prison of Meruine, who marched on so fast, that now he was come within the sight of an hundred thousand, that passed on in a most tumultuous disorder.

324  
The second part of



CHAP. XXII.

- 1 How *Barants* hundred thousand were ouerthrowne by *Meruine*. 2 How *Barant* then came with all his hoast, except three hundred, and marched against the Christians.



When *Meruine* had taken a perfect view of the Pagan army comming towards him, he diuided his hoast into three battalions, and rode from ranke to ranke, giuing such encouragement, that like the meeting of long absent Friends, so was warre welcome into their bosomes. This while the Pagans like mad men came running, one here, one there, and another in another place, in such disorder, that ioyning with the Christians, they were slaine like gnats, or new bozne infants. The crie of them was so horrible, that it was heard to the campe where *Barant* lay, who instantly caused euery man to be in a readinesse, but sware, not to leaue his tents till hee had newes of the Conquest: but there remained very few to bring tidings, death was so bitter amongst them. Of all the Pagans, king *Butifart* was most worthy in armes, and made the greatest slaughter of the Christians, till *Drohes* incountring him, at the first blowe strake off his left arme, and at the next, claued his helmet and head downe euen to his teeth. And then beganne a second out-crie, which was heard euen vnto the Citie of *Daiaunce*. the noise whereof added vigour to the Christian hearts; so that they spared not any, but put all to the sword that durst abide an incountring, an hundred only escaping,

325  
the history of *Meruine*.

escaping, the rest slaine or taken prisoners. After this Conquest, *Meruine* called all his army together, and after praises giuen to God, he commanded them to sit downe and refresh themselves with victuals: for he understood by one of his prisoners, that at midnight *Barant* was minded to giue them new battell. When they had refreshed themselves, *Meruine* retired himselfe and his army vnto a fortified place, to which there was but a streight and narrow way for passage: where hauing pitched his tents, he took *Drohes* aside, and saide: The reason why I haue retired my selfe is, for that we are neare our enemies, and mine army consisteth of many nations, and by much more than I dare wholly trust, therefore, although there is but this streight entrance to annoy vs. you and I this night will watch and guard it, and 20000 to second vs, whilst the rest shall take their repose quietly. To this *Drohes* condescended, putting euery thing in execution with great care. During the which time, the fugitiue Pagans that were runne from the battell, made such speed, that they came into *Barants* campe, crying, O prince *Barant*, prince *Barant*, thou art much too slowe in thy reuenge, for thine army is ruined, dead and conquered, the Christians vndoubtedly haue gotten the god of warre from Heauen, and no mortall man is able to indure his prowess: for if he once strike, whomsoever he toucheth, he is but a dead man. What is he quoth *Barant*, thou so extoldest to be thus famously renowned? I know not answered the Pagan, but I haue heard them all call his name *Meruine*. Charles standing by and hearing this, could not containe his ioy within his owne bosome, but told the Duke *Naymes*; Now is thy vision effected; and the renowned Prince *Meruine* will giue vnto vs free liberty. *Barant* on the other part seemed to reioyce more than the Christians, saying; Now shall my fame attain an everlasting Crowne, for to morrow next before the

## The second Part of

the middest of the day, I will not leaue of all his number one breathing Christian.

2 When commaunding a trumpet to be sounded, he presently summoned all his host together, and all his elephants, which were infinite in number, and with them departed towards Meruine, leauing but onely 300. to guard his Wents and the Emperour, with the other prisoners. Barant himselfe marched the last man, and swore by Mahomet, that whosoener turned his backe for feare of a Christian, he himselfe would slay him. Briefly to speake, Barant at last came where Meruine had fortified himselfe with charriots and other carriages, himselfe and Drohes guarding the entrancie with 20000 souldiers, all on foot; yet with solempnity protesting, that whosoener would enter, should for his daring presumption forfeit his life for ransom. By this time Barants army came and assaulted the charriots, and turned them ouer and ouer to make themselves a passage, at last came to the entrance, where Meruine and Drohes were: who made such a slaughter of the infidels as was hideous to behold. In briefe, before the sun arose, there were 40000 pagans slaine, and not one christian. The sunne being risen, Meruine saluted it with great ioy, causing all his trumpets to sound, remoued thoe charriots, and made way for his army to issue out, encouraging them so, that he thought himselfe unworthy to liue, that aduentured not to die for the honour of so herotical a Commander. Mathaburna all this while was garded by Croissant, and two thousand Christians, the rest all in a rout assailed the Pagans, wounding or killing all with whom they incountred. Now beganne the battell to be extreame and fearefull, Meruine shewing himselfe still vnvanquishable Meruine: 24. he slew ere his lance broke, and so many more with his sword, all in a moment; he slew also the king

## the history of Meruine.

king Orband, and diuers other kings. Amongst the Christians there was a yong Gentleman of Ierusalem, that with one blew claue a pagan from the head to the teeth; which Meruine seeing laughed at, swearing to make him a knight, and did so. In briefe, so coragious were the Christians, that now the pagans stood amazed, and durst not come neare either Meruine or Drohes, so deadfull they were. All this while Mathaburna woe out her time in praying for the happy estate of her Lord Meruine; whose valor so far extended, that there was not a pagan of account left to assaile them, but now began to take flight: the which Barant beholding, he railed on Mahomet, till a certaine king came to him, and said, O my lord, why are you now leaden footed, or so slow to enter into the battell? Loke, loke, how your people are conquered, and onely two are lords of this great triumph. Barant would not heare an end of his speech, but like a hungrie wolfe put spurs to his horse, and charging his lance, ranne in amongst the Christians with such violence, that he threw him dead to the ground at the first incounter: but when his lance was broken, he drew his sword, and with it did miracles vpon miracles, killing all that ene he touched. Which when the Christians saw, they beganne to flee from one side of the field vnto an other: but still he pursued them, making hauocke of them. At the length (for their safeties) they entered amongst the chariots, but he followed them crying: Where is the traitor that hath bene the ruine of mine armie: let him come and trie his fortune with me. And as he was thus in speaking, he beheld Mathaburna, whom kindly he saluted, and saide: Ladie, well met, assure thy selfe, this day Ile reuenge my selfe and thoe of that monstrous villaine, that hath brought thee hither, and detained my loue his prisoner. Thus spake Barant that imagined the Lady had loued him. Whoe the poore soule, being in more

328  
The second part of

more than a fearful amazement to behold her horse so neare her. At this, Croisant and his company charged Barant, but in lesse than an houre he slew halfe of them. Of which Meruine being aduertised, with al speed came to the rescue, saying to Barant; Traitor, thou hast forfeited thy life with too much hardines, and thy daring is not pardonable. Barant (with stedfast eyes first on him) demanded first his name. Whynamed he is Meruine. Meruine said Barant, Detestable traitor, tis thou that hast slaine my men, robbed me of my Loue, and it is thou towhom I loke for, and of thee I le bereuenged: yet if thy valure equall the same that lies of thee, accord, that thou and I, in single combat, maintaine ech against other our fortunes: these articles agreed vnto, That if I be vanquished, all paynim countries shall do thee homage, and Charles with many other prisoners shall be restored: but if I vanquish thee, that then thou shalt fall downe and adore Mahomet. Pagan quod Meruine, I for thine infinite pride, yet am I willing to perforce thy will: but this withall added, that thou send for Charles and the other Christian prisoners to behold the combat, and I le oppose to them Mathaburna, whom thou so much desirest. It shall be done quod Barant, and then sounded a general retreat, ech armie returning to their tents. Yet vnderstand, that of the 200000 pagans which were at the beginning of the battell, there was now but 7000; and the Christians that were 100000, now were but 24000, all the rest of the most of them slaine by the sword of Barant.

CHAP.

329  
the historie of Meruine.



CHAP. XXIII.

1 Of the single combat betwixt *Meruine* and *Barant*, and of the death of *Barant*. 2 The deliuey of *Charles* and the other Christians, and the ouerthrow of the Pagans.



Now were the Christians retired, and the pagans also, to whom Barant reported his conclusion with Meruine, and therefore disarmed himselfe, commaunding new armes to be provided for him: Meruine on the other part did the same. When Barant was newly armed again to his liking, he mounted vpon his horse, took a lance into his hand, and marched vnto the lists, and with him Charles and thother prisoners, as Meruine had desired, who by this time (mounted on a palfrey trapt in gold, came also into the lists. There found he Barant, to whom he saide, See Barant, this is the beauty of my life, for her sake this day shall thy fortune or mine be buried. Thou art a foole quoth Barant, for were there ten such as thy selfe, they could not be my conquerors. Barant said Meruine, let thy sword be thine Dato; for in despite of thee, I giue thee a shameful defiance. This said, they retired either from other, and charging their lances, met with a fearful encounter; Barant breaking his staffe, and doing no further mischief: but Meruine assailed him so couragiously, that piercing his shield through, he ouerthrew Barant to the ground, greatly astonished with the stroke; yet notwithstanding in a be-



## the second part of

the moment he raised himselfe againe, and bowed by Mahomet, that if he could but fasten hand on Meruine, hee would make him for ever charging stasse againe. When Meruine had perfourmed his course, and was returned, he cried: Barant, either pay me for the logging thou hast taken possession of, or by the holy virgin Ile haue thy head for a gage. When Barant saw he made a least of him, hee drew Entrant, giuing Meruine such a blow on his shield, that cleauing it in the middelt, he pierced his currats, and wounded him in the body, but yet to little or no purpose. Meruine at the first drawing knelt the sword, and said: I pray thee Barant, tell me how thou gotst that sword. By Mahomet quoth he, the master of my fortune, and he who will giue me conquest ouer thee, I meane the powerfull spirite Mutasier, that hath calculated my starrs, and assured me that no man shalbe able to overcome me, but he who neuer tasted womans milke, it was enen he that gaue it to mee: and assured me at that time mozeouer, that the knight that owed it, should neuer be deliuered from a helish prison, where he was in durance. Barant, Barant, quod Meruine, seest thou this pace that hangeth by my saddle, assure thee in despite of thy master Mutasier, it shall strike thy life from thy body, except thou wilt renounce Mahomet, and then thy peace and my loue shall ioyne together. Barant madded with his words, toke the yron ends of his launce, and swoze to Meruine, if he would not descend, he would kill his horse vnder him. Then Meruine alighted, and swore that his dissention should cost him deare ere they parted, Passant bowing his knees to the earth, that his lord might alight the moze easily. Now stood they one against the other like two angry lions, continuing a dismall and vnconstant battell, no man being able to iudge which way victory was affected: in the end they closed together, and ouerthrew ech other, tumbling and strining til the day was

## the historie of Meruine

was shut vp by the euening, and the darke night appeared, at what time Barant requested Meruine to deferre the ending of the combat til the next morning, to which the prince agreed, because that by the meanes of Mutasier that then dwelt in the pagans body, he was much ouertoiled. When ech army was returned to their tents, in the dead of night Barant askt the reason of Mutasier, why he could not that day banquish Meruine. Quod Barant saide the diuell, he not offended, for he is the most valiant, wise, resolute and fortunate champion of the world: and know, if it had not bin for me, this day he had many times slaine thee, therefore I charge thee, that to morrow thou hold with him neither faith nor loyaltie, but by any treason whatsoeuer, seeke his destruction, otherwise is he neuer to be banquished, and with all the power I am able, assure thy selfe of mine assistance. At these wordes the diuell entred againe into the pagan: and the night hauing her discharge, the cleare day appeared, when according to his former order he came into the field, and armed with Mutasiers promises, called out Meruine, who sumptuously appointed, entred the listes, then they charged their lances, and incountred each other, piercing their shields, and breaking their staves vpon their curaces, and that with such furie, that they were both ouerthrowne to the ground. Passant feeling himselfe deliuered of his master, went first to Barants horse and strangled him, and then to Barants selfe, whom also he had strangled, if Mutasier in a fearefull shape had not shewed him selfe vnto him, and made the horse fearfully stie away. By this time Meruine had stricken Barant to the ground, but in a trice he arose and made requitall of his sorrow, giuing Meruine such a blowe with Entrant the good sword, that passing through the helmet, it gaue him a sore wound, and made both his knees to kisse the earth: but when he recovered himselfe, he ranne and closed with Barant, and by



332  
The second part of

maine power ouerthrew him, and in the fall laid hold on Entrant, which he recouered from the pagan, then rising, the pagan took from him his mace, and then began a new battell, till at last Meruine gathering all his forces together, and turning Entrant aloft, strooke Barant such a blow, as in despite of all resistance he cleaue his head.

2 Then fell Barant downe dead, in whom the Diuell challenged possession: and then the Christians assailed the Pagans, whom in an instant they ouerthrew, 4000. being willing to receiue baptisme: no sooner were the pagans vanquished, but Meruine gaue all that they possessed amongest his souldiers, whilest in the meane space Charles went to Meruine, and doing him all the honour he could deuise, said: Thou column of our religion, and wonder of knight hood, to thee will I surrender the crowne of France, for, but thee, no man is worthy to receiue it. Emperour quoth Meruine, farre be my thoughts from that imagination, thy crowne is thy birth right, and I lebe thy seruant.



CHAP. XXIII.

1 How Meruine married Mathaburna, 2 of the great solemnity at Maiance for ioy thereof.



After these speeches betwaine the Emperour and Meruine, they raised their tents and did march towards the citie of Maiance, all the Cleargy and Commons thereof coming in processions to meet them, in which ceremonious sort they entred into the city, being richly adorned clean through.

333  
the historie of Meruine.

throughout, and all the Ladies and gentlewomen standing in windowes to beholde the beauteous Meruine, who on the one side, and the king on the other, marched with Mathaburna betwaine them. No sooner was Meruine discovered, but euery creature both young and olde cried out in the praise of Meruine their redemer, and that so boldly, that Meruine stode almost astonished at their clamors, that he passed on till he came to the Market place, where he found many young Gentlemen and maides, who to diuers well consorted instruments carolled many excellent songs in the praise of Meruine; thence they marched to the Wallace, where lighting from their horses they ascended vp into the hall, where was gathered together all the excellencie of Musicke, playing so melodiously, that Meruine was raiued with the hearing: of their banquetting, daunting, and other reuelles, I will not speake, but passe them ouer to imagination. After the first nights repose Charles dispatched his Heraulds into Fraunce, to carry the newes of these occurents, charging euery one both noble and vn-noble, all Ladies married and vnmarried: also, all those whosoever had any skill in musicke, that they faile not, vpon paine of disobedience, but to appeare at Maiance on the great feast of Pentecost, where his Highnesse would keepe an open and royall court. All his will was done, and euery one was present at the day, which was wonderfully solemnized, Charles wearing his emperiall crowne on his head, so also did Meruine, who by his conquest was king of Ierusalem, of Hequa, of Babylon, of Lilsort, of Damascus, of Montment, and diuers other realmes: but Mathaburna that day wore no crown, because as yet she was not his wife, only she wore a rich chaplet on her head, all incased with precious stones. When dinner that day was finished, Charles gaue charge to all his Barons, that the next day after, they should be in all their royalties, and to shew their excellencies,

## The second Part of

excellencies, as well in feasting as in running at the tilt: because it should be the wedding day of the famous prince Meruine. Then (notwithstanding that Mathaburna had many Ladies with her) he sent all the Ladies of France, to offer her their service, which they did. After this first day was passed with solempne disports, the morrow after all the Citie beganne their ioyes, and in the morning, Drohes, Croysant, Baham, Belmarine, and all the gallants of France went and gaue king Meruine good morrow, who rising, Drohes and Croysant made him ready, adorning him with most rich habillements, imbordered with orientall pearles, and inchaſed with most pretious stones, as Diamonds, Rubies, Caruncles, Turkes, Emeraude, Saphyres, and many other. When he was ready, he set the crowne of Jerusalem on his head, and immediately he went into the Emperours chamber, where he remained vntill such time as Mathaburna was fully adorned after the French maner, whom for her beauties sake euery one called a second Hellen. Then came the king crowned, the Dukes, Marqueses, Earls, and Barons, with crownets on their heads according to the manner, and brought in the king Meruine, who no longer saue his mistresse, but his heart capered for ioy. Then after certaine ceremonies they descended downe into the hall, where all the princes of his army wayted for him, then they went, and being mounted on golden chariots rid to the great cathedrall church attended on most royally in this manner. First went fiftie gentlemen most richly attired, five and five in a rank; then an hundred who carried a hundred banners, in which were the armes of the Nations which he had conquered, and the last and the greatest was that of Jerusalem: after these marched Fourchier erle of Brandis, who bare Meruines golden spurs, clad in a vesture of gold: then Baham in like ornaments with Meruines shield; sutable to them the King of Arabiaes sonne with

## the history of Meruine.

with Meruines helmet, and lastly, in most rich imbossed armour of gold went Drohes bearing naked Meruins famous sword Entrant; then came Meruine himselfe, Charles riding on his right hand, and Loys on his left, after them the twelve peers, the dukes, marqueses, earles, barons, and knights: and in this manner came hee into the Temple, Mathaburna following them in as great state amongst the Ladies. When they were both entered within the Temple, the Archbishop of Gaiance married them, and then sang hymnes and infinite praises, all the troope offering by rich gifts for sacrifices.

After euery severall ceremonie performed, they returned as they came most orderly to the pallace, where they banquetted, triumphed, and reuelled most gallantly, which ended, the knights went and armed themselves, and the Ladies were carried to beholde the iustes, in the which Meruine would needs be an actor, so also would Charles, and Naymes. Meruine at the first encounter overthrew five and twenty, no man having power to sustaine him: then came Charles and humbly besought him to withdrawe himselfe, else would their sport be little, because his prowess, should put all men past running. I am well pleased said Meruine, and then he departed, and came and saue with the Ladie Mathaburna beholding the iustes, which continued vntill euening, whose black browes compelled them to give ouer. Then the tables being adorned they went to their suppers, after supper to dauncing, masking, and all manner of reuelling, which being grown a little olde there came bishops, who forthwith with the Emperour and with the good duke Naymes conueyed the bridegrome to the brides chamber, where after mantle blessings and ceremonies they lodged him, who that night

(by the will of God) begot on her a sonne, whose name afterward was called Orient. As soon as it was day light, Drohes entred into the chamber, who appareled Meruine, and the Ladies of France that adozned Mathaburna: then were solempne Masses sung, and other deuises. The feast and triumphs continuing eight dayes, at the expiration whereof Charles returned into France, taking leaue of Meruise, and so likewise did all the gallants of France, leauing no more in France but Meruine, his Queene, and his old souldiers, amongst whom he diuided all his nations, except Lilfozt, where himselfe determined to raigne: to Drohes he gaue Montment, and the countrey adioyn- ing, deliuering him an hundred thousand to garde him to his kingdome, to Baham he gaue Damascus: to Croissant Me- qua, and to euery other Prince that had serued him, other lands and segniories. This done, he remained in Denmark till his Queene was deliuered of a beautifull son, whom he named Orient, according to the Letter which hee found when hee got Passant. And after that his sonne Orient was once a yeare olde and upwards, hee had a marvellous great and earnest desire to go into Jewrie, to plant true re- ligious in that country, which hee did, yet it was a tedious time befoze: wherefoze for a while we will leaue him, and speake of Gratiana the Fairie, who fell desperate for her euill deeds towards Meruine.

CHAP.



CHAP. XXV.

1 How *Mutafier* deceiued the Fairie *Gratiana*, and be- got of her a monster named *Orke*, that had three heads. 2 And of other accidents.



As the Poet saith, in that part, that by succe- ding times, the Christians living without warres (the remembraunce of sinnes) they beganne to commit diuers outragious and damnable offences, against the maiestie of God, at the which *Mutafier* triumphed, making their fall a faire to his gloze: wherefoze he went to the woods, where that desperate fairie *Gratiana* remained, and com- ming to a poore cottage, where she liued, he took vpon him the likenesse of a woman, and knocking at the doze, which the Fairie opened, desired lodging for that night, with hir, to which *Gratiana* gaue consent: so he staid there bea- ting his thoughts howe hee might worke some notable mischief. Anone as they were set to repast, *Gratiana* as- ked whither she was travelling all alone vnaccompanied. Fairester (saide the Deuil *Mutafier*) knowe that I and my company haue liued in a wilderness in great povertie, hauing nothing but bread and water, till they all are dead, but I only reserved, for whom I sorrowed, and thought to haue led my life in continuall solitarinesse, till two lea- ned Clarkes told me, that such a kinde of life was damna- ble. After that they demanded of me, whether I were a maide or wife, or had in my life time accompanied with a- ny man, and I told them neuer, for which cause they blamd me exceedingly, approving by the sacred Scriptures, that the

## the second part of

the woman that liues without the knowledge of man, shall not see the face of God. Many other things they tolde me, untill one of them for charitie sake accompanied me, and toke my sinnes vpon him. Alas good Gratiana, what shall I do: my sinnes are infinite. He take them vpon me saide Murasier. In briefe, so earnestly he tempted her, and he got of her a most ugly and deformed three headed monster; thence he conueyed her into a vast and strange wilderness, where neuer mortall footstep was before discovered, and there she was deliuered of her abortiue fruit, which was called Orke, because, in that desolate habitation was not to be seene any thing, but thy headed monsters called Orke.

2 This new borne monster had more then the strength of five men, two of his heads looked forward, and the third behind him, euery head had a beard, his eyes were like melions, and in his mouthes teth three fingers long, and in a monasterie at Ciuill in Spaine at this houre is his picture, which king Loys caused to be drawne and erected there in honour of Prince Meruine, his second Entrant being kept there for a diuine relique. This diuel-begot monster with in twenty daies became so fierce and uncontrollable, that he ouercame all those of the forest, wherefore Murasier his father gaue him armes almost impregnable, and commanded him to goe into Fraunce, where if he found Meruine, he charged him to beare him such deadly hatred, that he should not rest till he had brought him to a shamefull end: and also that he should spare no Christian till he had laid the country utterly desolate: yet before thou goest saith he, goe vnto king Turniquant of Oriam, and intreate his aide to goe with thee, which his banished sonne did accordingly. But when hee was once come within Oriam, all the Pagans came and hid themselves for feare of his presence. From thence he marched towards the pallace, where they looked

vp

## the historie of Meruine

vp the gates, and told the king of the Orkes arrivall, who laughed at their cowardise, untill he heard the Orke crie to them to open the gates, or he would destroy the city. The king as then was set at a table with his daughter Beatrice who in priuate was brought to be a Christian by her nurse, hauing instructed her in all the points of Christian religion.



## CHAP. XXVI.

1. How the King Turniquant of Oriam assembled a great number of his people, and went in ayde of the Orke;
2. how he destroyed all Normandie and Britaine;
3. and of other occurrents.



When king Turniquant heard the clamours of the Orke, he arose from the table and went to the gates; where (seeing the hugeness of the monster) a trembling feare came ouer his body; yet (with fained speeches) hee intreated him to doe him no hurt, and he would persourne whatsoever he commaunded him. I aske nothing said the Orke, but that thou wilt be my subiect, and I will conduct thee into France; where I will utterly destroy the Countrey, if they will not returne and beloue in Mahomet. When as Turniquant heard these words, hee exchaunged feare into reioyngs, and made the gates to be set open, and (with great honour) brought the monster into his Pallace, where the faire Beatrice was; whom the Orke (at the first sight) demanded of her father, and in recompence he would giue him the Crowne of Fraunce. All the which

## The second part of

which Turniquant was proude of, but the poore Ladie wept and lamented exceedingly. Now with all speed that could be, the King mustered by his men, to the number of two hundred thousand; with which the Orke and hee passed (carrying the faire Beatrice with them) to Jerusalem, which he so quickly conquered. Thence he went unto Babylon, and did the like; and to all the other Christian Countreys, euen to Montment, where they gaue a strong assault, gainst which Droles was not able to indure; so the Towne was taken: yet by the prouidence of heauen, Droles escaped, who flying into a wilderness, consumed his life in great pouertie. Thus the Orke subuerted what Meruine had planted; not leauing a Church or Monastirie, which was not vtterly rased.

3 Thence (conducted by the diuells ayde) hee came to Saint Michaels Mount in France, and thence marched through Base Normandie and Base Brittain; thence to High Normandie, making all places both waste and desolate. The newes whereof wounded King Charles, chiefly when he heard the description of the Monster: yet he assembled his Men at Armes to goe against him; but not with such expedition, but that the false Orke and the Pagans were first come to Montmarre, where it was pitifull to beholde with what cries the poore people ran into Paris, one carrying his bed, another his cosser, some their wiues, and some their children.

3 By this time Charles brought to some his Armie, and set upon the Orke and Turniquant, betweene whom was a long and dreadfull Battaille. Charles slew a number of Pagans with his owne hand, crying ever, Saint Dennis and good Fortune, this day shall the Pagans perish; the good Duke Naymes did as much, and upon his Enemies

## the history of Meruine.

Enemies shewed wonderfull featcs of knight hood, overthrowing here one, and there another; so that it was excellent to behold the fall of the Pagans. But this triumph endured but a moment, for the strong King Turniquant and the false Orke (in lesse than an hower) overthrew euery soule of them: because the Parisians (vpon sight of the three headed Monster) fled away, and durst not one of them indure in Battaille; so that the Emperour was compelled to sound a Retreat, and was the first that entered into the Citie of Paris, so hideous was the beholding of the diuels Infant, and all the Christians followed: whom the Orke in pursute slew five vpon five, and twentie vpon twentie, to the piteous amazement of all men. In this Chase, the Orke had entered the Citie, but for especial regard: but finding himselfe deceiued, hee cryed at the Gates; False traitor Charles come forth, and bring twentie with thee against me alone or if they be not in tow, bring thirtie, and my selfe will giue them Battaille. Thus triumphed he in his owne pride: but before any long time epyre, a single man shall bring his three heads to a Funerall: which can be none other but the famous King Meruine, as you shall heare.

Charles all this while was mightely perplexed, and not causelesse; for of all that he had brought, there was no more left alieue but thirtiethousand; neither durst Charles the space of a yeare looke abroad, for feare of the Orke: yet at length he found meanes to send to the King of England, who came to his ayde with fortie thousand well appoyued and valiant Englishmen; yet so dreadfull was the Monster, that they stood in doubt to passe, but remained three dayes and nights at Saint Dennis, nere Paris, of which the Orke had no tidings, holding all that time a Counsaile, how the King of France should be aduertised of their comming, that is to say, they might assaile the Orke on euerie side.



## The second Part of



## CHAP. XXVII.

- 2 How king *Charles* had intelligence of the King of Englands comming : 2 of their assault on both sides : 3 how *Meruine* came, who had conquerd againe all that the *Orke* had wonne : 4 how *Mathaburna* gaue charge, that no man should speake of the warres before Paris : 5 how an Angell appeared to *Meruine*.



When the King of England had held a long consult, one of his traigns came vnto him, and bade him writte his Letters, and (in despite of all the Monsters in the World) he would attempt to carrie them to Paris : which resolution the King commended, and forthwith dispatcht him ; who came to Paris about midnight, and thertoe his Letters ouer the walls : which the next morning being found, were presented to the King ; who reading them, vnderstood the couragious English Kings resolve : wherefore he commaunded his Host to arme themselves, who were then thre score thousand.

2 When standing in readines, they attended to heare when the Onset should be giuen, which as soone as he heard, he cryed; Montioy, Saint Denis, and then sallied forth, and made the Battaille fearefull to the Pagans, effecting wonders. To bee briebe, both the English and French shewed themselves absolute for courage : but the Orke made such hauocke of both Nations, that in lesse than an houre all the Christians fled for their safeties; the Orke

## the history of Meruine.

Orke (with an axe which *Mutafier* that night had giuen him) killing so manie, that few escaped, but onely those in the vanguard of the flight. The King of England fled to Saint Dennis, whom the Orke pursued to the walls of the Towne then turning backe to his Tents, he found the faire *Beatrice* weeping, whom he saluted, and perswaded to be ioyfull, for that in sixe months space he would crowne her Queene of France : but those wordes were worse than payson, for than him she esteemed hell no piler. Also all this while lamented *Charles* in Paris his crosse fortunes, because the Monster nowe had bene in France full two yeares, and layd waste the most fruitful places in all the Countrey.

3 In this penfuenes we will leaue him while, to speake of the renowned *Meruine*; who after hee had conuerted all *Feiozy*, went to *Babylon*, *Jerusalem*, and the other Countreies, and brought them all backe to Christianity. Whence hee went to *Montment* to visite *Drohes*, whom hee found nat; and therefore sorrowed most exceedingly, vowing an endlesse reuenge if hee were dead : and thereupon gaue an assault to the Towne, which presently yielded, because the greatest part were Christians. So that *Meruine* made one *Sampson* (boyme in that Cittie) their *Gouernour*, leauing him all his Armie, and returned alone into his naturall Kingdome of *Danske*, where hee found his sayre Queene *Mathaburna*, and the young Prince *Orient* their Sonne: who (with all the Nobles *Burgesses* and *Commons*) most royally and louingly welcomed him.

4 As soone as *Mathaburna* had brought her royall Lord to rest, which (after his wearie traynyle) of all other intertainment was to him best welcome, she sent priuate Commandement to euery Noble man and Magistrate that



## The second part of

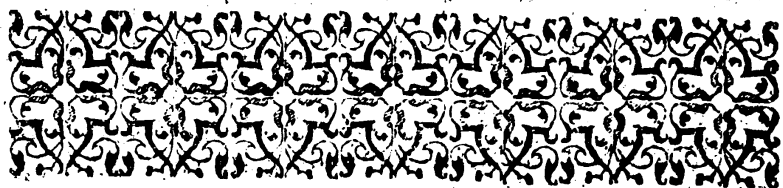
that was likely to haue access to the King, that as they tendered the safetie of his pimate Person, and respected the publique benefite of the Common-wealth, that they in no case should acquaint the noble Meruine with the miserable estate of the Emperour Charles and the other Christians in France: for (sayd she) I need not tell you the resolutions of my Princely Lord your Royall King, should he but heare the least inckling thereof; to France hee would, to wofull wretched France: and if to France, whither goeth my loues Lord and your lines Protectoꝝ? Euen to the receptacle of horroꝝ, euen to the graue of death: where he shal combat with Monsters, not men; and not with mortal Monsters neyther, but that infernall three headed Dog of hell, the ugly Orke, against whose force, men can haue no force to make resistance. I doe not then, I beseech yes, doe not make me a Widow and your selues Fatherlesse, by acquainting the King with the Estate of France. These words she deliuered with such aboundance of teares, that the Nobles and Magistrates greatly commended her zealous care, and presently commanded, on payne of death, that no man should shew a heauie countenance, or once whisper of the Estate of France. Great Feasts and Triumphs were therefore made throughout, and manie other pastimes that continued a great part of the night, till the King was layd in his bed.

5 When the hower of midnight was come, there appeared to him (in his sleepe) an Angell from Heauen, who like Sunne-shine stood befoze him, and sayd; Meruine, the God which created all things, by mee commaundeth thee, that to morrow thou depart and goe to King Charles and ayde him against the Christians, who haue besieged him, and brought him almost to utter confusion, by the meanes of a monstrous three-headed Orke, against whom thou

## the historie of Meruine.

thou must take battell, and the Lord will be thy defender, wherefoze see thou depart without any notice to the queene thy wife, lest she should follow thee, which were offensive to the heauens. This sayd, the Angell departed, and immediately Meruine arose, and hauing armed himselfe and gathered his Souldiours together; tolde his Queene hee would passe into Surrey, and make a speedie returne: wherefoze he desired her with her little Sonne Orient to passe to Lilsot, where they should not faile but meete him. She gladly agreed, because she feared no place but Paris. Thus he departed with threescore thousand, and made such haste, that he came to Roan; which he found so sackt and destroyed, that his heart so pittie bled within him. There he left his Armie, and himselfe alone marched towardes Paris, finding euery thing as he went destroyed & ruined. When he was come within the sight of the Pagans tents, hee turned himselfe towardes them, and marched into the campe with his head vnarmed, and his helmet hanging by his saddle. When calling a Pagan vnto him, he desired to be brought to the sight of King Turniquant. The Pagan consented, and brought him to his Tent, but the King was not there, onely he found the faire Beatrice, who at the first sight knew him to be a Christian: and therefore demanded what he sought. Madame said he, my busines is to speake with him that beareth three heads on his shoulders. Friend quod she, if you will but stay here a little, I will go tell the king my father. Doe so good Madame (said he) but I beseech your Ladieship, stay not long.

## The second Part of



## CHAP. XXVIII.

- 1 How *Meruine* vndertooke combat against the *Orke*,  
2 of the fight, and the *Orkes* death, which brought  
rest to the Christians.



**B**eatrice instantly went to her father, and tolde him what she knew touching his request, and how he would speake with the three-headed monster: which the King hearing, he went and took the *Orke* with him, who looking terribly vpon *Meruine*, whom no lookes could affright, *Meruine* stoutly began saying, Thou that hast dared to destroy this receptacle of Christianitie, I challenge thee, if thou darrest, to single combat body to body, with these conditions, that if thou vanquish me, all this Countrey shall be at thy disposing: if I shall conquer thee, then thine army shall returne home againe if they can escape our vengeance. How saiest thou? When *Turniquant* heard this resolute Challenge, he demaunded of him his name. When called he answered he, *Meruine*. Which word was no sooner uttered, but taking the *Orke* and his daughter aside, he told many wonders of *Meruine*, how he had slaine *Barant* surnamed the Cruell, with the rest of his famous conquests: and therefore was now flatly determined by treason to put him to death. To which his Daughter made answer, that treason were vile euen in a King, and therefore rather,

Anc

the history of *Meruine*.

Since the *Orke* had vaunted himselfe against twentie, that now he should trie himselfe against this one single knight, whom there was no doubt but he would vanquish with shame, so quickly dispatch of his desperate life. At this speech the proude *Orke* reioyced, and smote none but himselfe should be in that combat: so they went to *Meruine* and accorded, drawing certaine articles touching the combat, which dispatched, *Meruine* went and told *Charles*, to whom he was the welcomnest man aliue.

When the day of battell was come, *Meruine*, *Charles*, *Naymes*, *Loys*, and all their army came forth, and went to the Pagans tents, where after their othes taken on both sides, the two champions were brought into the listes armed at all points, and after the sound of Trumpets they assailed each other, and *Meruine* brake his staffe vpon the *Orke*, but his armour was so good that he could not hurt him, only made him recoil tenne fote backward: at the which the *Orke* was angry, who with his battle ax would haue stricken the prince, but with fine nimblenesse in turning he auoided it, so that the axe fell into the earth aboue three fote, then the prince with Entrant stroke him a mighty blow on the head, but could pierce no skin, which forne, he sheathed his sword, and took his great mace, which hung by, and with that gaue him such a blow vpon one of his helmets, that he reeled, and with much adoe held himselfe from falling: when the *Orke* felt these intellerable woundings, he flew vpon *Meruine* like a tempest, and thinking to hit him with his diuellish axe, the good horse passant turned so nimbly about, that he failed in his purpose, for why there was no stele would haue bozne out the blow. When the *Orke* saw his effectlesse furie he grew mad, often assailing, and as often failing. When prince *Meruine* aduancing himselfe, gaue the *Orke* such a blowe on the necke, that he

## The second part of

made one of his helmets flie into the midst of the field, so that one of his heades was disarmed; then drawing his sword, hee seconded his blowe vpon the Orkes disarmed head, that he cut away one of his eares, whereat the Orke raised a most fearefull crie, which put the pagans into a fearefull affright. Beatrice seeing this, said to her father, My Lord, this day the Orke will be vanquished, therefore hee aduised by me, and let vs flie to our shippe, to escape worse danger, the Orke is neither of our country nor kindred, let vs leaue him to his fortune. Daughter (said Turniquant) you are too blame, for if he doe ouercome, what shall befall vs; therefore let vs attend some more of his fortune. Meruine this while lion-like assailed the Orke, and gaue him such a monstrous wound on his thigh, that he was no longer able to sustaine himselfe from falling, yet still held his are in such sorte in his hand, that Passant durst not assaile him. When beganne the Orke to crie so fearefully, that the Pagans hearing him, trusted vpon their tents, and betooke themselves to flying: which the emperour Charles seeing, shewed the duke Naymes saying, see how they flie and dare not stay (he end of the battel: were it not that I am sworn to the contrary, they should not escape so easily. This true, (said Naymes) therefore let them go, for the deuill is their conduct. As they were thus talking, the pagans got to their shippes, and with all the haste they could, sailed into their owne countries: all this while Meruine assailed the Orke, but by reason of his lying on the ground, hee could no whit hurt him, wherefore hee alighted downe and commaunded Passant, if neede compelled him, to come and succour him; which the Fairie horse well vnderstode. This said, Meruine went towards the Orke, and he seeing him come, bethought himselfe of his best defence; and Meruine imagining to strike him, the false diuellish Orke thrust his are before him with such violence, that hitting Meruine

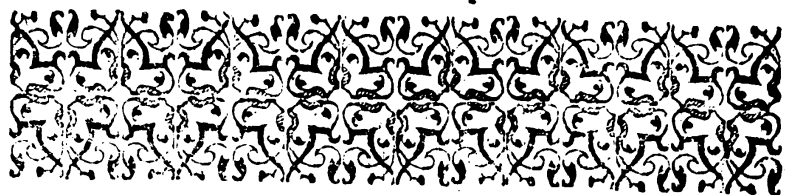
one

## the history of Meruine.

one blowe vpon the knee, he made him perforce fall to the ground, which the monster seeing, hee crawled vpon him, and gaue him many intollerable blowes, whilest Meruine on the other side drawing forth a puniard, thought to stab the monster, but lighting vpon his curaces, the dagger without hurt brake in two peeces. When Meruine implored some diuine helpe in his succour, for the Orke pleased him most extremely, yet his strength gaue him some remedy. Whereas the histozie reportes, if there had beene an hundred besides himselfe, the Orke had sorte to haue strangled them all. But the strength of Meruine equalled him euery way: Charles seeing this turmoile, wept exceedingly, and said to Naymes, What shall we doe, with the damned Orke holdes king Meruine in subiection? As they were thus in talking, Passant seeing his Lord in daunger, he went to this Orke, and tooke hold of his disarmed head, in such sort, that in despite of his will, hee made him let king Meruine goe, who instantly rising tooke his sword which lay on the ground: Passant with his teeth tooke hold of his care, and Meruine gaue him two such blowes, that he let his battle are fall; then doubling his blowes, he cut off his other two heades: at whose death Mutasier came in such a tempest, that all Paris trembled. When seeing his sonne dead he would haue taken vengeance, but of the horse he could not, because he was a fairie; and of the master he durst not, because he had heard diuine prayers before the combate, otherwise he had done some notable mischief: but preuented, he could do nothing, but tooke his sonne and all his accomplishments into hell with him: yet know for a suretie, that at his departure, he made such a wonderfull stoyne, that for the space of a quarter of an houre, the darkest mid-night had a fairer countenance.

Z 3

CHAP.



CHAP. XXIX.

- 1 How *Meruine* tooke leaue of *Charles* and departed.
- 2 How he went to *Ierusalem*, and thence was conveyed into *Fairia*.

**T**HUS did the false Orke that monstrous sonne of the diuell come to his end, being slaine in the thirtieth moneth of his age, being so inuincible, that he brought all *Fraunce* almost desolate, and so likewise had done all *christendom*, if God had not raised *Meruine* to be his destroyer. And the storie saith, that if *Meruine* hadde bene brought up with womans milke, hee could neuer haue conquered the monster. Now by this time came *Charles* and the other christians, who with great honour and solemnitie would haue brought him to the citty; but he refused, telling the emperor he must first pay his hoines to the sepulchre of his Saviour, intreating *Charles* for his sake, to ayde his sonne *Orient* when any extremitie should assaile him. Which when *Charles* heard he sorowed exceedingly.

2 Thus parted *Meruine*, whome *Charles* would no longer holde, and came to *Roan*, where his army attended him, whome hee sent to *Lilfozt*, and bade them charge *Mathaburna* his Queene to looke carefully to his sonne *Orient*, for that hee would goe to *Ierusalem*. Thus he parted they, and he stayed still in *Roan* till the wound in his knee

knee was cured; then he betooke himselfe to the sea: in which baning ouerpassed, he rode till he came to a forrest, where the night so sodainly ouertooke him, that he knew not where to lodge. Now it fell out, that *Mutafier* to reuenge his sonnes death, made in this wood an Abbacie, and himselfe like a *panne*. When *Meruine* espied the house, hee spurred his horse towards it, but by no meanes coulde hee make him goe, but euermore hee did reioile backe: then came *Mutafier* in the habite of a *panne*, and saluted him: then *Meruine* desired her to take his horse and bring him to the house, than which the Deuill desired nothing more. So sone as *Meruine* was within the hall, hee found a table spread, and store of cakes, but *Meruine* would neither eate nor drinke; but *Mutafier* at last enchanted him that he forgate God, and fell to both eating and drinking. Which when *Mutafier* perceiued, hee bowed at midnight to carry him to hell: then he demaunded of *Meruine* if hee would go to his rest, to which he consenting, brought him into a most sumptuous chamber, where when he was laide to repose, before the night was halfe spent, hee imagined, that the chamber, the Abbey, the bed, and all about him was on fire, wherefore incontinently hee arose and armed himselfe, and came into the court, where hee found *Mutafier* in the likenesse of *Passant* (who then was gone into *Fairia*) upon whom as sone as he was mounted, the Deuill flew away like thunder or tempest, & bare him by woods, rivers, and mountaines, euen to hell, where hee found his trauell doubled; for by the commaundement of God the diuel was compelled to beare him backe againe, wherefore he carried him into *India*, where were many serpents and cruell beasts, and therefore discharging himselfe of his burthen, he tolde *Meruine* how he was his mortall Enemie the spirit *Mutafier*, that had the keeping of him at *Pinor*, and there so manie yeares tormented him, with hideous noise telling

## The second part of

telling him that he intended to haue bozne him quicke into Hell, and that now hee would be reuenged for the fatall death of his deare beloued sonne Orke. Which Meruine hearing, he drew his sword, and defended himselfe there, within such sort, that if the malicious fiend Mutasier had bene mortall, he had slaine him an hundred times; which seene, Meruine with the signe of the Crosse blessed himselfe at which the diuell like a tempest flew away, and left Meruine, who falling on his knees, asked pardon of his Creator, then he beheld his horse Passant, to whom he went, but in that the diuell had deceived him, hee was strict in trusting: wherefore vsing some blessings and contrition: Passant fell vpon his knees, and then hee mounted vpon him, and neuer staied till he came to Jerusalem, where he adored the holy sepulchre, and visited all the shynes of the Saints, remaining there the space of two moneths, at the end whereof he went into Spaine, to an Abbey that was founded by duke Lyon, where he was confessed and absolved, and then Gratiana sent the king Orient and diuerse renowned fairies, who embraced Meruine and brought him into the fairie land, where he liued out his time with the beautifull Gratiana.

¶ Thus endeth the historie of the famous and euer renowned *Mervin*, which was first composed in rithme, and after translated into French prose, from whence it is thus reduced.

¶

Finis.